

Unit 1

Text A How to be a successful language learner?

本课主要单词

1. successful adj. 成功的

He is a successful writer. (他是一个有成就的作家。)

He hopes he will be successful this time. (他希望他这次能够成功。)

success n. 成功

Their film is a great success. (他们的影片很成功。)

We are sure of success. (我们一定能成功。)

succeed v. 成功

I succeeded in getting the job. (我成功地得到了这份工作。)

She succeeded in passing the exam. (她考试及格了。)

2. adult adj. & n. 成年的, 成熟的; 成年人

These adult films are not suitable for children. (这些成人电影, 儿童不宜观看。)

Don't worry too much about him, he is an adult now. (别为他过分担心, 他是成年人了。)

3. disagree vi. 有分歧, 不同意; 不符, 不一致

agree vi. 同意

I disagree with you about this. (对于这件事, 我跟你的意见不同。)

These figures disagree with last week's results. (这些数据与上周的结果不符。)

I agree with what you said. (我同意你所说的。)

She agreed to the plan. (她赞成这个计划。)

We haven't agreed on the date of the meeting. (我们还没商定会议日期。)

agreement n. 同意; 协议

disagreement n. 不同意

We haven't reached an agreement yet. (我们还没达成协议。)

There was no disagreement, and the proposal was accepted. (没有不同意见, 这个建议被接受了。)

(请注意: 前缀 dis-通常可以加在动词, 名词, 形容词前面, 构成反义词。例如: dissatisfy, disorder, disable. 后缀 -ment 加在动词的后面, 构成名词。例如: arrangement, argument 等。)

4. statement n. 声明, 陈述 (由动词 state 加名词后缀 -ment 构成)

Very soon he made his first public statement about the affair. (他很快就就此事首次发表公开声明。)

Do you believe the witness's statement? (你相信证人的陈述吗?)

(请注意动词与名词的搭配: issue a statement, make a statement)

5. guarantee n. & v. 保证, 担保, 保修

He gave his guarantee that he would repay the money as soon as he could. (他保证他会尽快还钱。)

The washing machine is guaranteed for five years. (这台洗衣机保用5年。)

(请注意 guarantee 做动词的用法: guarantee sth., guarantee that, guarantee against / from)

6. intelligent adj. 聪明的, 明智的

He made an intelligent decision. (他做出了明智的决定。)

Human beings are much more intelligent than animals. (人类远比动物聪明。)

Intelligence n. 聪明, 智力

She prided herself on her intelligence. (她为自己的聪明感到自豪。)

Intelligently adv. 聪明地, 明智地

They dealt with the problem intelligently. (他们明智地处理了这个问题。)

7. conversely adv. 相反地

Some are wealthy but unhappy; conversely, others are happy but not wealthy.

(有的人富有但不快乐, 相反, 另一些人快乐但不富有。)

converse adj. 相反的

I hold the converse opinion. (我的观点相反。)

converse v. 交谈, 谈话

He felt it difficult to converse with Helen in English. (他觉得跟海伦用英语交谈很困难。)

8. similar adj. 相似的, 类似的

The two animals are similar to each other in appearance. (这两只动物外表很相似。)

similarity n. 相似, 类似

Their differences are more noticeable than their similarities. (他们的不同之处比相同之处更明显。)

9. independent adj. 独立的, 自主的

(这个词的词根是 depend, 在 depend 的后面加上后缀 -ent 可以构成形容词, 加上 -ence 则可以构成名词; 在 dependent, dependence 前面加上前缀 in- 又可以构成反义词。)

depend v. 依靠, 依赖

dependence n. 依靠, 依赖

dependent adj. 依靠的, 依赖的

independence n. 独立, 自主

India won its independence in 1947. (印度于1947年赢得了独立。)

10. clue n. 线索, 提示

The police searched all the houses but found no clues. (警察搜索了所有的房屋, 但是没有发现任何线索。)

(注意用法: find /give a clue to sth.)

11. conclusion n. 结论, 推论

conclude v. 断定, 决定

(注意用法: come to a conclusion, jump at a conclusion, draw a conclusion, reach a conclusion)

What conclusions did you come to? (你得出了什么结论?)

12. communicate v. 交流, 交际, 通讯

communication n. 交流, 通讯

communicative adj. 爱说话的

To communicate with him is no easy job, as he is not a communicative person. (他是一个不爱说话的人, 与他交流可不容易。)

Speech and writing are man's most important methods of communication. (说和写是人类最重要的交流方式。)

13. inexact adj. 不正确的, 不精确的

与 independent 一样, 该词是由形容词 exact 加前缀 in- 构成的。

14. incomplete adj. 不完整的

complete adj. & v. 完整的; 完成

This is an incomplete sentence, please add the omitted part and make it complete.

(这是一个不完整的句子, 请加上省略的成分使其完整。)

I don't think I can complete the work in 2 hours. (我想我在两小时内干不完这活。)

15. purpose n. 目的, 意图, 用途

purposeful adj. 有目的的, 有意图的

purposefully adv. 有目的地, 蓄意地

The purpose of the meeting was to discuss his proposal. (会议的目的是讨论他的建议。)

He let out the information purposefully to you. (他有意向你透露了这个消息。)

16. regularly adv. 经常地, 定期地

regular adj. 经常的, 定期的

irregular adj. 不规则的, 无规律的

If you review your lessons regularly, you will do well on tests.

(如果你定期复习功课, 就能在考试中取得好成绩。)

17. technique n. 技术, 技巧, 手艺

Good study techniques help him to be one of the straight A students in his class.

(良好的学习技巧使他成为班上的全优生之一。)

18. outline v. & n. 概括; 大纲, 提纲; 轮廓

He listened carefully as I outlined my reasons. (在我简述我的原因时, 他认真地听着。)

The English teacher asked us to write a brief outline of the story.

(英语老师让我们写这篇故事的概要。)

He saw the outline of the house in the moonlight. (在月光下, 他看到了那座屋子的轮廓。)

本课主要词缀

1. 名词后缀 -ment

agreement, statement

2. 名词后缀 -ation, -ion, -sion

communication, completion, conclusion

3. 名词后缀 -ity

similarity, regularity

4. 名词后缀 -ence

intelligence, independence

5. 形容词后缀 -ful

successful, purposeful

6. 副词后缀 -ly

conversely, regularly, purposefully

7. 反义词前缀 in

inexact, incomplete, independent

8. 反义词前缀 dis

disagree, discover

本课简介

How to Be a Successful Language Learner 是一篇典型的说明文。此类文章通常以逻辑顺序安排材料，作者要回答 HOW 或 WHY 方面的问题。在说明文的阅读与写作中，要注意抓主题句以及使文章内容启承转合的常用词句。

本课中，作者从一句引言入手，先谈了人们对语言学习的看法，然后阐述了自己对学好语言的看法。文章条理十分清楚，对我们学写说明文很有帮助。

本课语言点

1. Learning a language is easy.

这是一个 主语+动词+表语 (SVP) 句型。句中 learning a language 为动名词短语，在句子中做主语。再如：

Forgetting the past means betrayal. (忘记过去就意味着背叛。)

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 阅读英语比讲英语容易。(Reading English is easier than speaking it.)

2) 集邮是我弟弟的爱好。(Collecting stamps is my little brother's hobby.)

2. Even a child can do it.

even 在句中作副词用，加强语气，表示“甚至(…也)，连(…都)”。
如：He even didn't trust his best friend. (他甚至不信任他最好的朋友。)

请注意 even 与 even if / though 的区别并翻译下面的句子：

1) 这个我连听都没听过。(I haven't even heard of it.)

2) 即使花了数天时间复习，他也没能考好。(He didn't do well in the exam even though he spent days reviewing.)

3. Most adults who are learning a second language would disagree with this statement.

句中 who are learning a second language 为定语从句，修饰先行词 most adults，再如：

The man who wrote this book is a teacher. (写这本书的人是一位教师。)

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 穿蓝色夹克的那个男孩是我们的班长。

(The boy who is in a blue jacket is our monitor.)

2) 你昨天借给我的那本书很有趣。

(The book that you lent me yesterday is very interesting.)

句中的 would 是助动词，表示“可能”，“(将)会”。例如：

A picnic without you wouldn't be fun. (野餐没你参加会很没意思。)

助动词 would 的用法很多，概括起来主要有如下几种：

1) 表示过去将来时：I felt confident that everything would be all right.

2) 表示意愿: I asked him not to do it, but he wouldn't listen to me.

3) 表示习惯性: Every evening, we would go for a walk along the river.

4) 表示虚拟, 假设, 条件: If you had come earlier, you would have seen him.

5) 表示婉转地请求或建议: Would you look after my cat while I am away?

Unit1

4. They need hundreds of hours of study and practice, and even this will not guarantee success for every adult language learner.

注意句中 hundreds of hours 的用法, 阅读课本第六页注解 2.

请翻译下面的词组:

1) 十个学生 ten students

数十个学生 tens of students

2) 五百年 five hundred years

数百年 hundreds of years

3) 两千年 two thousand years

数千年 thousands of years

4) 三百万美元 three million dollars

数百万美元 millions of dollars

5. Language learning is different from other kinds of learning.

句中 be different from 意为“与...不同”, 如: My opinion is different from yours. (我的观点与你的观点不同。)

请注意下面三个句子中所用的词组:

Man is different from all the other animals in his ability to learn and use a language.

Man differs from all the other animals in his ability to learn and use a language.

The greatest difference between man and all the other animals is his ability to learn and use a language.

从上面的句子中可以看出 differ 是动词, different 是形容词, difference 是名词。

6. ... find it difficult to succeed in language learning.

... find it difficult to succeed in other fields.

句中的 it 是形式宾语 (formal object), 真正的宾语 (real object) 是不定式 to succeed in language learning, 此类用法在英语中很常见, 请注意掌握。如: At first I found it difficult to remember all these new words. (开始我感到记住这些单词很难。)

请翻译下面的句子:

1) 外面的噪音使我无法继续工作。

(The noise outside made it difficult for me to go on with my work.)

2) 他们觉得再争论下去是浪费时间。

(They consider it a waste of time to argue any further.)

3) 她认为把真相告诉小王是对的。

(She thought it right to tell Xiao Wang the truth.)

7. Language teachers often offer advice to language learners.

本句中注意掌握动词 offer 的用法, 请看下面的例句:

1) He offered me a cup of tea after I sat down. (我坐下后他给我端来一杯茶。)

2) What suggestions would you like to offer to those young teachers?
(对这些新教师你有什么建议要提吗?)

3) This shop offers all kinds of stationery. (这家商店供应各种文具。)

4) The old man offered me 100 yuan for the used bike.

(那个老人向我出价 100 元买这辆旧自行车。)

5) She offered to help me with my English. (她表示愿意帮我学英语。)

句中的 advice 为不可数名词，其后不加 s，正如课本第六页注解 3 所说，有许多东西在汉语中是可数的，在英语中却是不可数的。如 news, information, paper 等，若要表示“一个”这类概念，就必须加 a piece of 这类定语，例如：

a piece of news

a piece of advice

a sum of money

a piece of bread

8. Read as much as you can.

句中的 much 是副词，用副词作同等比较时，可以用 as ... as 和 so ... as 这种结构，如：

1) Read as much as you can and your vocabulary will be enlarged.
(尽量多阅读，你的词汇量就会扩大。)

2) We must arrange everything as well as we can. (我们要把一切尽可能地安排好。)

3) Please give me a call as soon as possible. (请尽早给我打电话。)

4) I don't speak English so well as you. (我英语讲得没你好。)

9. Practice speaking the language every day.

practice 在美国英语中可以做动词也可以做名词，而在英国英语中，practice 是名词，动词的拼写则是 practise.

作动词用时，其后只能跟动名词，不能跟不定式。如：It is really no fun to practice running in such hot weather. (在这样炎热的天气里练跑步可真不是好玩的。)

10. Language learning research shows that successful language learners are similar in many ways.

that successful language learners are similar in many ways 是宾语从句。在非正式场合下 that 引导宾语从句时可省略。如：I think (that) you are right.

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 小男孩承认是他打碎了窗玻璃。

(The little boy admitted that he broke the window.)

2) 大量证据表明他是有罪的。(Plenty of evidence shows that he is guilty.)

3) 我保证将会给他更多的帮助。(I promised that I would give him more help.)

11. ... they discover their own way to learn the language. to learn the language

不定式做定语，例如：Is it the best way to solve the problem? (这是解决问题的最好方法吗?)

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 他没有勇气承认自己是无知的。(He has no courage to say that he is ignorant.)

2) 这将是一个交流思想的好机会。(This will be a good opportunity to exchange ideas.)

3) 他们在会上没有发言权。(They had no right to speak at the meeting.)

12. Instead of waiting for the teacher to explain, they try to find the patterns and rules for themselves.

动词不定式 to explain 和名词 teacher 构成复合结构，作 wait for 的宾语，称为复合宾语。此类用法在英语中很常见，例如：

1) I'll get someone to repair the bike for you. (我去找人来帮你修自行车。)

2) He wants you to call him in the afternoon. (他要你下午给他打电话。)

3) The teacher is waiting for the students to answer the questions. (老师在等学生们回答问题。)

4) You can count on him to give you full support. (你放心，他会给你全力支持。)

请注意 instead of 与 instead 的区别:

1) Instead of staying at home watching TV, he went out for a walk.

He didn't stay at home watching TV, instead he went out for a walk.

2) Instead of having milk for breakfast, he had a cup of coffee.

He didn't have milk for breakfast, instead he had a cup of coffee.

13. When they guess wrong, they guess again.

wrong 常常作形容词或动词用, 而本句中的 wrong 则作副词用。请注意下面句子中 wrong 的词类:

1) He was annoyed that he had been given some wrong information.
(wrong adj. 错误的)

2) I knew I had wronged her terribly when I gave her all the complaints.
(wrong v. 冤枉)

3) The whole class burst into laughter when the teacher pronounced her name wrong. (wrong adv. 错, 不对)

14. ... they look for such a chance.

句中的 such 是前置限定词, 可放在可数或不可数名词前, 如:

1) I've never seen such beautiful scenery. (我从没见过这样美丽的景色。)

2) He didn't expect that the audience would give him such a response.
(他没料想到观众们会给予如此反应。)

3) She didn't feel like going out on such a cold day. (她不想在如此寒冷的日子里出门。)

从下面的句子中可以看出 so 与 such 的区别, so 是副词, 通常用来修饰形容词或副词:

1) The question was so difficult that nobody could answer it.

(这个问题太难了, 没人能回答。)

2) His eyesight was so poor that he couldn't see anything clearly.

(他的视力不好, 什么也看不清。)

3) He ran so fast that nobody could catch up with him.

(他跑得那么快, 没有人能赶上他。)

15. It is more important for them to learn to think in the language than to know the meaning of every word.

不定式短语 to learn to think in the language 是句子的真正主语。it 常常被用来代替不定式, 在句子中充当形式主语, 而把真正的主语移到句子后面去, 这样使句子显得比较平稳。为了说明 不定式表示的动作是谁做的, 便在不定式前加 for 引起的短语。又如:

1) It is not at all difficult for him to understand the poem.

2) It is necessary for us to lend him a helping hand at this time.

more important than 是形容词比较级形式, 请翻译下面的句子:

1) 汤姆的年龄比玛丽大。(Tom is older than Mary.)

2) 这本书比那本书更有趣。(This book is more interesting than that one.)

3) 我们班的学生人数比他们班的多。(There are more students in our class than in theirs.)

16. ... you have probably been learning independently, actively, and purposefully.

句中所用的时态为现在完成进行时, 表示一个动作从过去的某一时间开始, 一直延续到现在, 可能还要继续下去。又如:

1) He has been working for a whole day.

2) They have been watching TV for two hours.

请翻译下面的句子:

1) 老李已经在南京生活了二十年。(Lao Li has been living in Nanjing for 20 years.)

2) 雨下多久了?(How long has it been raining?)

3) 我等了他在一个多小时了。(I have been waiting for him for more than an hour.)

17. ... if your language learning has been less than successful, you might do well to try some of the techniques outlined above.

less than用在形容词的前面是为了给所要表述的内容增加否定意味。又如: It would be less than fair to put all the blame on him. (把所有的责任都加在他身上是不太公平的。)

请翻译下面的句子:

1) 父亲对他的成绩不太满意。(Father was less than satisfied with his performance.)

2) 这个计划远不够完美。(The plan was a good deal less than perfect.)

do well to do sth. 的意思是“最好…做”，如: She would do well to go away from these

dishonest people. (她最好远离这些不诚实的人。)

本课主要词组

1. disagree with 2. be different from

3. succeed in 4. offer sth. to sb.

5. as much as 6. practice doing sth.

7. be similar to 8. first of all

9. depend on 10. instead of

11. wait for 12. look for

13. learn from 14. communicate with

15. be willing to 16. be interested in

17. in order to 18. on the other hand

19. less than 20. do well to do sth.

本课主要句型

A. 动名词做主语

- 1) Learning a language is easy.
- 2) Learning a language is a very difficult task.

B. 定语从句

1) Most adults who are learning a second language would disagree with this statement.

2) Some people who are intelligent and successful in their fields...

3) They are good guessers who find clues and form their own conclusions.

4) They find people who speak the language...

5) ...they can accept information that is inexact or incomplete.

C. it 做形式宾语

1) ...some people...find it difficult to succeed in...

2) They find it easy to practice using the language regularly...

D. it 做形式主语

1) It is more important for them to learn to think...

2) It is necessary for them to learn the language...

Text B Language

1. not only...but also (不但.....而且)

例: To some people language learning is not only time-consuming, but also difficult.

You can find the place not only with the help of a map, but also by asking the way.

2. up and down (上上下下, 前前后后)

例: His eyes moved up and down the rows of people, looking for the escaped prisoner.

He walked up and down the street, not knowing what decision he should make.

3. neither...nor (既不……也不)

例: Neither you nor I should be responsible for this accident.

This book is neither interesting nor instructive.

4. mean to do sth. (打算做某事, 想要做某事)

例: I meant to say "sorry" to him, but he didn't want to listen.

He didn't mean to hurt you.

5. not at all (一点也不)

例: I am not at all tired.

He was not at all frightened by the strange noise.

6. consist of (由……组成)

例: Our class consists of 20 boys and 26 girls.

The medical team consists of 3 doctors and two nurses.

Unit2 (第4讲—第6讲)

Text A Taxes, Taxes, and More Taxes

本课主要单词

1. tax n. & v. 税(款); 对…征税

The government plans to increase taxes by 3 percent.

(政府计划把税收增加三个百分点。)

In Britain, tobacco and alcoholic drinks are heavily taxed.

(在英国, 烟草和酒类饮品的税收很高。)

income tax (所得税) sales tax (销售税)

import tax (进口税) housing and land tax (房地产税)

VAT (value-added tax) (增值税) poll tax (人头税)

tax-collector (税务员) tax-payer (纳税人)

dodge tax (逃税, 漏税) tax-free (免税的)

2. type n. 类型, 种类, 品种

v. 打字

No one knows why he doesn't like this type of work. (没有人知道他为什么不喜欢这种工作。)

The manager asked Mary to type the letter again. (经理要玛丽把信重打一遍。)

typewriter (打字机)

typist (打字员)

3. salary n. 工资

v. (常用被动语态) 给...发薪

salaried adj. 拿薪水的, 领工资的

She was happy to know that she would get a promotion and an increase in salary. (得知她将得到提级和加薪, 她很开心。)

Don't worry about him, he will be salaried by a big company. (别为他担心, 一家大公司会给他发薪水。)

With his knowledge and experience he was bound to get a high-salaried post. (凭借他的知识和经验, 他一定能找到一份高薪的工作。)

salary 和 wage 的区别在于: salary 是指为从事非体力劳动的人按月支付的薪水, wage 则通常指为从事体力劳动的人按周支付的薪水。

4. earn v. 挣得; 赢得, 获得

He worked 14 hours a day in order that he could earn enough to support the family. (为了能挣足够的钱养家, 他每天工作十四小时。)

His sincerity earns him friends wherever he goes. (无论走到哪, 他的真诚都能赢得朋友。)

5. percentage n. 百分比, 百分率; 比例, 部分

percent / per cent n. 每百中, 百分之...

The percentage of university enrollment will be greatly increased this year. (今年, 大学录取的百分比将大大提高。)

About 70 percent of high school graduates in Nanjing will be enrolled by universities this year. (今年, 南京的高中毕业生将有百分之七十被高校录取。)

6. vary vi. 变化, 有不同

vt. 改变, 使不同

Prices of fish vary from 70 cents a pound to one dollar a pound. (鱼的价格从七十美分到一美元一磅不等。)

The weather in this area varies from hour to hour. (这儿的天气时刻有变化。)

I didn't vary my plan at the last moment. (我在最后一刻没有改变我的计划。)

7. graduated adj. (税) 累进的; 刻度的

graduate v. & n. 毕业; 毕业生

graduation n. 毕业

As the federal government has a graduated income tax, the more you earn, the higher tax you have to pay. 因为联邦政府实行累进所得税, 所以, 你挣的越多, 缴的所得税就越高。

A graduated glass will enable you to know how much water you have put into the vessel. (量杯能够使你知道你在容器里放了多少水。)

He graduated from high school last year. But it was difficult for a high school graduate to find a satisfactory job.

(他去年高中毕业, 但是高中毕业生要找一份称心如意的工作是很困难的。)

After graduation she went to work in a hospital as a nurse. (毕业后, 她去医院做了一名护士。)

8. sale n. 出售, 卖; 廉价出售

sell v. 卖

Mr. Smith is now interested in my car and I hope I can make the sale today. (史密斯先生现在对我的汽车感兴趣, 我希望今天就能卖成。)

He sold his bike to Tom. (他把自行车卖给了汤姆。)

for sale (待售) on sale (上市的)

a clearance sale (清仓拍卖) sales department (营业部)

sales promotion (促销活动) sales manager (销售经理)

salesperson / salesclerk (营业员)

9. charge v. 索价; 指控; 使充满

n. 价钱; 指控; 负责

He charged me 10 yuan for a bowl of plain rice. (一碗白米饭, 他要了我十块钱。)

The young man was charged with stealing. (那个年轻人被指控犯了盗窃罪。)

Charge your glasses and drink to our friendship. (斟满杯, 为我们的友谊干杯。)

The charge for a front-row seat is 250 yuan. (前排座位票价 250 元。)

The police arrested him on a charge of murder. (警察以谋杀罪拘捕了他。)

Who will be in charge of our class when the teacher is away? (老师不在的时候, 谁管我们班?)

10. figure n. 数字; 人物; 外形

v. 想出; 算出; 估计

He has a good head for figures. (他的数字概念很强。)

No one had expected that his savings could reach 5 figures in such a short time. (谁也没料到在这么短的时间里, 他的存款能达到五位数。)

He was an important figure in American history. (他是美国历史上的重要人物。)

She was always worrying about her figure as she couldn't resist the temptation of chocolates. (她抵御不了巧克力的诱惑, 所以总是担心自己的体形。)

We are trying to figure out a way to help them. (我们正在想办法帮助他们。)

Figure out the expenses and see if we have enough money. (算一算费用, 看看我们的钱是否够。)

She brought an umbrella as she figured they might need it. (她带了一把伞, 因为她估计他们会需要。)

11. add v. 增加, 增添

addition n. 加 (in addition to 除...之外)

additional adj. 附加的, 另外的

The fire is going out, add more wood to it. (火要灭了, 再加些木柴。)

His explanation adds to my confusion. (他的解释使我更加糊涂。)

In addition to leaves, these animals eat a great deal of fruit. (除了树叶之外, 这些动物还吃大量的水果。)

It will take an additional two days to finish the work. (还要再花两天时间才能完成这项工作。)

12. revenue n. 收入, 收益; 税收

The manager is worrying about the drop in advertising revenue. (经理正为广告收入的下降着急。)

The loss of tax revenue in many areas is getting higher. (许多地区的税收流失越来越严重。)

the Public Revenue (财政收入, 国库收入)

Inland Revenue (国内税收) revenue department (税务部门)

13. diverse adj. 不同的; 多种多样的

diversity n. 多样性; 差异

He is a man of diverse talent. (他是一个有多种才能的人。)

They offered us diverse suggestions at the meeting. (他们在会上给我们提出了各种各样的建议。)

His writing displays the diversities of human behavior. (他的作品展示了人类行为的多样性。)

A great diversity of methods has been tried in doing this experiment. (实验中尝试过各种各样的方法。)

14. confuse v. 使混乱, 混淆

confusion n. 混乱, 慌乱

What he said just now confuses all of us. (他刚才说的话把我们都弄糊涂了。)

Her answers have only added to his confusion. (她的回答只使他更加糊涂。)

15. property n. 财产, 资产; (房) 地产; 特性, 性质

That car is my property, you cannot use it without my permission. (那辆车是我的财产, 没我的允许, 你不能动用。)

The city is growing and property in the center is becoming more valuable. (城市在发展, 市中心的房地产越来越有价值了。)

Many plants have medicinal properties. (许多植物有药用特性。)

state property (国家财产) personal property (动产)

real property / estate (不动产) intellectual property (知识产权)

16. excise n. 国产税, 本国消费税

exercise n. & v. 行使, 运用; 锻炼; 练习

customs n. 关税 (Customs 海关)

17. fund n. 基金, 专款; 储备, 贮存

v. 提供资金, 供以款项

We would set up a fund to help those children whose parents couldn't afford to send them to school. (我们将设立一项基金, 帮助那些父母供不起他们读书的孩子。)

They have a fund of knowledge and experience to draw on. (他们有丰富的知识和经验可利用。)

This research is funded by the government. (这项研究由政府提供资金。)

18. department n. 部, 部门; 系科

the State Department (美国) 国务院 the Department of Education 教育部

department store 百货商店 the department of physics 物理系

19. municipal adj. 市的, 市政的

the municipal government 市政府

municipal administration 市政管理

a municipal university 市立大学

20. complain v. 抱怨, 埋怨, 发牢骚, 诉苦

complaint n. 抱怨, 诉说

He complained to the manager about / of the poor after-service. (他对经理抱怨说售后服务太差。)

She complained about / of her husband's carelessness. (她抱怨说她丈夫太粗心。)

The teacher complained that the students didn't work hard enough. (老师抱怨学生学习不够努力。)

It is a common complaint that today's children lack the sense of cooperation. (人们常常抱怨今天的孩子缺少合作意识。)

21. impractical adj. 不切实际的, 不能实行的

practical adj. 实际的, 可行的

His suggestion sounds good, but it is really impractical. (他的建议听起来不错, 但是的确不切实际。)

How long will it be before this theory can be put into practical use? (这一理论还要多久才能被实际运用?)

22. program n. 计划; (电视) 节目; 程序

v. 使按预定步骤工作; 编程

They are drawing up a program of water purification. (他们正在制定一个净水计划。)

Tonight's TV programs will be very interesting. (今晚的电视节目会非常有趣。)

I know nothing about computer programs. (我对电脑编程一窍不通。)

You can program it to do different tasks at specific times. (你可以使它在特定的时间按计划完成各项不同的任务。)

23. view n. 看法, 观点; 视野, 眼界; 景色, 风景

v. 看待, 考虑

He was unwilling to express his views on what had happened. (他不愿意就所发生的一切发表自己的观点。)

When we stood on the top of the mountain, the whole city came into our view. (我们站在山顶时, 整个城市尽收眼底。)

Looking out of the window, he had a fine view of the Slender West Lake. (朝窗外望去, 他看到了瘦西湖的美景。)

Several possible buyers have come to view your car. (几个想买车的人来看过你的车了。)

If you stand in his shoes to view the problem, you will come to a totally different conclusion. (如果你站在他的立场上来考虑这个问题, 你会得出完全不同的结论。)

24. issue n. 问题, 争论点; 发行

v. 出版, 发行, 颁布

At today's meeting we have to spend some time discussing this issue.
(在今天的会上, 我们得花点时间讨论这个问题。)

The minute he got the latest issue of the sports magazine, he read it with great interest. (一拿到最新一期的体育杂志, 他就津津有味地看起来。)

Her first novel issued in May. (她的第一部小说于五月份出版了。)

He issued instructions that the prisoners should be set free. (他下令释放犯人。)

25. tend v. 护理, 照管

tend to 易于, 往往会; 倾向于

She is tending a very sick patient. (她在护理一位重病人。)

In addition to his full-time job, he tends a bar. (除了一份全日制的工作, 他还照管一个酒吧。)

When you ask her more than one question, she tends to get impatient.
(你问她两个以上的问题, 她往往会不耐烦。)

He tends to be optimistic no matter what happens. (无论发生任何事情, 他总倾向于乐观。)

本课主要构词法

Conversion (转类法——名词和动词相互转类)

tax type salary charge

packet figure fund protest

program view issue tend

本课简介

Taxes, Taxes, and More Taxes 介绍了美国三级政府(联邦政府, 州政府, 市政府)征收的三种税(income tax, sales tax, property tax and excise tax)。美国人对税收的一致看法是: The taxes are too high. 这篇文章对我们了解美国社会很有帮助, 值得一读。

本课主要语言点

1. Americans often say that there are two things a person can be sure of in life: death and taxes.

句中的 that 引导的是一个宾语从句, 例如: Everybody knows that the earth goes around the sun. (众所周知, 地球围绕太阳转。)

请翻译下面的句子:

- 1) 他知道我不会责怪他。(He knew that I wouldn't blame him.)
- 2) 妈妈说他必须在六点以前回来。(Mother said that he had to be back before 6: 00.)
- 3) 我想天气很快会放晴。(I think that it is going to clear up soon.)
- 4) 我相信他对我说了实话。(I believe that he told me the truth.)

句中的 a person can be sure of ... 是定语从句, 修饰 two things, 引导定语从句的关系代词 that 被省去了。例如: Have you found the book you want? (你找到你要的书了吗?)

请翻译下面的句子:

- 1) 他找到了他丢失的那块表。(He found the watch he had lost.)
- 2) 这儿有很多我感兴趣的书。(There are many books I am interested in.)

Unit2 (第4讲—第6讲)

be sure of 的意思是“对……确信无疑”, 例如:

— Is he going to call us at 9: 00? (他会在九点给我们打电话吗?)

— Yes, I am sure of it. (是的, 我肯定。)

翻译下面的句子, 掌握 sure 的用法:

- 1) I am sure of his sincerity. (我确信他的诚意。)
- 2) You are sure of a warm welcome. (你肯定会受到热烈的欢迎。)
- 3) I don't know for sure whether he will come or not. (我不很确切地知道他是否会来。)

4) Make sure that you turn off the light when you leave. (确保在你离开时把灯关掉。)

5) Be sure not to forget what your parents said to you. (千万别忘了父母对你说的话。)

2. Americans don't have a corner on the "death" market, but many people feel that the United States leads the world with the worst taxes.

have a corner 的意思是“垄断”，例如：have a corner on the cotton market (垄断棉花市场)；have a corner on the black vote (垄断黑人选票)。有时也会见到以 in 代替 on 的用法：have a corner in banking

lead 在句中的意思是“走在…前列”，“在……领先”，“胜过”。

请翻译下面的句子：

1) He leads his class in English. (他在班上英语学的最好。)

2) He led the broad jump with a leap of 26 feet. (他以 26 英尺的成绩在跳远中领先。)

3) Pollution still leads the list of major problems in that country. (污染仍然是那个国家的头号严重问题。)

3. Taxes consist of money which people pay to support their government.

句中 which 引导的定语从句修饰 the money.

请翻译下面的句子：

1) This is the book that I just borrowed from the library. (这是我刚刚从图书馆借的书。)

2) He put the money that his mother gave him in a safe place. (他把妈妈给他的钱放在一个安全的地方。)

3) I don't remember where I put the CD that I bought yesterday. (我记不得把昨天买的 CD 放在哪儿了。)

consist of 的意思是“由……构成”，它与 make up of, compose of 的区别在于：consist of 不可用被动语态，而 make up of 和 compose of 可以用被动语态。例如：

1) The house consists of 6 rooms.

2) The medical team is made up of three doctors and a nurse.

3) The book is composed of 25 units.

4. Salaried people who earn more than a few thousand dollars must pay a certain percentage of their salaries to the federal government.

句中 who 引导的定语从句修饰 people.

请翻译下面的句子:

1) The girl who helped me with my English is our monitor. (帮助我学外语的那个女孩是我们班长。)

2) The man who knocked at the door just now is my next-door neighbor. (刚才敲门的那个人是我的隔壁邻居。)

3) The boy who was shot to death by his classmate was only 8. (被同学开枪打死的那个男孩才八岁。)

在单词部分我们已经对 percentage 和 percent 的区别有所了解, 现在我们再来翻译几个句子:

1) 税率从百分之十四到百分之七十不等。 (The percentage of the tax varies from 14% to 70%.)

2) 学生的及格率达到了百分之九十五。 (The percentage of students who passed the exam reached 95%.)

3) 工业产量上涨了百分之十四。 (The industrial output increased by 14%.)

5. It depends on their salaries.

depend on 在句中的意思是“视……而定”。除此以外, 还可表示“依靠”: “信赖”等。

请翻译下面的句子:

1) 成功与否得看你的能力和努力。 (Success depends on your ability and efforts.)

2) Whether we can go outing depends on tomorrow's weather. (我们能否去郊游取决于明天的天气。)

3) The old man depends on the government pension for a living. (那位老人靠政府的养老金生活。)

4) 他总是依赖姐姐给他做作业。(He always depends on his sister to do his homework.)

5) He is not to be depended on. (他不可信赖。)

6. With the high cost of taxes, people are not very happy on April 15, when the federal taxes are due.

介词 with 在句中的意思是“由于，因为”。例如：With their support, we fulfilled our task ahead of time. (由于他们的帮助，我们提前完成了任务。)

如果仅仅有月份，没有具体的日期，月份前用介词 in，如果有具体的日期则用介词 on，例如：1) He was born in May. 2) He was born on May 23.

句中 due 的意思是“到期”，例如：The books are due, I have to return them to the library. (书到期了，我得去图书馆还书。)

请翻译下面的句子，注意 due 在不同语境下的其他意思：

1) The train is due to arrive at 8: 00. (火车定于八点钟到达。)

2) The baby is due in the middle of October. (婴儿的预产期为十月中旬。)

3) Due attention should be paid to this work. (应该给这项工作以适当的关注。)

4) Old people expect to be treated with the respect due to their age. (老人们期望受到他们这个年龄的人应得的尊敬。)

5) His death was due to heart attack. (他的死是由心脏病引起的。)

7. Some states have an income tax similar to that of the federal government.

句中的 that 用来代替 the 加前述名词 tax，以免重复。

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 南京的天气比青岛的天气热。(The weather of Nanjing is hotter than that of Qingdao.)

2) 黄金的价格比白银的价格要高。(The price of gold is higher than that of silver.)

8. Other states have a sales tax, which is a percentage charged to any item which you buy in that state.

句中前一个 which 引导的是一个非限定性定语从句, 修饰 sales tax. 非限定性定语从句通常在句中起进一步说明作用, 既可修饰先行词也可修饰整个句子。如果省去, 原句意义不受影响。非限定性定语从句有逗号与主句隔开; 关系代词不可用 that, 而用 who, whom, whose 来修饰人, 用 which 来修饰物, 并且不能省略。

请翻译下面的句子:

1) The sun warms the earth, which makes it possible for plants and animals to live. (太阳温暖了大地, 这才使动植物有可能生长。)

2) He failed the exam, which made him very disappointed. (他考试没及格, 这使他非常失望。)

3) He has a son, who is doing his PH.D in the United States. (他有一个儿子, 在美国读博士学位。)

句中后一个 which 引导的是一个限定性定语从句, 修饰 any item. 但是传统语法中通常有这样的规定: 当先行词是 all, everything, something, nothing 等不定代词, 或被 first, only, few, much, some, any, no 以及形容词最高级等词修饰时, 应该用关系代词 that, 不用 which. 例如: I am interested in all that you told me.

9. The cities use these funds for education, police and fire department, public works and municipal buildings.

work 用作单数时, 通常指工作, 例如: I have a lot of work to do this afternoon.

用作复数时, works 则指 1) 著作: The Complete Works of Mao Zetong (《毛泽东全集》) 2) 工程: public works (公共建筑工程, 市政工程)

10. They say that it spends too much on useless and impractical programs.

spend too much (money) on sth 的意思是“把太多的钱花在……”, 例如: He would spend some money on books every month…… (他每个月都花一些钱买书。)

我们常常会碰到的另一个词组 spend some time (in) doing sth. 的意思是“花时间做某事”，例如：He spent a lot of time doing the experiment. (他花了很多时间做实验。)

在英语学习中，我们还要注意 pay, cost 和 spend 在用法上的区别。请注意下面的句子：

- 1) Tom paid 20 dollars for that T-shirt.
- 2) The T-shirt cost Tom 20 dollars.
- 3) Tom spent 20 dollars on that T-shirt.

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 我借给他的那本新字典花了我三十多块钱。(The dictionary I lent him cost me more than 30 yuan.)

2) 把这辆自行车修一修要花很多钱吗？(Does it cost much to get this bike repaired?)

3) 在过去的几年中，这家工厂花了很多钱改善工作条件。(In the past few years, the factory has spent a lot of money improving the working conditions.)

4) 她不喜欢把钱花在华而不实的服装上。(She doesn't like to spend money on fancy clothes.)

5) 买这部手机你花了多少钱？(How much money did you pay for this self-phone?)

6) 她花了一百多块钱买那双鞋。(She paid more than a hundred for that pair of shoes.)

本课主要词组

1. be sure of
2. have a corner
3. consist of
4. vary from
5. depend on
6. a packet of
7. in addition to
8. complain about
9. in the wrong way
10. spend...on

11. tend to 12. agree on

本课主要句型

A. 宾语从句:

1) Americans often say that there are only two things a person can be sure of.

2) ...but many people feel that the United States lead the world with the worst taxes.

3) ...they often feel that they are working one day each week just to pay their taxes.

4) They often protest that the government uses their tax dollars in the wrong way.

5) They say that it spends too much on useless and practical programs.

B. 定语从句:

1) Taxes consist of money which people pay to support their government.

2) Salaried people who earn more than a few thousand dollars must pay a certain percentage of their salaries to the federal government.

3) Other states have a sales tax, which is a percentage charged to any item which you buy in that state.

4) ...people who own a home have to pay taxes on it...

5) ...and excise tax, which is charged on cars in a city.

美国五十个州

A. The New England States (6)

1. Maine (缅因) 2. New Hampshire* (新罕布什尔)

3. Vermont (佛蒙特) 4. Massachusetts* (马萨诸塞)

5. Connecticut* (康涅狄格) 6. Rhode Island* (罗得岛)

B. The Middle Atlantic States (7)

7. New York* (纽约) 8. Pennsylvania* (宾夕法尼亚)
9. New Jersey* (新泽西) 10. Delaware* (特拉华)
11. Maryland* (马里兰) 12. Virginia* (弗吉尼亚)
13. West Virginia (西弗吉尼亚)

C. The Southern Atlantic States (11)

14. North Carolina* (北卡罗来纳) 15. South Carolina* (南卡罗来纳)
16. Georgia* (佐治亚) 17. Florida (佛罗里达)
18. Alabama (亚拉巴马) 19. Mississippi (密西西比)
20. Tennessee (田纳西) 21. Louisiana (路易斯安那)
22. Arkansas (阿肯色) 23. Texas (得克萨斯)
24. Oklahoma (俄克拉何马)

D. The Central States (13)

25. Wisconsin (威斯康星) 26. Illinois (伊利诺斯)
27. Kentucky (肯塔基) 28. Indiana (印第安那)
29. Ohio (俄亥俄) 30. Michigan (密执安)
31. Minnesota (明尼苏达) 32. Iowa (衣阿华)
33. Missouri (密苏里) 34. North Dakota (北达科他)
35. South Dakota (南达科他) 36. Nebraska (内布拉斯加)
37. Kansas (堪萨斯)

E. The Western States (13)

38. Washington (华盛顿) 39. Oregon (俄勒冈)
40. California (加利福尼亚) 41. Montana (蒙大拿)
42. Idaho (爱达荷) 43. Nevada (内华达)
44. Utah (犹他) 45. Arizona (亚历桑那)

46. Wyoming (怀俄明) 47. Colorado (科罗拉多)

48. New Mexico (新墨西哥) 49. Alaska (阿拉斯加)

50. Hawaii (夏威夷)

(注: 有*者曾为英国在北美的十三个殖民地, 也是美国最早的十三个州。)

Text B Advertising

短语表达

1. attract attention 吸引注意

He talked loudly to attract attention. (他大声说话以吸引注意。)

2. for the most part 在很大程度上, 多半

These cars, for the most part, are made in China. (这些汽车多半产于中国。)

3. persuade sb. to do sth. 劝某人做某事

be persuaded to do sth. 被劝说做某事

The doctor persuaded my father to give up smoking. (医生劝我父亲戒烟。)

The young man was persuaded to take up that job. (那个年轻人被劝说接受那份工作。)

4. a large amount of 一大笔

He borrowed a large amount of money from the bank. (他向银行借了一大笔钱。)

5. put out 发布, 公布; 出版; 广播

The article was put out in a national magazine to reach a larger audience. (为了能影响更多的读者, 文章被登发在一份国家级杂志上。)

This newspaper is put out every day. (这份报纸每天出版。)

The weather forecast has just put out a storm. (天气预报刚刚发出了暴风警报。)

6. be characteristic of 为…所特有，是…的特征

Rainy days are characteristic of March. (多雨的日子为三月所特有。)

7. catch the eye 引人注目

The beautiful blue dress in the window caught her eye when she passed the store. (她经过那家商店时，橱窗里漂亮的兰色连衣裙吸引了她。)

8. identify with 与一致；认为…等同于；跟…发生共鸣，同情；（无意识地）仿效

His idea identifies with mine. (他的观点和我的观点相同。)

Never identify personal opinions with facts. (切莫把个人观点与事实等同起来。)

All the money came from those who identified with him. (所有的钱都来自于那些同情他的人。)

Children usually identify themselves with their parents. (孩子往往会仿效自己的父母。)

9. carry over 继续下去，遗留下来

The report was carried over to the next page. (报告转入下一页。)

His habit carries over from his childhood. (他的习惯从小保留至今。)

10. as well as 和，也

Women, as well as men, have the right to work. (妇女和男人一样有工作的权利。)

11. over and over again 反复

He mentioned the incident over and over again, which really bored me to death. (他反复提及那件事，真把我烦死了。)

12. put up with 忍受

Both water pollution and air pollution are becoming more and more serious but we have to put up with them at the moment. (水污染和空气污染都在变得越来越严重，但是我们暂时只好忍着。)

13. be responsible for 为…负责

It is not yet clear who should be responsible for the accident. (谁该对这起事故负责现在还不清楚。)

14. decide on 决定, 选定

They decided on their plan of action after hours of discussion. (经过数小时的讨论, 他们决定了行动计划。)

15. be involved in 参与, 介入

He quitted his job as he no longer wanted to be involved in politics. (他不想再介入政治便辞去了工作。)

Unit3 (第7讲—第10讲)

Text A The Altoantic Ocean

本课主要单词

1. unwilling adj. 不情愿的, 不愿意的; 勉强的

Selfish as she is, she is unwilling to share anything with others. (她很自私, 不愿意与他人分享任何东西。)

He was unwilling to give up halfway even though there might be more difficulties ahead. (尽管前面可能有许多困难, 但他不愿意中途放弃。)

They got some unwilling assistance from the local government. (地方政府勉强给了他们一些协助。)

2. equator n. 赤道

Ecuador is near the equator. (厄瓜多尔靠近赤道。)

People used to believe that at the equator the ocean would be boiling hot.

(人们过去认为, 在赤道处海水是滚烫的。)

3. bulge n. 不规则突起; 鼓起之处; (突然) 上涨, 增多 v. 使膨胀; 塞满

Between the bulge of South America and the bulge of Africa lies the narrowest place of the Atlantic Ocean. (大西洋的最狭窄处位于南美洲的突起处和非洲的突起处之间。)

The graph shows a bulge in the birth rate in the year of dragon.
(图表显示龙年出生率的暴增。)

His schoolbag was bulging with apples when he came back from his uncle's orchard. (他从叔叔的果园回来时书包里鼓鼓囊囊装满了苹果。)

4. unusual adj. 少有的; 不寻常的; 与众不同的, 独特的

It was not unusual for him to work very late every night. (每天工作到深夜对他来说是很平常的事。)

He has an unusual name. (他有一个不寻常的名字。)

It is unusual to see snow in this region. (这个地区难得下雪。)

This young man has an unusual talent for organization. (这个年轻人有非凡的组织才能)。

5. salty adj. 咸的, 含盐的 salt n. 盐; 风趣 v. 用盐调味; 用盐腌; 撒盐于道路上

He didn't have much for dinner as the dishes were too salty. (他晚餐吃的不多, 因为菜太咸了。)

It might be a good idea to wash these in salty water. (把这些放在盐水里洗一洗也许是个好主意。)

He added a bit more salt to the soup to make it tastier. (为了使汤的味道更好, 他又加了一点盐。)

His wit added salt to the discussion. (他的妙语使讨论增添了风趣。)

Have you salted the potato? (你往土豆里加了盐了吗?)

It took them a long time to salt the main roads. (他们花了好长时间才在主要公路上撒上盐。)

grind salt in sb.'s wounds 在某人伤口上撒盐, 使某人痛上加痛

with a grain of salt 半信半疑地

Salt Lake City 盐湖城 (美国犹他州州府)

salt mine 盐矿 salt shaker (瓶盖上有细孔用于匀撒的) 盐瓶

salt spreader 撒盐车 a saltwater lake 咸水湖

saltwater fish 海产 a salted egg 咸蛋

请注意：形容词 salty 是由名词 salt 加形容词后缀 -y 构成的。这样的形容词在英语中还有很多，如：windy, snowy, rainy, cloudy, sunny, funny, muddy, foggy...

6. average n. 平均数, 平均 adj. 平均的; 平常的, 普通的 v. 平均

The average of 5, 7 and 9 is 7. (5, 7, 9 的平均数是 7.)

He receives an average of 50 calls a day. (他平均每天接到 50 个电话。)

Mr. Brown could hardly believe that his son's work at school is below the average. (布朗先生几乎无法相信他儿子的学习成绩低于一般水平。)

The average temperature yesterday was below zero. (昨天的平均气温在零度以下。)

He is an average student in his class. (他是班上的一般学生。)

A man of average height came to see you today. (今天有一位中等身材的人来看你。)

He averages one pack of cigarettes a day. (他平均每天抽一包香烟。)

The annual rainfall here averages 700mm. (这里的年降雨量平均为 700 毫米。)

7. spot n. 地点, 处所; 点, 斑点 v. 点缀; 认出; 准确定位 adj. 当场作出的; 现付的

She toured many scenic spots during the holiday. (假日里她游览了许多风景名胜地。)

She told us the exact spot where the accident happened. (她把事故发生的准确地点告诉了我们。)

She decided on a blue tie with white spot for her husband. (她给丈夫选了一条蓝底白点的领带。)

There is a spot of ink on the white wall. (白墙上有墨水渍。)

He didn't want to leave a spot on his reputation. (他不想在名誉上留下污点。)

The night sky is spotted with twinkling stars. (闪烁的星星点缀着夜空。)

His shoes are spotted with mud. (他的鞋子上有泥渍。)

She is so special, you can spot her in the crowd easily. (她很特别, 你在人群中能一眼认出她来。)

He was sent to spot the battery position of the enemy. (他被派去测定敌炮阵地。)

She was urged to make a spot decision. (她被催促当场做决定。)

on the spot 当场, 在现场 in a spot 在困境中, 在窘境中

put sb. on the spot 使某人处于难堪地位

put one's finger on sb.'s weak spot 指出某人性格上的弱点

spot check 抽样检查 spot survey 抽样调查

spotlight 聚光灯; 汽车上的反光灯; 公众注意中心

spot news 现场报道的新闻 spot price 现货价

8. range n. 山脉; 幅度, 范围 v. (在某范围内) 变动, 变化; 把...排列成行

One of the longest mountain ranges of the world rises from the floor of the Atlantic. (世界最长的山脉从大西洋洋底耸起。)

The age range is from 45 to 65. (年龄幅度在 45 岁至 65 岁之间。)

He is not very clear about his range of responsibility. (他对自己的责任范围并不清楚。)

The question you asked is out of my range. (你问的问题我不懂。)

Prices of gasoline range from one dollar to one dollar and twenty a gallon. (汽油的价格从 1 美元至 1 美元 20 美分 1 加仑不等。)

The tiger-sharks range in length from nine feet to fourteen feet. (虎鲸的体长从 9 英尺到 14 英尺不等。)

The puddings are neatly ranged on the shelf. (布丁整齐地排列在架子上。)

medium-range missile 中程导弹 wide range of interests 兴趣广泛

at close range 接近地 in/within range 在射程内

9. peak n. 山峰; 顶点

The mountain peak is covered with snow all the year. (山峰终年积雪。)

His career is at its peak now, no wonder he will make greater achievement. (他的事业正处于鼎盛时期, 毫无疑问, 他会取得更大的成就。)

10. vessel n. 船, 舰; 容器, 器皿

an ocean-going vessel 远洋轮 an escort vessel 护卫舰

a fishing vessel 渔船 a drinking vessel 饮具

11. crew n. 全体船员, 全体机务人员

The crew was (were) annoyed at the captain's decision. (船员们对船长的决定感到恼火。)

The aircraft has a crew of 6. (这架飞机有6名机组人员。)

All 312 passengers and 6 crew members died in the plane crash. (312名乘客和6名机组人员在飞机失事中丧生。)

12. becalm v. (常用被动语态) (指帆船) 因无风而停止前进

In the days of sailing vessels the crew were afraid they would be becalmed on the ocean. (在使用帆船的时代, 船员们担心他们会因为无风而无法在海洋上航行。)

He was becalmed for a whole week north of the island. (他在海岛北面因无风而停泊了整整一周。)

13. gulf n. 海湾; 隔阂; 鸿沟

Can you tell me for sure who was the real winner of the Gulf War? (你能确定地告诉我谁是海湾战争的真正赢家吗?)

The quarrel left a gulf between the two close friends. (那场争吵在两位好友间造成了隔阂。)

the Persian Gulf 波斯湾 the Gulf of Mexico 墨西哥湾

Gulf Stream 湾流, 墨西哥湾流

14. stream n. 小河, 溪流 v. 流, 涌

They had a walk along the bank of the stream. (他们沿着河岸散步。)

Lots of tree leaves are floating along with the stream. (许多树叶正随着水流漂浮。)

Tourists came into the cave in a steady stream. (游客们源源不断地进入山洞。)

Tears streamed down her cheeks when she heard the news. (当她听到那个消息时, 泪水顺着脸颊流了下来。)

He didn't even frown when blood streamed from his wound. (血从伤口涌出时, 他连眉头都没皱一下。)

a stream of cold air 一股冷空气 a stream of people 一股人流

a stream of lies 一串谎言 a stream of good ideas 一系列好主意

a stream of light 一道光线 stream of consciousness 意识流

go against the stream 逆潮流而动 go with the stream 随波逐流

stream-lined cars 流线型汽车

15. current n. (空气, 水等的) 流, 潮流; 电流; 倾向 adj. 当前的, 通行的

The child had been swept away by the current. (孩子被水流卷走了。)

A steady current of heated air rose from the mountain top. (一股热气从山顶源源不断升起。)

There was a powerful electric current running through the wires. (一股强大的电流流过电线。)

Mass media influence the current of public opinion. (大众传媒影响舆论的倾向。)

Give me a current issue of Reader's Digest. (给我一本最近一期的读者文摘。)

A long time ago, it was a current belief that the earth was flat. (很久以前, 人们普遍相信地球是扁平。)

the main current 主流 a warm current 暖流

an alternating current 交流电 a direct current 直流电

current events 时事 current situation 当前形势

16. affect v. 影响; 打动; (疾病) 侵袭 effect n. 效果; 作用, 影响;

His mood was greatly affected by the sad news. (那个悲痛的消息使他的心绪大受影响。)

Computers affect our life in many ways. (计算机在许多方面影响我们的生活。)

Reading in dim light constantly will surely affect the eyes. (经常在昏暗的光线下看书肯定会对眼睛有影响。)

The child was affected with high fever. (孩子发高烧了。)

The color gives the effect of being warm. (这颜色给人以暖感。)

The wonderful sky effect on the festival night impressed everybody.

(绚丽的节日夜空给每一个人都留下了深刻印象。)

I just hope this medicine won't have serious side-effect. (我只希望这种药没有严重的副作用。)

sound effect 音响效果 three-dimensional effect 立体感

lighting effect 灯光效果 cause and effect 因果

no effects 无存款 (银行在空头支票上的批语)

be of no effect 无效 bring sth. to effect 实行, 实施

in effect 实际上

take effect 见效；生效

17. climate n. 气候

The change in climate might be one of the causes for the extinction of dinosaurs.

（气候的变化也许是恐龙灭绝的一个原因。）

In cold climates, some of the livestock have to be kept indoors all winter.

（在寒冷的气候区，一些牲畜得在室内一冬。）

In the present economic climate we can make greater achievement.

（在目前的经济气候下，我们能够取得更大的成就。）

weather n. 天气

The football match had to be put off because of bad weather. （由于天气不好，足球比赛被推迟了。）

What's the weather like in Hangzhou? I hope it is not as hot there. （杭州的天气怎么样？希望那儿不那么热。）

18. flow n. 流 v. 流动

Heavy rains brought mud flows down the mountain. （暴雨把泥流冲下了山。）

The doctor stopped the flow of blood. （医生把血止住了。）

The river flows east into the sea. （这条河向东流入大海。）

19. furnish v. 供应，提供；装备，（用家具）布置

The school has decided to furnish the library with some new books. （学校决定给图书馆提供一些新书。）

They furnished all the passengers with life jackets. （他们为所有的乘客提供救生衣。）

She wants to furnish her new house with modern furniture. （她想用时新家具布置新家。）

20. highway n. 公路; (水陆) 交通干线

The canal was the only highway for commerce. (这条运河是唯一的商业路线。)

You can find many motels along the highways. (在高速公路沿线你会看到许多汽车旅馆。)

21. float v. (使) 漂浮

Colorful flags are floating in the morning breeze. (彩旗在晨风中飘荡。)

When winter comes yellow leaves float down. (冬天到来时, 黄叶飘落。)

It will be much easier for you to float the logs down the river.
(你们把木材顺流下漂将会容易得多。)

本课主要构词法

Affixation (词缀法)

1. 反意词前缀 un- unusual, unwilling
2. 形容词后缀 -y salty
3. 名词后缀 -or sailor

Compounding (合词法)

1. 复合名词 highway, steamship, airplane
2. 复合形容词 mid-Atlantic, eastward

本课简介

The Atlantic Ocean 向读者介绍了有关大西洋的情况。我们可以了解航行大西洋的过去和现在, 也可以了解大西洋“制造”出来的世界之最。

本课主要语言点

1. The Atlantic Ocean is one of the oceans that separate the Old World from the New.

在表示河流, 海洋, 群岛, 沙漠等地理名称的名词前, 以及以复数形式出现的国名前要用定冠词, 例如: the Yellow River (黄河), the Pacific Ocean

(太平洋), the British Isles (不列颠群岛), the Sahara (撒哈拉沙漠), the Alps (阿尔卑斯山脉), the Philippines (菲律宾)

在表示某一座山, 岛屿或某一个湖时不用定冠词, 例如: Yellow Mountain (黄山), Lake Erie (伊利湖), Hainan Island (海南岛)

one of + 复数名词是英语中常见的用法, 请翻译下面的句子:

She is one of the most hardworking students in our class. (她是我们班学习最刻苦的学生之一。)

Shanghai is one of the biggest cities in the world. (上海是世界最大的城市之一。)

印度是世界上人口最多的国家之一。(India is one of the countries with the largest population in the world.)

尼罗河是世界上最长的河流之一。(Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world.)

在 one of + 复数名词 + 定语从句的结构中, 定语从句一般被看作修饰复数名词, 因此该从句中的谓语要用复数形式。例如:

This is one of the best novels that have been published this year. (这是今年出版的最佳小说之一。)

Mr. Smith is one of those men who always think they are right. (史密斯先生属于那些总是认为自己正确的人。)

He is not one of those who bow before difficulties. (他不是那种在困难面前低头的人。)

但是在 the only one of + 复数名词 + 定语从句的结构中, 定语从句应该被看成修饰单数名词。例如:

He was the only one of the boys who was praised by the teacher. (他是男孩中唯一受到老师表扬的。)

Helen is the only one of those girls who doesn't wear make-up. (海伦是那些女孩中唯一不化妆的。)

separate from 是常用词组, 在句子中的意思是“(使)分离, (使)分开”, 请翻译下面的句子:

1) 英吉利海峡把英法两国隔开。(The English Channel separates England from France.)

2)理论不应该脱离实际。(Theory should not be separated from practice.)

the Old world 指欧, 亚, 非三洲, 有时仅指欧洲。the New (World) 指哥伦布发现的美洲大陆。

2. For centuries it kept the Americas from being discovered by the people of Europe.

for centuries 意为“许多世纪”。在英语中用介词 for 加表示时间的复数名词的表达形式很常见。请翻译下面的句子:

1) I haven't seen you for days. How is everything? (多日不见, 一切都好吗?)

2) I haven't seen him for years, I am sure he has changed a lot. (我多年没见到他了, 他一定变了不少。)

3) It seems I have been waiting for you for centuries. Where have you been? (我似乎等了你几个世纪了, 你去哪儿了?)

keep... from doing 是习惯用法, 意思是“使...不...”。

例如: It is really not easy to keep Father from smoking. (要使父亲不抽烟真不容易。)

请翻译下面的句子:

1) Heavy fog kept the ships from being discovered by the enemy. (大雾使得船只未被敌人发现。)

2) We had no way to keep him from getting involved in the matter. (我们没有办法使他不卷入那事件中去。)

3) 那种药使他的咳嗽不再加剧。 (The medicine keeps his cough from getting more serious.)

4) 当地人的保守思想使得那个地方不能快速发展。

(The local people's conservative mind keeps that place from developing rapidly.)

3. Many wrong ideas about the Atlantic made early sailors unwilling to sail far out into it.

make sb. unwilling to do sth. 意为“使得某人不愿做某事”。例如：His indifference to work made everybody unwilling to cooperate with him. (他对工作的冷漠态度使得所有的人都不愿与他合作。)

主语+动词+宾语+补语(SVOC)的句型在课本第二单元的语法中已有较详细的论述。请翻译下面的句子：

1) His behavior at the dinner party made the host annoyed. (他在晚宴上的行为使主人很恼火。)

2) That film made him famous. (那部影片使他出了名。)

3) 他刚才的一番话使玛丽很伤心。(What he said just now made Mary very sad.)

4) 老师对他作文的评价令他失望。(The teacher's comment on his composition made him disappointed.)

5) What he had done made his friends hesitant to accept the invitation. (他的所为使得他的朋友们对接受邀请犹豫不决。)

6) 他的挥霍浪费使得他的父母不愿意再给他钱。(His unthriftiness made his parents unwilling to give him any more money.)

Unit3 (第7讲—第10讲)

4. One idea was that it reached out to “the edge of the world”。

Another idea was that at the equator the ocean would be boiling hot.

这两个都是表语从句和主句中的系动词连用的句子。结构为：主语+系动词+表语从句。请看下面的例句：My idea is that we contact him as soon as possible. (我的想法是我们应该尽快跟他联系。)

请翻译下面的句子：

1) My suggestion is that we should put off the meeting. (我的建议是我们应该把会议延期。)

2) One advantage of solar energy is that it will never be used up. (太阳能的一个优点是用之不竭。)

3) 问题是你不在时谁照管孩子。(The problem is who will take care of the children while you are away.)

4) 看起来天要下雨。(It looks that it is going to rain.)

请注意辨析 another 和 other:

another 由 an+other 构成, 只和单数可数名词连用。other 可用于所有名词前。another+单数名词表示不定的“另一个”, the other+单数可数名词表示特指的“另一个”。

请看下面的例句:

1) This idea is not very practical, will you think of another one?
(这个主意不太实际, 你能另想一个吗?)

2) This book is too difficult. Show me another one. (这本书太难了, 给我看另外一本。)

3) Of the three books in my bag, two are published in China, the other is published in the United States. (我包里的三本书中, 两本是中国出版的, 另一本是美国出版的。)

4) Tom is here, but where are the other boys? (汤姆在这儿, 其他的男孩在哪儿呢?)

5) I like this coat better than the other one. (两件上衣中, 我更喜欢这一件。)

6) This camera is more expensive than the other one. (这架照相机比另一架贵。)

boiling hot 意思是“滚热的, 酷热的”。此处的 boiling 不是形容词而是副词, 表示热的程度, 修饰 hot.

5. Sailors were afraid that they might sail right off the earth.

此句中, that 引导的名词性从句作形容词的补足语。例如:

1) I am afraid that I can not finish the article in two hours. (我担心我两小时内写不完这篇文章。)

2) He was afraid that he couldn't give you a definite answer. (他担心他不能给你一个明确的答复。)

3) I am afraid that I have made a mistake. (我担心自己犯了一个错误。)

4) We are confident that we can overcome all the difficulties. (我们相信自己能克服所有的困难。)

对“be + 形容词 + that 引起的从句”这类结构，语法家们有的认为 that 从句做宾语用，有的认为 that 从句做状语用。根据句子的逻辑意义来判断也许比较方便一些。如：I'm sorry that you failed the exam again. 这个句子中的 that 从句起状语作用，相当于“...because you failed the exam again.”

6. The Atlantic Ocean is only half as big as the Pacific, ...

在第一单元中我们讨论过副词的同等比较。本句中 as big as 则是形容词的同等比较。在这类句子中，可以有表示程度的状语。例如：

1) This book is not half as interesting as that one. (这本书还不如那本书一半有趣。)

2) My monthly income is only half as much as his. (我的月收入只有他的一半多。)

3) This year our university will enroll three times as many students as it did the year before last. (我们学校今年的招生人数将是前年的三倍。)

请翻译下面的句子：

1) 我的英语口语还不及你的一半流利。(My spoken English is not half as fluent as yours.)

2) 这只手提箱还没有那只手提箱一半重。(This suitcase is not half as heavy as that one.)

3) 这个房间是那个房间的两倍。(This room is twice as large as that one.)

7. But suppose no more rain fell into it and no more water was brought to it by rivers.

suppose 常常做动词用，意思是“假定；猜想；认为”。例如：

1) Let's suppose it to be true. (让我们假定这是真的。)

2) I suppose he is very nervous. (我猜想他很紧张。)

3) I supposed him to be an honest man, but he often tells lies. (我以为他很诚实，他却经常说谎。)

在本句中 suppose (也可以用 supposing) 是一个连词，意思是“假设 (if); 假使...结果会怎么样”。例如：

1) Suppose he is ill, what shall we do? (假如他病了，我们怎么办?)

2) Suppose a tiger should come out of the cage? (如果一只老虎从笼子中跑出来怎么办?)

3) Suppose something should go wrong? (如果出了什么问题会怎么样?)

8. It would take the ocean about 4000 years to dry up.

it takes (sb.) some time to do sth. 是很常用的一个句型。例如:

1) 我骑自行车到学校要花半小时。(It takes me half an hour to get to school by bike.)

2) 他花了两个星期时间才看完那本书。(It took him two weeks to finish reading that book.)

请翻译下面的句子:

1) It took the boy three hours to finish his homework. (那个男孩花了3小时才写完作业。)

2) It takes less than 4 hours to get to Shanghai by train from Nanjing. (从南京乘火车到上海只要不到4小时。)

3) 他花了4天时间才走出密林。(It took him 4 days to go out of the forest.)

4) 照顾一个生病的老人要花许多时间。(It will take a great deal of time to look after a sick old man.)

9. On the average the water is a little more than two miles deep, but in places it is much deeper.

on the average 在句子中的意思是“平均而言”。例如:

1) On the average, they drove 70 miles an hour. (他们平均每小时行驶70英里。)

2) On the average, they spend 20 yuan on food every day. (他们平均每天花20块钱吃饭。)

a little 在句子中修饰 more, 表示程度, 意思是“一点儿, 稍许”。much 在句子中修饰 deeper, 也表示程度, 加强形容词比较级, 意思是“…多”。例如:

1) I feel a little cold. (我觉得有点冷。)

2) He spent a little more than 20 yuan yesterday. (昨天他花了20块多一点儿。)

3) I feel much better now. (我现在感觉好多了。)

4) She is much more careful this time. (她这一次细心多了。)

请翻译下面的句子:

1) 干了一天的工作,我觉得有点累。(I feel a little tired after a day's work.)

2) 她对她的同学有点不友好。(She is a little unfriendly to her classmates.)

3) 听了那个消息他开心多了。(He was much happier after hearing that news.)

10. This "deep" measures 30, 246 feet—almost 6 miles (9.6km).

本句中的 deep 做名词用,意思是“深处”,“海渊”(水深超过 3000 英里)。

measure 在句子中做动词用,意思是“测量”,“有…深”。例如:

1) This room measures 10 metres across. (这个房间宽 10 米。)

2) The bridge measures 17 kilometres long. (这座桥长 17 公里。)

3) The water tank only measures 2 metres deep. (这只水箱只有 2 米深。)

11. One of the longest mountain ranges of the world rises from the floor of the Atlantic.

本句中的 longest 与课文前几段中出现的 narrowest, saltiest, deepest 一样,都是形容词的最高级形式。因为这几个词是单音节词或是以元音结尾的双音节词,所以,最高级的构成是在词尾加 -est. 对于大部分两个音节以上的形容词,最高级的构成是在形容词前面加 most. 请看例句:

1) He wants to make everybody believe that he is the happiest person in the world. (他想使每一个人相信他是世界上最幸福的人。)

2) This is the strongest horse I have ever seen. (这是我所见过的最强壮的马。)

3) The boss wanted to find the most careful employees. (老板想找最细心的雇工。)

4) 黄山是我所知道的最美的山之一。(Yellow Mountain is one of the most beautiful mountains I have ever known.)

5) 这条高速公路是中国最长的。(This express way is one of the longest in China.)

6) 这本书是三本书中最有意思的。(This book is the most interesting of the three.)

rise 是一个不及物动词，在句子中的意思是“升起；隆起”。例如：

1) The sun rises in the east. (太阳在东方升起。)

2) Give the child some medicine, his temperature is rising. (给孩子服药，他的体温在升高。)

3) The mountain peak rises above the clouds. (山峰高耸入云。)

请注意区别以下动词：

1) rise 不及物动词 (起立；上升，高耸；浮现)

The old lady rose to her feet when she heard the doorbell.

The tower rises to a height of 70 feet.

An idea rises in my mind.

2) raise 及物动词 (举起；养育；提高；召集)

If you have any questions, please raise your hands.

When Father was in the army, Mother had a hard time raising three children.

The management promised to raise the workers' salary after the negotiation.

He failed to raise the money for his father's heart operation.

3) arise 不及物动词 (升起；出现；由...引起)

Heavy smoke arose beyond the mountain.

New problems arise when old ones are solved.

His illness arose from malnutrition.

4) arouse 及物动词 (唤醒; 激起, 引起)

The noise outside aroused him from sleep.

The music aroused a feeling of homesickness in him.

floor 在句子中的意思是“海底”。在其他语言环境中, floor 当然有其他的意思。如:

1) He lives on the seventh floor. (他住在7楼。)

2) The wood floor gives a feeling of warmth in the winter. (冬天时, 木地板给我温暖的感觉。)

3) He was given the floor at the meeting. (他在会上得到了发言权。)

4) He decided to floor the kitchen with plastic tiles. (他决定用塑料砖铺厨房地面。)

12. The tops of a few of the mountains reach up above the sea and make island

top 在句中做名词用, 意思是“顶部, 山顶”。例如:

1) He was the first to climb to the top of the hill. (他第一个爬上山顶。)

2) When we stand on the top of the mountain, the whole city is in sight. (我们站在山顶时, 整个城市尽收眼底)

请翻译下面的句子, 注意 top 的词类和意思:

1) He shouted at the top of his voice. (他放声高叫。)-n.

2) He is running at the top of his speed. (他正以最快的速度奔跑。)-n.

3) He is the top student in the class. (他是班上的尖子学生。)-adj.

4) This is the top news of the week. (这是本周的头条新闻。)-adj.

5) His father is a top diplomatic advisor. (他父亲是高级外交顾问。)
-adj.

6) Mother is going to top the cake with cream. (妈妈准备在蛋糕上浇奶油。)-v.

7) He tops his father by half a head. (他比父亲高出半个头。)-v.

8) She needs a new skirt to match her top. (她需要一条新裙子配她的上衣。)-n.

与 top 有关的词组:

come out top (名列前茅) come out on top (出人头地) from top
to bottom (从上到下, 彻底地) from top to toe (从头到脚; 完全) on
top of the world (非常幸福; 心满意足)

13. Several hundred miles eastward from Florida there is a part of the ocean called the Sargasso Sea.

called the Sargasso Sea 是修饰 ocean 的定语从句, 在其前省去了 which is.

请看下面的例句:

1) Opportunities are often things (that) you have not noticed the first time around.

(机会常常是第一次出现时没有被人们注意到的东西。)

2) There is much (that) the little boy can do. (有许多是那小男孩能做。)

3) He is the right person (that) I want to discuss the problem with. (他正是我想与其讨论这个问题的人。)

14. In the days of sailing vessels the crew were afraid they would be becalmed here. Sometimes they were.

days 常常指“时期, 时代”, 有时也表示“一生; 生命”。请看例句:

1) In his boyhood days, he often went swimming and fishing with his friends. (在他的童年时代, 他常常和伙伴们一起游泳, 钓鱼。)

2) In the days of Queen Victoria, the British colony expanded rapidly. (在维多利亚女王时代, 英国殖民地迅速扩张。)

3) He has experienced a lot of hardships in his days. (他一生中吃了许多苦。)

crew 是一个集合名词, 指“全体船员”, 后面的谓语动词可以用单数也可以用复数, 此句中谓语动词用的是复数 were, 因为从句子中可以推断出是许多 vessels (船) 上的船员。Sometimes they were. 句子中省略 becalmed.

15. The Atlantic furnishes much food for the people on its shores.

furnish sth. to sb. 意思是“为…提供”, 我们同样可以用 furnish sb. with sth. 来表达这个意思。例如:

They furnished blankets and food to the refugees. (他们为难民供应毯子和食物。)

No one expected that he would furnish the information to the opponent. (谁也没有料到他会把消息提供给对手。)

Luckily, they have furnished us with a car and all the necessary maps. (幸运的是他们为我们提供了一辆汽车和所有必要的地图。)

16. One of its famous fishing regions, the Grand Banks, is near Newfoundland.

the Grand Banks 在句子中做同位语。请看下面的例句:

1) This theory was advanced by Einstein, a famous scientist. (这个理论是由著名科学家爱因斯坦提出的。)

2) This is Mr. Benjamin, dean of our department. (这是我们系主任本杰明先生。)

3) Qinghai Lake, the largest inland body of salt water in China, lies 3,198 metres above sea-level. (中国最大的内陆咸水湖青海湖海拔 3,198 米。)

本课主要词组及句型

词组:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. separate from | 2. keep sb. from doing sth. |
| 3. be unwilling to do sth. | 4. between A and B |
| 5. make sth unusual | 6. so...that |

7. dry up

8. on the average

9. rise from

10. furnish sth for sb.

11. pile up

12. from...to

句型:

A. 定语从句:

1) The Atlantic is one of the oceans that separate the Old World from the New.

2) Ocean currents affect the climates of the land near which they flow.

B. 表语从句:

1) One idea was that it reached out to "the edge of the world".

2) Another idea was that at the equator the ocean would be boiling hot.

C. 结果状语从句:

1) There is so much water in the Atlantic that it is hard to imagine how much there is.

2) We now have such fast ways of travelling that this big ocean seems to have grown smaller.

D. 形容词的比较级和最高级:

1) The Atlantic is only half as big as the Pacific, but still it is very large.

2) It is more than 4, 000 miles wide where Columbus crossed it.

3) Even at its narrowest it is about 2, 000 miles wide.

4) Also, it is the world's saltiest ocean.

5) The deepest spot is near Puerto Rico.

E. be one of+复数名词

The Atlantic Ocean is one of the oceans that separate the Old World from the New.

F. it takes sb. some time to do sth.

It would take the ocean about 4, 000 years to dry up.

地理名称

1. (七) 大洲和 (四) 大洋

Asia (亚洲) Europe (欧洲) Africa (非洲)
North America (北美洲)

South America (南美洲) Oceania (大洋洲)
the Antarctic (南极洲)

The Atlantic (大西洋) the Pacific (太平洋) the Indian (印度洋)
the Arctic (北冰洋)

2. 常用词

continent (大陆) continental shelf (大陆架) subcontinent (次大陆)
iceberg (冰山)

mountain range (山脉) volcano (火山) delta (三角洲)
waterfall (瀑布)

gulf (海湾) straits; channel (海峡) coast line (海岸线)
beach (海滩)

3. 大西洋之最

1) The Atlantic is the second largest ocean in the world

2) The Atlantic is the saltiest ocean in the world

3) Puerto Rico Trench is the deepest in the Atlantic Ocean.

4) Gulf Stream is the strongest warm water current in the Atlantic Ocean.

5) The Grand Banks near Newfoundland is the most prosperous fishing region in the world.

6) The drainage area of the Atlantic is four times that of the Pacific or the Indian.

2. 主要属海和岛屿

the Mississippi 密西西比河 the Hudson 哈得逊河 the
Amazon 亚马逊河

the Congo 刚果河 Baffin Bay 巴芬湾 the
Nigeria 尼日利亚河

the Rhine 莱茵河 the Caribbean Sea 加勒比海 the
Mexican Gulf 墨西哥湾

the Hudson Bay 哈得逊湾 the Mediterranean Sea 地中海 the
Black Sea 黑海

the North Sea 北海 the Baltic Sea 波罗的克海 Iceland
冰岛

Greenland 格陵兰岛 Faeroe Islands 法罗群
岛 Shetland Islands 设得兰岛

Bermudas 百慕大群岛 Azores 亚速尔群
岛 Grenada 格陵纳达岛

Antilles 安的列斯群岛 Trinidad Islands 特里尼达群
岛 Malvinas Islands 马尔维纳斯群岛

Bahamas 巴哈马群岛

Text B The Moon

短语表达

1. tie to (与...联系在一起; 使束缚于...)

He is seriously ill and has been tied to his bed for almost a month.
(他病得厉害, 已经卧床近一个月了。)

Study ties smoking to many diseases. (据研究, 许多疾病与抽烟有关。)

I am sorry I didn't have the time to go shopping with you. I was tied
to housework. (很抱歉我没能有时间和你一起去购物, 家务杂事把我拴住了。)

2. except for (除了...之外)

The room is empty except for some chairs. (房间里除了一些椅子空荡荡。)

Your composition is well written except for some spelling mistakes. (除了几处拼写错误, 你的文章写的不错)

3. be near to (靠近)

The park is near to our school. Let's go boating. (公园离我们学校很近, 我们去划船吧。)

The police station is near to our community. It is within walking distance.

(警察局离我们社区很近, 步行就能到达。)

4. face towards (朝向)

My office is in the building that faces towards the street. (我的办公室在那座朝街的楼里。)

His new house faces towards the south. (他的新房子朝南。)

5. keep...in mind (把...记在心里)

I am not sure if he would keep what you have said in mind. (我不能肯定他是否会把你说的话记在心里。)

I will keep this in mind for future reference. (我会记住这个, 供以后参考。)

6. light up (变亮; 使容光焕发)

Her face lighted up when she heard the news. (听到那个消息, 她面露喜色。)

His face was lighted (lit) up with excitement. (他因兴奋而满面春风。)

7. reflect (反射)

Mirrors reflect light. (镜子反射光。)

The white sand reflected the sun's heat (白沙地反射太阳的热气。)

The light reflected from the water into my eyes. (光线投过水面反射到我眼里。)

8. ...enough for sb. to do sth. (足以让某人做某事)

The room is big enough for us to have a dancing party. (这间房够大了，我们可以在里面开舞会。)

The basket is light enough for the little boy to carry. (这只篮子很轻，那个小男孩能提动。)

9. speak of (提到，说起)

I have never heard him speak of his past. (我从来没有听他提起他的过去。)

She always looks proud when she speaks of her son. (说到她的儿子她总是很自豪的样子。)

10. otherwise (不然；另外的)

He reminded me of what I might otherwise have forgotten. (他提醒了我，不然我可能会忘记那件事。)

He is a little careless, but he is otherwise quite suitable for the job. (他有点粗心，除此以外，他倒是很适合这个工作的。)

He is honest, but his twin brother is otherwise. (他很诚实，而他的孪生兄弟则不然。)

11. nothing but (仅仅，除了...之外没有什么)

There is nothing but a piece of bread in the cupboard. (食橱里除了一片面包什么也没有。)

He asked for nothing but trust. (除了信任，他什么要求都没有。)

Unit4 (第11讲—第13讲)

Text A Improving Your Memory

本课主要语言点

1. psychological adj. 心理学的

Psychological factors often play an important part in winning a competition.

(在赢得一场比赛中，心理因素常常起着重要作用。)

Make sure all the kids are psychologically healthy. (确保孩子们心理健康。)

psycho + logy
/ \
mind, soul + study
(the study of one's mind—心理学)

psycho + log + ist
/ | \
mind, soul + study + person

(the person who studies human mind—心理学家)

在希腊语中，psycho表示“灵魂”，“精神”，“心理”。在英语中，有不少词是用psycho做前缀构成的。除了刚才提到的psychology, psychological, psychologist以外，常见的还有：psychoanalysis（精神分析），psychotherapy（心理疗法）等。

2. focus v. (使)聚焦，(使)集中 (focus on) n. 焦点，中心

He is focusing his eyes on a painting on the wall. (他正注视着墙上的一幅画。)

Please focus your attention on the main problems. (请把注意力集中在主要问题上。)

This area became the focus of the world's attention again. (这一地区再次成为世界注意的中心。)

The 27th Olympic Games is now the focus of people's interest. (眼下第二十七届奥运会是人们兴趣的中心。)

3. basic adj. 基本的，基础的

They didn't make any effort to solve the basic economic problems. (他们没有做任何努力去解决基本的经济问题。)

He even didn't have a basic aim in life. (他连生活的基本目标都没有。)

There are certain factors that are basic to a good relationship between the two countries. (有些因素对两国之间良好关系是很重要的。)

It is necessary to teach them some basic mathematical skills. (教他们一些基本的数学技能是必要的。)

4. principle n. 原理, 原则; 信念 principal adj. 主要的 n. 校长, 负责人; 委托人

He won't give in as it is a matter of principle. (这是一个原则问题, 他不会让步的。)

The two machines work on the same principle. (这两台机器的工作原理是一样的。)

No matter what you do, it is important that you have moral principle. (无论你做什么, 道义很重要。)

Rice is the principal food for most of the Chinese people. (米饭是大多数中国人的主食。)

Go and ask all the principal persons concerned to come here. (去请所有有关的主要人员到这儿来。)

She is the principal of that school. (她是那所学校的校长。)

5. meaningfulness n. 富有意义

mean v. 表示...意思, 意味着; 打算

meaning n. 意思, 意义

meaningful adj. 有意思的, 意味深长的

meaningless adj. 没有意思的

Meaningfulness and organization are the two basic principles that help memory. (信息的意义和组织是有助于记忆的两个基本原则。)

I don't know what he meant by telling me the news. (我不知道他把这个消息告诉我是什么意思。)

Can you explain the meaning of the word to me? (你能把这个单词的意思给我解释一下吗?)

They failed to get meaningful results from the experiment. (他们在实验中没有得到任何有意义的结果。)

It is meaningless to argue any further. (再争辩下去没有任何意义。)

6. organization n. 组织; 机构

organize v. 组织

China will surely become a member of the World Trade Organization (WTO). (中国一定会成为世界贸易组织的一员。)

Everything is in a mess because there is a complete lack of organization. (由于组织工作的缺乏, 一切处于混乱之中。)

He organized a strike for better working conditions. (为了争取更好的工作条件, 他组织了一次罢工。)

He thought the meeting was badly organized. (他认为会议组织得很糟糕。)

7. association n. 联合, 结合; 交往; 协会

associate v. 使联合; 把...联想起来; 交往 (associate with)

associate adj. 副的

The cultural activity was organized by the Chinese People's Association for Friendship with Foreign Countries. (这一文化活动是由中国人民对外友好协会组织的。)

The picture reminded me of my brief association with the old lady years ago. (这幅画使我想起了多年前我与那位老太太的短暂交往。)

Her hometown has happy associations for her. (她的家乡给了她许多美好的联想。)

It is really difficult for me to associate the two ideas. (对我来说把这两个观点联系起来很困难。)

He spent all his spare time associating with boys from the neighboring community. (他把所有的业余时间都花在与邻近社区男孩的交往上。)

People always associate the name of Abraham Lincoln with the American Civil War. (人们总是把亚伯拉罕·林肯的名字与美国内战联系在一起。)

an associate professor 副教授

an associate editor 副主编

8. visualization n. 想像, 设想

visualize v. 设想, 想像

visual adj. 视觉的; 看的见的; 形象化的

Like meaningfulness and organization, visualization is also helpful to memory. (如同意义和组织, 想像也有助于记忆。)

I just cannot visualize what might become of him. (我无法想像他会变成什么样。)

Even though I was not there, I can easily visualize the scene. (尽管我不在那儿, 那儿的情景我不难想像。)

I cannot say for sure if it was your visual illusion. (我不能肯定这是不是你的视错觉。)

The stories he wrote are extremely visual. (他写的故事非常生动。)

9. rhyme v. 韵, 押韵

rhythm n. 节奏

I cannot think of a rhyme for "seven". (我想不出一个跟 "seven" 同韵的词。)

She called him Guppy, to rhyme with puppy. (她叫他 Guppy, 是为了跟 puppy 押韵。)

The rhythm of his speech held the attention of the audience. (他讲话时语调的抑扬顿挫抓住了听众的注意力。)

Human biological rhythms are related to the natural cycle of day and night. (人的生物节奏与昼夜的自然循环有关。)

10. ability n. 能力, 才能

Human beings have the ability to learn and use a language. (人类有学会和使用语言的能力。)

No matter what you do, try to do it to the best of your ability. (不管做什么, 你都要尽力而为。)

His ability to master 5 foreign languages wins him the admiration of all his classmates. (他能掌握五门外语的能力赢得了所有同学的钦佩。)

He has good speaking ability, but his writing ability is poor. (他说的能力很好, 但写的能力差。)

He is a man of outstanding ability. (他是一个有非凡才能的人。)

11. random adj. 胡乱的, 任意的, 随意的 n. 无目的或目标

The way the books were arranged seemed completely random. (图书排列的方式似乎很随意。)

This is just a random selection of all the complaints we have received about our after service.

(我们只是对所收到的有关售后服务方面的投诉随意地选择了一下。)

He opened the books at random. (他胡乱地打开了书。)

When his wife was away, he piled the soiled dishes in the kitchen at random. (他妻子外出时, 他把脏碟子乱七八糟地堆在厨房里。)

12. categorize v. 分类

category n. 种类; 范畴; 部门

If you categorize the information you need to remember, you will find it much easier. (如果你把所需记忆的信息分类, 你就会觉得记忆起来要容易得多。)

They categorized 200 songs as folk songs. (他们把两百首歌归为民歌类歌曲。)

These books fall into the category of reference books. (这些书属参考书类。)

His research does not belong to the category of natural science. (他的研究不属于自然科学范畴。)

13. following adj. 接着的, 下述的 prep. 在...之后

the following 如下

He promised the old man that he would come and see him again the following day. (他答应老人第二天再来看他。)

After the meeting the following teachers will stay. (会后, 以下的老师请留下。)

The following examples will prove my point. (下面的例子将证实我的观点。)

Following the discussion a decision was made. (讨论之后便做出了决定。)

Following the concert he went home. (音乐会后, 他就回了家。)

The following are worthy of your attention. (以下几点值得你们注意。)

The winners of the competition are the following: ... (竞赛获胜者如下: ...)

14. needless adj. 不需要的, 不必要的

Needless to say, I don't think much of the proposal he put forward at the meeting. (不用说, 我觉得他在会上提的建议不怎么样。)

You don't have to take such a needless risk. (你不用去冒这种不必要的险。)

Don't you think it is a waste of time to give him so much needless care? (你不觉得给他这么多不必要的关心是浪费时间吗?)

15. refer v. (to) 提到, 涉及; 参考, 查阅; 把...归到...上; 使向...请教; 有关联

reference n. 参考; 提及; 关联

The whole thing is finished now, please don't refer to it. (整个事情都结束了, 不要再提了。)

He often refers to a dictionary for the spelling and meaning of a word. (他常常翻词典查阅词的拼写和意思。)

He referred to her former classmates for her character. (他向她以前的同学询问她的品行。)

He referred his defeat to poor health. (他把自己的失败归因于身体不好。)

She referred me to Prof. Wang for detailed information. (他叫我去王教授那儿询问详情。)

The doctor referred her to a heart specialist. (医生嘱咐她转诊于一位心脏病专家。)

These answers are for reference only. (这些答案仅供参考。)

His play is full of references to the political events of those days. (他的剧本涉及当时的许多政治事件。)

16. relate v. (to) 有关联; 叙述, 讲述

related adj. 有关的, 相关的

relation n. 关系, 联系

He related the story vividly to the whole class. (他向全班同学生动地讲述了那个故事。)

I don't understand how the result related to / with the cause. (我不理解结果和原因如何关联。)

If you want me to do this, you have to give me all the related material. (如果你想让我做这件事, 你得把所有相关的材料给我。)

Don't worry too much about them, they have very good relations. (别太为他们担心, 他们的关系很好。)

The two countries have established trade relations. (两国建立了贸易关系。)

17. accurately adv. 准确地, 精确地

accurate adj. 准确的, 精确的

accuracy n. 准确, 精确

Remember that you have to do this work carefully and accurately. (记住, 这项工作得做得细心而准确。)

Right now I cannot give you a very accurate estimate. (现在我不能给你一个非常准确的估计。)

He required that the typing should be done with great accuracy. (他要求打字必须十分准确。)

18. memorize v. 熟记, 记住

Our English teacher asked us to memorize the words we learned today.
(我们英语老师要求我们熟记今天所学的英语单词。)

It is no easy thing for me to memorize all these telephone numbers.
(熟记这些电话号码对我来说真不是一件容易的事情。)

19. repeat v. 重复 repetition n. 重复

I didn't quite catch what you said just now. Will you please repeat it?
(我没有听清你刚才说的话, 请你重复一遍, 好吗?)

We cannot repeat our mistakes. (我们不能重复自己的错误。)

Repetition is necessary in language teaching and learning. (重复在语言教学中是必要的。)

He memorized his lines after many repetitions. (经过多次重复他终于熟记了台词。)

20. preserve v. 保护, 维持; 保存

You will soon be near-sighted if you don't preserve your eyesight from now.
(如果你不从现在起保护视力, 你很快会近视的。)

What do you think the United Nations can do in preserving world peace?
(你觉得联合国能为维护世界和平做些什么?)

Deep freezing is the simplest way of preserving food. (深冻是保藏食品最简便的方法。)

词缀法

1. 名词后缀 -ation; tion; sion

organization, visualization, information, preservation, integration,
relation, association, repetition, separation, addition

2. 动词后缀 -ize

organize, memorize, visualize, categorize, familiarize

3. 名词后缀 -ence

reference, difference

4. 名词后缀 -ity

similarity, familairity

本课简介

本课介绍了在如何增强记忆方面心理学所做的研究。信息的意义，组织，联想和想像是有助于记忆的几个基本原则。如何运用这些基本原则呢？课文对此一一作了介绍，条理十分清楚。学了本课，相信会有收获。

本课语言点

1. Psychological research has focused on a number of basic principles that helps memory.

research 在本句中做名词，这个词也可以做动词用。请看下面的例句，注意 research 的词类和用法：

1) An excellent piece of research won him the international prize.
(一项出色的研究使他获得了国际大奖。)

2) Research shows that the potential of man's brain is limitless.
(研究表明人脑的潜力是无限的。)

3) Much research has been done on / into diseases of blood. (在血液病方面人们做了很多的研究。)

4) Scientists have been researching on / into the causes of brain damage. (科学家们一直对脑损伤的起因进行研究。)

5) They felt very much disappointed as they had been researching for three years but with no result. (做了三年的研究而没有任何结果，他们感到很失望。)

focus on 是一个常用词组，意思是“集中”，在生词部分已作了较为详细的讲解，在此，请翻译几个句子：

1) 他今天准是累了，他无法把注意力集中在工作上。He must be very tired today, he just couldn't focus his attention to his work.)

2) 她觉得很不自在，因为所有的目光都注视着她。(She felt very uneasy as all eyes were focused on her.)

3) 这本书着重谈了中东的形势。(This book focuses on the situation in the Middle East.)

a number of 的意思是“许多”。请看下面的例句，注意 a number of 和 the number of 的区别：

1) A number of factories have been shut down because of pollution problems. (由于污染问题许多工厂被关闭了。)

2) A number of students have handed in their application forms. (许多学生都递交了申请表。)

3) The number of students in our school increases every year. (我们学校的学生人数每年都在增加。)

4) The number of passengers who were injured in the accident is still unknown. (在事故中受伤的乘客人数还不知道。)

2. It is useful to know how these principles work.

it 在句中做形式主语，真正的主语 to know how these principles work, 此类结构我们在第一和第二单元已有了解。请看下面的句子：

1) It is necessary to learn how to use the computer. (学会如何使用计算机很有必要。)

2) It is important to find out why the forest fire broke out. (找出森林大火的原因很重要。)

3) It is difficult to know what he is thinking about. (要想知道他在想什么很困难。)

work 在本句中的意思是“起作用；产生影响”，请翻译下面的句子：

1) The doctor said that the medicine would work. (医生说药会起作用的。)

2) They didn't think his plan would work. (他们认为他的计划行不通。)

3) They didn't expect that the teacher's encouragement would work such a change in him. (他们没有料到老师的鼓励会使他产生如此变化。)

Unit4 (第 11 讲—第 13 讲)

3. Meaningfulness affects memory at all levels.

affect 是动词，意思是“影响”。常常会有一些英语学习者把动词 affect 和名词 effect 混淆，请注意下面的句子：

1) The drought would surely affect the harvest. (这场干旱肯定会影响到收成。)

2) Excessive smoking affected his health, bad coughs often made it difficult to breathe. (过度吸烟影响了他的健康,严重的咳嗽使他难以呼吸。)

3) Psychologists believe that colors have a definite effect on people. (心理学家认为颜色对人肯定有影响。)

4) We could all see the effects of the illness on him. (我们都能看出那场病在的身上的影响。)

5) 职务的变化使他的收入大受影响。(The change in position greatly affected his income.)

6) 他的话对听众没有任何影响作用。(What he said had little effect on the audience.)

4. Information that doesn't make any sense to you is difficult to remember.

that 引导的定语从句修饰 information; 主句是 Information is difficult to remember.

不定式 to remember 用在做表语用的形容词后面作状语。请看下面的句子:

1) Einstein was easy to get along with. (爱因斯坦很容易相处。)

2) To many foreigners, Chinese is hard to learn. (对许多外国人来说汉语很难学。)

3) The water in this river is not fit to drink. (这条河里的水不适合饮用。)

4) This question is very difficult to answer. (这个问题很难回答。)

make sense 的意思是“有意义;可理解”。请看下面的句子:

1) No matter how you read it, this sentence doesn't make any sense to me. (无论你怎么读,我都不理解这个句子。)

2) What the writer wanted to express in his book doesn't make any sense to the readers. (读者们无法理解作者在书中所要表达的意思。)

3) His explanation makes no sense to his students. (学生们不理解他的解释。)

5. Organization also makes a difference in our ability to remember.

动词不定式 to remember 在句中做定语，修饰名词 ability. 请看下面的句子：

1) You should have confidence in your ability to fulfill the task.
(你们应对自己完成认务的能力有信心。)

2) He has kept the promise to come early in the morning. (他遵守了一大早来的诺言。)

3) They have the determination to overcome all the difficulties.
(他们有克服所有困难的决心。)

4) We could see her anxiety to solve the problem. (我们能看出她急于解决这个问题。)

make a difference 的意思是“有关系；有影响；起作用”。请看下面的句子：

1) What he said would not make any difference in my decision-making.
(他说的话不会对我做决定产生任何影响。)

2) Your participation in the work will make a great difference.
(你参与我们的工作，情况就不一样了。)

3) Money won't make much difference to him. (钱对他起不了多大作用。)

4) I didn't like the appearance of the house, but the location and price made all the difference. (我不喜欢那房子的外观，但它的位置和价格起了重要作用。)

6. Material that is organized is better remembered than jumbled information.

句中的 better 是副词 well 的比较级形式，意思是“更好地”。请看下面的句子：

1) This story is better written than that one. (这个故事写得比那个好。)

2) This room is better furnished than that one. (这间屋子装饰得比那间好。)

3) This team is better trained than that one. (这个队训练得比那个队好。)

4) This job is better paid than that one. (这份工作的报酬比那份高。)

information 是一个不可数名词，不能在其后加“-s”。请看例句：

1) There are many ways of obtaining information. (获得信息的途径很多。)

2) So far I haven't got any information about the game. (我至今还没有得到有关比赛的任何消息。)

3) I am sure this piece of information will be of great value to them. (我肯定这一消息对他们会很有价值。)

7. Chunking consists of grouping separate bits of information.

在第一单元的 Text B 中我们已经对 consist of 有所了解。这一词组的意思是“由…组成”，它与 be made up of; be composed of 的意思相近，但 consist of 不用被动语态。请看例句：

1) The United States consists of 50 states. (美国由 50 个州组成。)

2) The United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. (英国由大不立颠和北爱尔兰组成。)

3) Their team is made up of 6 team members. (他们队由 6 名队员组成。)

4) Our class is made up of 45 students. (我们班由 45 名同学组成。)

a bit 在句中的意思是“一点，一些”，它可以用在形容词的前面，但是不能用在名词的前面。在名词前面必须用 a bit of. 请看下面的例句：

1) I am a bit tired today. (我今天有点累。)

2) He said he was bit hungry. (他说他有点饿。)

3) Your article is a bit long for our paper. (你的文章对我们的报纸来说有点长了。)

4) He gave the bird a bit of water. (他给了鸟儿一点水。)

5) I would appreciate it if you could give me a bit of good advice. (如果你能给我一点宝贵建议我会很感激的。)

6) I only know a bit of Spanish. (我只懂一点点西班牙语。)

8. Categorizing is another means of organization.

句中的 means 是一个名词，意思是“方式；手段”，它不是动词 mean 的第三人称单数。请看下面的例句：

1) The quickest means of travel is by plane. (最快的旅行方式是乘飞机。)

2) Bicycle is the most convenient means of transport. (自行车是最方便的交通工具。)

3) Email is a modern means of communication. (电子邮件是一种现代通讯方式。)

4) He means what he says. (他说话算数。)

5) Forgetting the past means betrayal. (忘记过去就意味着背叛。)

9. Many people will group them into similar categories and remember them as follows:

group into 在句中的意思是“把…分组；把…归类”。请看例句：

1) We can group the animals into several types. (我们可以把这些动物归成几类。)

2) Group the words into similar categories and they will be more easily to remember. (把类型相似的单词归类，记起来就更容易了。)

as follows 的意思是“如下”，请看例句：

1) The full text reads as follows: (全文如下：)

2) The results are as follows: (结果如下：)

10. Association refers to taking the material we want to remember and relating it to something we remember accurately.

refer to 这一词组的意思很多，我们在单词部分已做过讲解。该词组在本句中的意思是“涉及；指”。请看下面的句子：

1) In the second chapter I will refer to this point again. (在第二章中，我还会提到这一点的。)

2) The numbers in my article refer to the footnotes. (我文章中的数目字指的是注脚。)

3) The author referred to his grandfather several times in his story.
(作者在他的故事中几次提到他的祖父。)

we want to remember 和 we remember accurately 都是省略了 that 的定语从句，前者修饰 material，后者修饰 something. 请看例句：

1) The book you gave me is very interesting. (你给我的那本书很有趣。)

2) The news he told me disturbed all of us greatly. (他告诉我的那个消息使我们大家深感不安。)

3) The information you gathered is of great help to me. (你收集的那些信息对我很有帮助。)

句子中的 it 指的是 the material. relate...to 在句子中的意思是“与...有关系”，请看例句：

1) His talk mainly related to environmental protection. (他的讲话主要是关于环境保护的。)

2) This regulation relates only to children under 12. (这一规则仅适用于12岁以下儿童。)

11. Research has shown striking improvements in many types of memory tasks when people are asked to visualize the items to be remembered.

striking 在句子中做形容词用，意思是“显著的，引人注目的”，请看例句：

1) They made a striking commercial success within 5 years. (在5年的时间里，他们在商业上取得了惊人的成功。)

2) Helen's facial features bore a striking resemblance to her mother's. (海伦的面部特征与她的母亲十分相像。)

3) I am not sure whether he can make it this time. I just feel he has a striking lack of confidence. (我不能确定他这次能否成功，其只是觉得他明显信心不足。)

to be remembered 不定式的被动形式做定语，修饰 the items. 请看例句：

1) There are a lot of things to be done. (有很多事要做。)

2) Are you going to the press conference to be held this weekend?
(你准备参加本周末举行的记者招待会吗?)

3) This was the first project to be designed John's brother. (这是约翰的哥哥设计的第一个工程。)

12. In one study, subjects in one group were asked to learn some words using imagery, while the second group used repetition to learn the words.

subject 在本句中做名词用,意思是“受试者,实验对象”。Subject 这个词的词义很多,请看例句,注意 subject 的词义:

1) The subject of today's discussion is "Population and Education". (今天讨论的题目是“人口与教育”。)

2) The teacher explained in details the subject of the story to the whole class. (老师把故事的主题详细讲给全班同学听。)

3) How many subjects are you taking this semester? (这学期你选几门课?)

4) He became the subject for ridicule. (他成了人们取笑的对象。)

5) Rabbits and mice are often subjects for medical experiments. (兔和鼠常被用作医学实验的对象。)

6) He is a Chinese subject. (他是中国国民。)

7) This sentence doesn't have a subject. (这个句子没有主语。)

subject 还常常做动词或形容词用,请看例句:

1) The country was once subjected to foreign rule. (这个国家曾一度受外国统治。)

2) Taipei was subjected to serious earthquakes last year. (台北去年遭受了严重的地震灾害。)

3) We are all subject to the laws of nature. (我们都要受自然规律的支配。)

4) The child is very subject to coughs. (这孩子动不动就咳嗽。)

5) All men are subject to death. (人总有一死。)

while 在句子中做连词用,意思是“而,然而”。while 也是一个多义词,请注意下面例句中 while 的意思:

1) Strike while the iron is hot. (趁热打铁。)

2) He listened to the radio while he was doing his homework. (他一边听收音机, 一边做作业。)

3) He is talkative while his twin brother is of few words. (他很健谈, 而他的孪生兄弟则少言寡语。)

4) While the old man is respected, he is not well liked. (这个老人很受尊敬, 但不太受欢迎。)

5) You will succeed sooner or later while you don't lose heart. (只要你不失去信心, 你迟早会成功。)

using imagery 分词做状语, 表示方式, 请看例句:

1) They stood there waiting for the bus.

2) She had to work standing up.

13. Thus forming an integrated image with all the information placed in a single mental picture can help us to preserve a memory.

划线部分是该句的主要成分, forming an integrated image 动名词短语做主语, can help 做谓语, us to preserve a memory 做复合宾语。

斜体部分是一个“with + 名词 + 过去分词”的独立结构, 做方式状语, 修饰动名词短语 forming an integrated image.

不定式与名词或代词构成复合结构, 做动词宾语的现象在英语中很常见, 在前几讲中我们也遇到过。再请看几个例句:

1) Would you like Tom to go with you? (你愿意汤姆和你一起去吗?)

2) He wants you to see him in the afternoon. (他想让你下午去见他。)

3) Father encouraged him to study harder. (父亲鼓励他更加努力学习。)

4) I will get someone to help you. (我去找个人来帮你。)

“with + 名词 + 过去分词”的独立结构在英语中也很常见, 请看例句:

1) With the problem solved, the plan is going on smoothly. (随着这个问题的解决, 计划正顺利进行。)

2) Standing there is a torture to her, with so many eyes fixed on her. (这么多人注视着她, 于她而言, 站在那儿是一种折磨。)

本课主要词组及句型

词组:

1. focus on
2. a number of
3. at all levels
4. make sense
5. make a difference
6. in random order
7. consist of
8. group into
9. as follows
10. needless to say
11. refer to
12. relate...to
13. associate with
14. compare with

句型:

A. 定语从句

1) Psychological research has focused on a number of basic principles that helps memory.

2) Information that does not make any sense to you is difficult to remember

3) There are several ways in which we can make material more meaningful.

4) Material that is organized is better remembered than jumbled information.

5) Association refers to taking the material we want to remember and relating it to something we remember accurately.

B. 动名词做主语

1) Chunking consists of grouping separate bits of information.

2) Categorizing is another means of organization.

3) Forming an integrated image with all the information placed in a single mental picture can help us to preserve a memory.

Text B Short-term Memory

短语表达

1. at a later time

Go ahead with your work, I will give you a call at a later time.

I am not sure if I can remember all this at a later time.

2. in contrast (with / to)

Helen is very talkative. In contrast, her elder sister is silent.

His rudeness was in striking contrast with Jack's thoughtfulness.

3. look up

I don't remember Tom's telephone number, will you please look it up in the telephone book for me?

Look up the dictionary for the meaning of this new word.

4. be unable to

I am really sorry that I was unable to give you a call beforehand.

He was unable to provide us with more information.

5. be released from

He was released from prison after he had been kept there for 5 years.

He was released from a hospital last week after treatment for a disease.

6. be rewarded with

The winner was rewarded with gift of fruit and flowers.

If the rat could find the right door, it would be rewarded with food.

Unit5 (第14讲—第16讲)

Text A Fallacies about Food

本课主要单词

1. fallacy n. 谬误；谬论；错误的推理或信念

That the earth is flat used to be a popular fallacy. (地球是扁平的这一谬误曾一度很流行。)

Needless to say, this statement is based on fallacy. (不用说，这是一个基于谬误推理的陈述。)

What you had seen couldn't be true, it might be a fallacy of the eye. (你所看到的不可能是真的，也许是你的视错觉。)

2. quality n. 质量；品质，特性 adj. 优质的，高级的

He is a man of many good qualities. (他具有许多优秀品质。)

The quality of your products is superior to that of ours. (你们的产品质量比我们的好。)

They promised that they would offer the community a variety of quality services. (他们承诺为社区提供多项优质服务。)

You have no reason to deprive me of the right to a quality education. (你没有理由剥夺我受良好教育的权利。)

qualify v. 使合适，使胜任

I am not very sure if he is qualified for the job. (我不很肯定他是否胜任这份工作。)

His skills qualify him for the job. (他的技艺使他有资格担任这一工作。)

qualified adj. 有资格的；称职的

What are you going to do with all these poorly qualified officers? (你会拿这些不称职的军官怎么样呢？)

He is trying hard to make himself a qualified teacher. (他在努力使自己成为一个称职的教师。)

3. savage adj. 野蛮的，未开化的；凶猛的，残酷的 n. 野蛮人，粗野的人

Most of the time elephants are tame but they can be very savage.
(大多数时候大象很温顺,但他们也会大发野性。)

No one can put up with his savage manners. (谁也忍受不了他的粗暴态度。)

They don't know what will be there waiting for them once they get to the savage wilderness. (他们不知道进入蛮荒之后等待他们的会是什么。)

He was afraid that he would encounter some savages if he stayed on that isolated island. (他担心呆在孤岛上会碰上野蛮人。)

4. tribe n. 种族, 部落; (动植物) 族, 类

This attitude still remains in some primitive tribes. (这种观念在一些原始部落中依然存在。)

They didn't quite expect that the tribe of cats could give them so much trouble. (他们没有料到猫族会给他们带来如此多的麻烦。)

5. bravery n. 勇敢, 大胆 brave adj. 勇敢的 v. 冒(危险等); 敢于做(某事)

Being a nurse requires infinite patience and bravery. (做护士需要无限的耐心和勇敢。)

He made a brave attempt to prevent the group fighting. (他勇敢地试图阻止群殴。)

They braved all the dangers and difficulties in completing their work. (他们冒着各种危险和困难完成了任务。)

6. eager adj. 热切的, 渴望的

be eager to do sth. 渴望做某事

be eager for/about sth. 渴求某事

eager beaver 做事异常卖力的人; 雄心勃勃的人

The eager crowd streamed into the hall. (急切的人群涌进了大厅。)

She opened the telegram with eager fingers. (她用手指急不可耐地拆开了电报。)

The teacher found all the students were eager to express their opinions. (老师发现所有的学生都渴望表述自己的观点。)

I am eager for the performance to begin. (我热切地等待着演出的开始。)

7. civilized adj. 文明的, 开化的

civilization n. 文明, 文化

Their aim is to create an orderly, just and civilized society. (他们的目标是建立一个有序, 公正而文明的社会。)

Professor Smith is going to give us a lecture on the history of Western civilization. (史密斯教授将给我们做有关西方文明史的讲座。)

China is one of the four ancient civilizations. (中国是四大文明古国之一。)

8. root n. 根; 根本, 根源; v. (使)生根, (使)扎根

The edible part of this plant is its root. (这种植物的可食部分是根。)

She flushed to the root of her hair. (她羞得满脸通红。)

The lust for money is the root of all evils. (贪财是一切罪恶的根源。)

Her love for the mother country is deeply rooted. (她对祖国的爱坚贞不移。)

He sat there rooted like a statue. (他像一尊雕塑一样一动不动地坐在那儿。)

9. magic n. 魔法, 魔力; 魔术

magical adj. 有魔力的; 神秘的

magician n. 魔术师; 巫师

The prince was turned by magic into a beast. (王子被魔法变成了一只野兽。)

We are trying to find someone to do some magic at the party. (我们正找人在晚会上玩魔术。)

The magic of music is beyond words. (音乐的魅力无法用言语形容。)

He used to believe that the old lady had magical powers. (他曾以为那个老太太有魔力。)

No one would ever forget this magical experience. (谁也不会忘记这一神秘的经历。)

The magician waved his wand and the rabbit disappeared. (魔术师挥了挥魔杖，兔子不见了。)

(注意: magic 也可以做形容词用, 词义和 magical 一样。但是 magic 通常只能做定语用, 而 magical 既可做定语用也可做表语用。)

10. poisonous adj. 有毒的

poison n. & v. 毒药; 中毒, 毒死; 破坏

Be careful! It is one of the most poisonous snakes in the world. (小心, 这是世界上最毒的一种蛇。)

Don't eat the leaves of this plant, they are poisonous. (别吃这种植物的叶子, 有毒!)

If he drank the poison, he would probably die. (如果他喝了这毒药, 他可能会死。)

One man's honey is another man's poison. (对甲有利未必对乙也有利。)

He poisoned his wife. (他毒死了自己的妻子。)

Industrial wastes are poisoning the atmosphere. (工业废料在污染着大气。)

He had poisoned the political life of the nation. (他破坏了这个国家的政治生活。)

11. overseas adv. 在海外, 在国外 adj. 海外的, 国外的

He said he would travel overseas if he had a long holiday. (他说如果有长假, 他就去国外旅游。)

These companies are investing large sums overseas. (这些公司正向海外进行高额投资。)

The overseas Chinese donated medicine and clothes to the flooded area. (海外华人向受灾地区捐赠药品和服装。)

There is a vast overseas market for our goods. (我们的产品有广阔的海外市场。)

12. widespread adj. 分布广的, 普遍的

There was a widespread belief that she committed suicide. (人们普遍认为她是自杀的。)

Industrial robots will be in widespread use. (工业机器人将会广泛使用。)

Pollution problem is now attracting widespread attention. (污染问题正引起广泛关注。)

13. digestive adj. 消化的, 有消化力的

digest v. 消化; 领会

digestion n. 消化; 领悟

indigestible adj. 难理解的; 难消化的

The doctor told him there might be something wrong with his digestive system. (医生对他说他的消化系统可能有问题。)

It will be very helpful for you to digest the important points in the book. (领会这本书中的要点将会对你很有帮助。)

Every day they gave the old man food that was easy of digestion. (他们每天给老人易于消化的食物。)

The steak was tough and indigestible. (这牛排太老, 不易消化。)

14. foundation n. 根据; 基金会; 基地

The early training gave her a very firm foundation. (早期的训练给她打下了坚实的基础。)

In fact the rumor is without foundation. (事实上, 这个谣传没有根据。)

This conference is sponsored by the National Foundation for Educational Research. (这个会议是由全国教育研究基金会主办的。)

The construction workers are laying the foundations for a 28-story building. (建筑工人们正在为一座 28 层的高楼打地基。)

15. belief n. 相信; 信念

believe v. 相信; 认为

It is his belief that he will succeed sooner or later. (他相信他迟早会成功。)

What he told me just now is really beyond my belief. (他刚才对我说的话令我难以置信。)

I believe we will win the match. (我相信我们会赢这场比赛。)

Believe it or not he got a full mark in the exam. (信不信由你, 他考试得了满分。)

16. combination n. 结合, 联合; 化合物

combine v. 结合, 联合

The color purple is a combination of red and blue. (紫色是由红蓝两色混合而成。)

The football players showed good combination. (足球队员们配合默契。)

It will do us a lot of good if we can combine theory with practice. (如果把理论和实际结合起来将对我们大有好处。)

He very well combines the characters of soldier and poet. (他把军人和诗人的性格很好地融合在一起。)

17. chiefly adv. 主要地

chief n. 首领; 长官 adj. 主要的

This vegetable juice is made up chiefly of tomatoes and cucumbers. (这种蔬菜汁主要由西红柿和黄瓜制成。)

I will have to go and talk to your department chief about it. (我得和你们部门的头儿好好谈谈。)

I think this will become the chief concern of the world today. (我认为这将成为当今世界的首要关心的问题。)

the editor in chief 总编

the chief engineer 总工程师

chief executive 最高行政长官

chief justice 首席法官

chief of staff 参谋长

chief of state 国家元首

18. contain v. 包含; 容纳; 克制

This mini-bus can contain 18 passengers. (这辆面包车可乘坐 18 人。)

How much water can this water tank contain? (这只水箱能装多少水?)

This book contains the material you need. (这本书里有你需要的材料。)

He cannot contain himself for the joy. (他高兴得不能自制。)

本课主要构词法

affixation 词缀法

1. 名词后缀 -ity quality

2. 名词后缀 -ation; -ion; combination, civilization,
foundation, digestion

3. 名词后缀 -ture mixture

4. 形容词后缀 -ous poisonous

5. 形容词后缀 -ible indigestible

6. 形容词后缀 -ful helpful, powerful

7. 副词前缀 over- overseas

compounding 合词法

1. 复合形容词 widespread; man-eating;

2. 复合名词 man-eating; carbohydrate

Unit5 (第 14 讲—第 16 讲)

本课简介

本课主要介绍了从古至今人们对饮食的看法。远古时候,人们认为吃什么补什么。文明社会的人们则一度认为人参的根,鸡蛋,西红柿有各自不同的神奇功用。今天,人们认为鱼有强身,健脑,壮骨,美肤等作用,还认为饮食方面有诸多禁忌。如此种种的说法是否有道理,本课课文会给你一个答案。

本课主要语言点

1. Many primitive people believed that by eating an animal they could get some of the good qualities of that animal for themselves.

本句中 that 引导的是一个宾语从句。宾语从句在前几个单元中我们已有了比较多的了解。掌握宾语从句并不困难。请看下面的句子：

1) You must remember that it is never too old to learn. (你必须记住：活到老学到老。)

2) He says that friendship is very important to him. (他说友谊对他很重要。)

3) Don't forget what your parents said to you. (别忘了父母对你说过的话。)

4) Can you tell me where the bookstore is? (你能告诉我书店在哪儿吗?)

5) I don't know whether the letter is overweight. (我不知道这封信是否超重。)

by 后面跟动词的现在分词表示某人做了某件事，并通过这件事产生了某个结果。请看下面的句子：

1) By bribing a nurse I was able to see some files. (通过贿赂护士我才有可能看到一些卷宗。)

2) They made a living by selling newspapers. (他们通过卖报谋生。)

3) He tried to solve his problem by cheating me. (他通过骗我来解决自己的问题。)

4) We learn to swim by swimming. (我们在游泳中学会游泳。)

2. They thought that eating deer would make them run as fast as the deer.

本句中 that 同样是引导一个宾语从句。在宾语从句中，动名词短语 eating deer 做主语。请看下面的句子：

1) Chatting on the internet would make him forget everything. (在网上聊天会使他忘记一切。)

2) Putting on air wouldn't do you any good. (摆架子不会对你有什么好处。)

3) Making friends with them is no easy job. (跟他们交朋友不是一件容易的事。)

make sb. do sth.意思是“使某人做某事”。make后面的复合宾语中动词不定式符号to要省去,但是用被动语态时一定要用to,请看下面的句子:

1) The boss made them work from morning till night. (老板使他们从早到晚地干活。)

2) He made me sit here all the time. (他让我一直坐在这儿。)

3) She was made to finish the book in two days (by her father). (父亲让她两天把书看完。)

4) I was made to return the money as soon as possible (by my friend). (朋友让我尽快还钱。)

3. Some savage tribes believed that eating enemies that had shown bravery in battle would make them brave.

本句中的第一个that引导的又是一个宾语从句,而后一个that引导的是定语从句,修饰enemies.请看下面的句子:

1) He is a man that you can rely on. (他是一个你可以依靠的人。)

2) She gave me some books that I am really interested in. (她给了我一些我很感兴趣的书。)

3) I would never forget the two years that I spent in that village. (我永远也不会忘记我在那个村子里度过的两年时光。)

本句中them brave是make的复合宾语,请看下面的句子:

1) Don't wait for him. He will make us late. (别等他了,他会使我们迟到的。)

2) He was afraid that the story would make things worse. (他担心那个故事会使事情更糟。)

3) I didn't know that the news had been made public. (我不知道这个消息已经公开了。)

4. It was once thought ...

Eggs were thought to make the voice pretty.

Tomatoes were believed to have magical powers

They were called love apples and were supposed to make people who ate them fall in love.

上面的这些句子全部用的是被动语态。请翻译下面的句子：

1) 孩子们受到很好的照顾。(The children are well taken care of.)

2) 这个问题最近被谈论得很多。(This question has been much talked about recently.)

3) 体育代表团在机场受到了热烈欢迎。(The sports delegation was given a warm welcome at the airport.)

4) 那里讲什么语言?(What language is spoken there?)

5) 这本书是为儿童写的。(This book is written form children.)

6) 他被认为是这个工作的最佳人选。(He is thought to be the best candidate for the job.)

suppose 是一个常用词，请注意掌握。

1) I suppose it was reasonable for him to want his money back. (我看他想要回他的钱是合理的。)

2) I suppose the answer is that he was not so hardworking. (我想答案在于他不够刻苦。)

3) The situation was even worse than was supposed. (形势比料想的更糟糕。)

4) Who do you suppose is the right person for the job? (你认为谁是这个工作的合适人选?)

5) I am not supposed to talk to you about this. (我不能和你谈这个。)

6) He was supposed to leave for Shanghai last night. (他应该昨夜动身去上海。)

7) Suppose / Supposing something should go wrong, what would you do? (如果有了什么差错，你怎么办?)

5. How surprised the people who thought tomatoes poisonous would be if they could know that millions of pounds of tomatoes were supplied to soldiers overseas during WWII.

“how surprised the people would be”是主句，这是一个感叹句；who 引导的定语从句修饰 people；if 引导的是条件状语从句。

感叹句通常用 what 或 how 引起。what 用来修饰一个名词，how 修饰一个形容词，副词或动词。请看下面的句子：

- 1) What a kind-hearted man he is! (他是一个多么好心人啊!)
- 2) What good news it is! (多好的消息啊!)
- 3) What a beautiful city! (多美的城市啊!)
- 4) How lovely the children are! (多可爱的孩子啊!)
- 5) How well she writes. (她写得多好啊!)
- 6) How I hated all this. (我多恨这一切啊!)

6. One such idea is that fish is the best brain food.

本句中 that 引导的是一个表语从句。请看下面的句子：

1) My suggestion is that we should leave right now. (我的建议是我们现在就离开。)

2) What is troubling me is that I don't have much experience in teaching. (使我苦恼的是我在教学方面的经验不多。)

3) My idea is that we offer them more help. (我的意思是我们给他们提供更多的帮助。)

4) The fact is that we don't have enough hands. (事实是我们人手不够。)

7. Washing food down with water as a substitute for chewing is not a good idea.

substitute for 是一个常用词组，意思是“代替，代用品”；substitute 也可以做动词用，意思是“替代”。请看例句：

1) Don't you think it a good idea to use plastic as a substitute for wood? (你觉得用塑料做木材的代用品是个好主意吗?)

2) Daydreaming cannot substitute for hard work. (白日梦不能取代辛勤的努力。)

3) A middle-aged woman substituted for the English teacher during her absence. (英语老师不在时, 由一位中年妇女代替。)

8. Many people think of bread as a carbohydrate food.

think of ... as 是一个习惯用法, 意思是“把...看作是...”, “认为...是...”。请看下面的句子:

1) People think of him as a hero. (人们把他看作英雄。)

2) He thinks of himself as the most important member of the family. (他认为自己是最重要的家庭成员。)

3) The Yellow River is thought of as the cradle of the Chinese nation. (黄河被看作是中华民族的摇篮。)

与 think of ...as 意思相近的习惯用法还有 regard ...as; consider...as; look upon...as; view...as; see ...as 等等。

本课主要词组

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. be eager to | 2. be supposed to |
| 3. fall in love | 4. grow up |
| 5. be supplied to | 6. substitute for |
| 7. have sth. to do with | 8. at the meal |
| 9. as a matter of fact | 10. think of ...as... |
| 11. in the same way | |

本课主要句型

宾语从句

1. Many people believe that by eating an animal they could get some of the good qualities of that animal for themselves.

2. They thought eating deer would make them run as fast as the deer.

3. Some savage tribes believe that eating enemies that had shown bravery in battle would make them brave.

表语从句

1. One idea was that fish is the best brain food.

2. Another idea is that you should not drink water with meals.

3. The reason was that the acid in the orange juice would make the milk curdle and become indigestible.

4. A similar wrong idea is that fish and ice cream ...for a poisonous combination.

5. Still another idea is that proteins and carbohydrates should never be eaten at the same meal.

感叹句

1. How surprised that people...would be ...。

形容词，副词的比较级和最高级

1. They thought eating deer would make them run as fast as deer.

2. Man-eating may have started because people were eager to become as strong and brave as their enemies.

3. One such idea is that fish is the best brain food.

4. Fish is good brain food just as it is good muscle food and skin and bone food.

5. But no one has been able to prove that fish is any better for the brain than many other kinds of food.

6. It is just as foolish to say that one should never eat meat and potatoes together as it is to say that one should never eat bread or drink milk.

Text B Do Animals Think?

短语表达

1. a great deal

There is a great deal of concern about energy shortage.

We learned a great deal from her.

2. be like

Look at the little boy, he is so much like his father.

War is not like what he described in his novel.

3. have time for

I don't know why he didn't have time for breakfast.

Don't worry, we will have enough time for discussion.

4. engage in

He is trying very hard to engage the woman in further conversation.

It is not appropriate for a former president to engage in commerce.

5. take care of

The old people are well taken care of in the nursing homes.

She took care of her little brother while mother was away.

6. in some / many respects

in one / this respect

He is different from the people around him in many respects.

We are lagging behind at least in one respect.

7. except

I knew nothing about Jane except what I had heard at the party.

There was nothing we could do except wait and pray.

All the boys except Tom went camping last week.

In the evening she never went anywhere except to the nearest coffee house.

8. connect with

There is no evidence to connect the young man with the theft.

Good health is connected with diet.

There are serious questions connected with the radioactive waste disposal (放射性废料的处理)。

9. make improvement in

The company made great improvement in the wages and working conditions of the employees.

Animals do not make any real improvement in their ways of doing things.

10. by instinct

She knew by instinct that he wouldn't be back.

Birds build their nests by instinct.

11. speak of

Professor Blackwell always speaks highly of his assistant.

Did he speak of the serious earthquake that struck Taiwan last week?

12. let out

“Let me out, ” the boy shouted, but nobody came.

The prisoners were let out of their cells.

13. as if

He looked at me as if I were mad.

She opened her eyes as if conscious of my gaze.

He works so hard as if he never knew fatigue.

14. have one's wits about one (机警, 保持警觉)

In this part of the city you have to have your wits about you all the time.

He felt it unnecessary to have his wits about him on such a friendly occasion.

15. a variety of

Don't bother him, he has a variety of duties to perform.

The college library has a wide variety of books.

16. difference between

Will you please tell me the difference between the two countries?

I cannot see any difference between the two oil paintings.

Unit6 (第 17 讲—第 19 讲)

Text A Diamonds

本课主要单词

1. rare adj. 稀有的, 难得的

These animals are so rare that I would do whatever I can to save them.
(这些动物很稀有, 我会尽我所能去保护它们。)

On the rare occasions when the old lady had any post, the little boy downstairs would go and get it for her. (老太太难得有信, 只要有信总是楼下的小男孩帮她去拿。)

Snow is rare in this part of China. (中国的这个地区难得下雪。)

It is very rare for him to say "Sorry" to any others. (他难得会对任何人说“对不起”。)

Believe it or not, she is a rare beauty. (信不信由你, 她是一个百里挑一的美人。)

a rare word (冷僻的词)

rare metals (稀有金属)

a rare disease (罕见的疾病)

a rare medicinal herb (珍奇药草)

2. substance n. 物质; 实质; 大意; 根据

They were trying to remove harmful substances from the soil. (他们正设法去除土壤里的有害物质。)

Ice, snow and water are the same substance in different forms. (冰、雪、水是同一物质的三种不同形式。)

What was the point of going to a lecture with little substance? (去听一个没有什么内容的讲座有什么意义呢?)

What he is saying in substance is that we should take effective measures to prevent pollution. (他大体上说的是我们应该采取有效措施防止污染。)

There was no substance in his complaints. (他的抱怨没有道理。)

3. slight adj. 轻微的; 纤细的

Mother said she had a slight headache. (妈妈说她有点头疼。)

I didn't have the slightest idea about what had happened. (我一点都不知道发生了什么事。)

His chances of winning the election are very slight. (他在选举中获胜的可能性极小。)

He is too slight to play football. (他太纤细, 不能踢足球。)

4. extreme adj. 极端的, 极度的; 尽头的 n. 极端

He died in extreme poverty. (他在极度贫困中死去。)

You have to proceed your work with extreme caution. (你得极其谨慎地继续你的工作。)

Extreme action will be taken if necessary. (如有必要, 我们将采取最严厉的行动。)

His hospitality was carried to an extreme. (他好客得过分了。)

She found the book uninteresting to the extreme. (她觉得那本书没意思透了。)

extreme joy/pain (极度的欢乐/痛苦) an extreme of sadness (极度伤心)

go from one extreme to the other (从一个极端走到另一个极端)

go to the other extreme (走到另一个极端)

in the extreme (极度, 非常)

extremes of poverty and wealth (贫富的两极)

5. pressure n. 压力, 压强

The water pressure may need adjusting. (水压可能需要调整。)

It was a pressure of five tons per square meter. (每平方米的压力为五吨。)

Heavy study load and great expectation from parents may give children too much pressure. (沉重的学习负担以及家长的过高期望可能会给孩子太大的压力。)

He was under constant pressure from his superiors. (他的上司不断地给他压力。)

The doctor said this medicine could counteract his high blood pressure. (医生说这种药能遏制他的高血压。)

6. liquid adj. 液体的, 液态的; 清澈的, 明亮的 n. 液体

The doctor put the patient on a liquid diet. (医生规定那位病人吃流质。)

The little girl with large liquid eyes is my sister. (那个长着一双水汪汪的大眼睛的小姑娘是我妹妹。)

She poured out a large quantity of yellowish liquid from a bottle. (她从一个瓶子里倒出了许多黄色的液体。)

7. crack n. 裂缝 v. 破裂; 打开

She found a crack in one of the tea-cups. (她发现一只茶杯上有裂缝。)

He heard the cracks of rifle fire in the distance. (他听到了远处的步枪声。)

He asked his mother to crack some eggs for him. (他请妈妈帮他敲碎几个鸡蛋。)

His face cracked with a broad smile. (他咧开嘴笑了。)

The phone cracked the room's quiet. (电话铃声打破了房间的寂静。)

They were unable to crack a highly competitive sales market. (他们无法打进竞争激烈的销售市场。)

8. crust n. 地壳; 面包皮, 外皮

There are some brownish bread crusts on the dining table. (餐桌上有一些棕色的面包皮。)

The white snow had a fine crust on the trees. (树上覆盖着一层美丽的白雪。)

The continuous movements of the earth's crust may lead to earthquakes. (地壳的不断运动引发了地震。)

It is very dangerous to walk on the thin crust of ice. (在这样一层薄冰上行走是很危险的。)

9. crystal n. 水晶; 晶粒 adj. 清澈透明的

Mother gave her a necklace of crystals as a birthday present. (妈妈给她一条水晶珠项链作为生日礼物。)

The old woman looked into the crystal ball for a while before telling my fortune. (老妇人朝水晶球里看了一会, 然后给我算命。)

I've made my point crystal clear that I would never agree to such a proposal. (我已经表明了观点, 绝不同意这个提议。)

10. popular adj. 流行的, 大众的; 普及的; 受欢迎的

Popular music is well liked by young people. (流行音乐深受年轻人的喜爱。)

Swimming is a sport popular with people of all ages. (游泳是老老少少都喜欢的体育运动。)

He has always been popular with / among boys in his community. (他一直广受他那个社区的男孩子们的喜欢。)

This restaurant offers meals at popular prices. (这家饭店供应价格大众化的饭菜。)

He is a good politician but he is not very popular among the people. (他很会搞政治, 但是不得民心。)

11. handful n. 一把，一小撮

He told the doctor that his hair fell out in handfuls. (他对医生说他的头发一把一把地脱落。)

The naughty boy gathered a handful of stones and began to throw them in the lake. (那个调皮的男孩手里聚了一把石块，并把石块往湖里扔。)

He gave me nothing except for a handful of books. (除了少量的几本书他什么也没给我。)

注意：一般来说，-ful 是一个形容词后缀，加在名词后面可以构成形容词，比如：careful, helpful, useful, hopeful 等等。而在 handful 这个单词中，-ful 是一个名词后缀，加在某些名词的后面，表示“充满…所需的量”，比如：roomful, basketful, mouthful, spoonful 等等。

12. formation n. 岩层；形成，构成

Most diamonds are mined from rock formations inside the earth. (大多数钻石都是从地下的岩层里开采出来的。)

The formation of good habits is very important for a child. (好习惯的养成对孩子来说很重要。)

The teacher is explaining to the students the formation of the new word. (老师正对学生们解释那个新词的构成。)

The peculiar formation of human brain drew the attention of researchers in many fields. (人脑的奇特构造吸引了许多领域的研究人员。)

13. pipe n. 管子，导管；烟斗 v. 用管道输送

Tell the pipelayer that he has to be careful with the gas pipe. (告诉管道安装工煤气管道要小心。)

The old man was sitting in the corner smoking a pipe. (那个老人坐在角落里抽着烟斗。)

It won't be very troublesome to pipe water into the house. (用管道把水送进屋里不会很麻烦。)

14. somewhat adv. 稍微，有点

It is somewhat difficult for him to answer the question. (要他回答这个问题有点难。)

I felt somewhat awkward when I couldn't remember his name. (当我记不起他的名字时, 我有点尴尬。)

The working conditions in this factory have somewhat improved. (这家工厂的工作条件已有所改善。)

15. blast n. 疾风, 强风; 爆炸 v. 炸, 炸掉

A blast of cold air sent a shiver all over his body. (一股冷气使他浑身战栗。)

Furious blasts of thunder frightened everybody. (一阵阵的霹雳炸雷吓坏了所有的人。)

The driver blasted the horn continuously. (司机不停地按喇叭。)

Rock music blasted from the hall and the whole building seemed to be shaking. (震天的摇滚乐从客厅传来, 整座房子似乎都在摇动。)

They decided to blast through the mountains. (他们打算炸山开路。)

16. crush v. 压碎; 镇压, 压倒

The machine can crush rocks into powder. (那台机器能把石头碾成粉末。)

You must remember poverty should not crush one's spirit. (你必须记住不应该因贫困而意志消沉。)

We didn't expect that they would crush us into this tiny room. (我们没有料到他们会让我们挤在这个小房间里。)

Can you imagine that debts are crushing them? (你能想像到债务正压得他们喘不过气来吗?)

17. destroy v. 破坏, 毁灭; 消灭

Several buildings were destroyed by the bomb. (几座建筑物都被炸弹炸毁了。)

He destroyed the letter as soon as he had read it. (他一读完就把信毁了。)

I really don't want to destroy the friendship between us. (我真不想毁坏我们之间的友谊。)

The loss of his wife and son finally destroyed him. (失去妻儿最终击败了他。)

This poison can destroy rats. (这种毒药可灭鼠。)

18. impressive adj. 给人深刻印象的, 感人的

impression n. 印象

impress v. 给...极深的印象

She is trying to build an impressive international reputation. (她正努力建立令人难忘的国际声誉。)

She said that all the places she had visited in China were impressive. (她说她所游览过的中国的每一个地方都给她留下了深刻的印象。)

What are your impressions of Beijing? (你对北京有何观感?)

I had the impression that he was a teacher. (我记得他好像是个老师。)

What impressed me most were the great changes in this city. (给我印象最深的是这座城市的巨大变化。)

She wants to impress her new boss with her diligence. (她想以勤奋加深老板对她的印象。)

19. experience n 经验; 经历 v. 经历, 遭受

experienced adj. 有经验的

With no teaching experience my chances of getting the job are slight. (我没有教学经验, 得到这份工作的可能性很小。)

He is a man of rich experience. (他是一个经验丰富的人。)

Everyone can learn a lot from his own experience. (每一个人都从自己的经历中学到很多东西。)

His experience in the country could be used as material for his writing. (他在农村的经历可以作为他的写作素材。)

He experienced a lot of hardships when he was abroad. (他在国外时经历了许多艰辛。)

We need someone more experienced to help us. (我们需要更有经验的人来帮助我们。)

He is more experienced than I am in planting trees. (在植树方面他比我有经验。)

20. immediately adv. 即刻地; 紧密地

immediate adj. 立刻的; 最接近的

He said he had to go to the hospital immediately. (他说他得立即去医院。)

She finished one cup of coffee and asked for another immediately. (她喝完一杯咖啡马上又要了一杯。)

The post office is immediately next to the bank. (邮局紧挨着银行。)

You have to give them an immediate reply. (你得立刻答复他们。)

It is necessary that you get the support from your immediate superior. (你必须得到顶头上司的支持。)

本课主要构词法

affixation (词缀法)

1. 形容词后缀 -ful beautiful, useful,
2. 形容词后缀 -ive impressive
3. 形容词后缀 -y greasy
4. 名词后缀 -ation combination, formation
5. 名词后缀 -ure pressure
6. 名词后缀 -y discovery
7. 名词后缀 -er traveler, miner
8. 名词后缀 -ful handful
9. 副词后缀 -ly finally, probably, immediately, carefully,
10. 副词后缀 -ward upward

课文简介

本课主要介绍了钻石的特性、形成、分布以及开采方式。读了本课，你会了解钻石的形成与数百万年前的地壳运动有关；你也会了解深受上至达官贵人下至普通百姓喜爱的“恒久远”的钻石在刚开采出来时并不光彩照人。

本课语言点

1. They are the hardest substance found in nature.

本句中 found in nature 是定语从句，修饰 substance. 定语从句中省略了 that are. 这种省略现象在定语从句中很常见，在前几个单元中，我们遇到过多次。请看下面的句子：

1) There are many books (that) I'd like to read. (有很多书我想看。)

2) He is a man (that) we all like and trust. (他是一个我们大家喜欢和信赖的人。)

3) This is the most interesting film (that) I have ever seen. (这是我看过的最有意思的电影)

先行词的前面有形容词最高级时，定语从句必须用 that 引导，而不用 which. 请看下面的句子：

1) This is the most beautiful place (that) I have ever visited. (这是我游览过的最美丽的地方。)

2) This is the most serious problem (that) we have ever met. (这是我们遇到过的最严重的问题。)

3) They are the richest people (that are) living in this area. (他们是住在这一地区的最富有的人。)

本句中的 hardest 意思为“坚硬的”“坚固的”，而不是“困难的”。请看下面的句子：

1) This nut is as hard as rock. (这果子硬得像岩石。)

2) He found it hard to make friends. (他觉得交朋友很困难。)

2. That means a diamond can cut any other surface. And only another diamond can make a slight cut in a diamond.

mean 是一个很常见的词，本句中的意思是“意味着”。mean 还有“意欲，企图，打算”的意思。请看下面的句子，注意 mean 在各句中的意思和用法：

1) What do you mean by saying this to me? (你对我说这个是什么意思?)

2) Friendship means everything to him. (友谊对他来说意味着一切。)

3) The teacher's praise meant so much to the children. (老师的表扬对孩子们来说很重要。)

4) I'm serious about this. I mean what I say. (我对此事是认真的，我说话算数。)

5) I'm sorry, I didn't mean to hurt you. (对不起，我无意伤害你。)

6) They meant to finish the work ahead of time. (他们的打算是提前完成这项工作。)

7) I meant to call you but I forgot. (我原打算给你打电话的，但我忘记了。)

cut 在前一个句子中做动词用，意思是“切割”，在后一个句子中做名词用，意思是“切面”。

1) Who will cut the ribbon for the exhibition? (谁将为展览会剪彩?)

2) I am going to have my hair cut today. (今天我要去理发。)

3) The icy wind cut him to the bone. (他感到寒风刺骨。)

4) The old man is cutting a figure in stone. (那位老人正在雕刻石像。)

5) I had some cuts and bruises on my arms, but I'm ok. (我的臂上有些伤口和擦伤，但我没什么问题。)

6) He made a smooth cut on the marble. (他在大理石上留下一个光滑的切面。)

3. Diamonds are made from carbon.

由……制成，可以用 be made from 和 be made of 两个词组来表达。但是 be made from 通常指制成品已看不出原材料是什么，而 be made of 可以看出该物品由什么材料制成的。如：

- 1) Paper is made from some plants. (纸是由某些植物制成的。)
- 2) This beer is made from grain. (这种啤酒是用粮食酿制的。)
- 3) The houses were made of brick. (这些房屋是砖造的。)
- 4) This toy is made of cotton. (这个玩具是布做的。)

Unit6 (第 17 讲—第 19 讲)

4. Scientists know that the combination of extreme heat and pressure changes carbon into diamonds.

extreme 在句中做形容词用，意思是“极度的”，如：

1) Extreme cold can wake a hibernating animal. (极度的寒冷能使正在冬眠的动物苏醒。)

2) They will have to endure extreme discomfort in winter. (冬天时，他们将不得不忍受极度的不适。)

change...into 意思是“把...转变为...”，如：

1) Water changes into vapour when heated. (水加热后转变为蒸气。)

2) Go to the bank and you can easily change these dollars into RMB. (你去银行就能很容易地把这些美元换成人民币。)

5. Such heat and pressure exist only in the hot, liquid mass of molten rock deep inside the earth.

请注意 such 与 so 之间的不同用法。such 后面接名词，而 so 后面接形容词或副词。如：

1) I don't believe he could make such a mistake. (我相信他不会犯这样的错误的。)

2) How can you go out on such a rainy day? (在这样的雨天里，你怎么能出门?)

3) He spoke so fast that I couldn't follow. (他说话太快，我听不懂。)

4) I'm so glad you could come. (你能来我真高兴。)

mass 在本句中的意思是“(聚成一体的)团、块”，比如：

1) a mass of hot air (一团热气)

2) a mass of sand (一堆沙)

3) Rain occurs when a mass of warm air is laden with water. (一团云聚集大量的水蒸气就形成了雨。)

Mass 也可以做形容词用，意思是“群众的”、“大量的”，如：

1) a mass meeting (群众大会)

2) mass education (大众教育)

3) mass media (大众传媒)

4) Mass production could very well cut the cost. (大规模生产可以降低成本。)

6. It is thought that millions of years ago this liquid mass pushed upward through cracks in the earth's crust.

It is thought that...是一个很常用的句型，类似的句型在英语中很多，比如：

1) It is / was, has been..., reported that...

2) It is / was, has been..., stated that...

3) It is / was, has been..., pointed out that...

4) It is / was, has been..., mentioned that...

5) It is / was, has been..., believed that...

7. A. There are only four areas where very many diamonds have been formed.

B. The first known area was in India, where diamonds were found thousands of years ago.

定语从句可分为限定性定语从句和非限定性定语从句。A句是限定性定语从句，B句是非限定性定语从句。A、B两句中都是用关系副词 where 来引导定语从句，修饰表示地点的名词。请看下面的句子，注意限定性定语从句一般不用逗号隔开：

1) Is there a shop around where we can get some fruit? (附近有什么商店可以买到水果吗?)

2) This is the place where we met yesterday. (这是我们昨天碰头的地方。)

3) The small town, where he once worked, has turned to be a modern city. (他曾经工作过的那座小城, 已经变成现代化的城市了。)

8. In the 1600' s... (十七世纪)

In the 1720' s... (十八世纪二十年代)

In the 1800' s... (十九世纪)

请注意年代的表达方法, 以上的年代也可以表达为 in the 1600s; in the 1720s; in the 1800s. 如果我们要表达“在十七世纪初(中、末)期”, 则可以说 in the early (mid, late) 1600' s/1600s.

9. Diamonds became very popular with the kings and queens of Europe.

become / be popular with / among 是一个常用词组, 意思是“受...欢迎”, 请看下面的句子:

1) These Chinese handicrafts are very popular with foreign friends. (这些中国工艺品很受外国朋友的喜爱。)

2) His novels are popular among young people. (他的小说很受年轻人的喜爱。)

3) Classical music is popular among more and more people. (古典音乐受到越来越多的人的喜爱。)

10. India's supply of diamonds was finally running out after 2, 500 yeas of mining the stones.

Supply 在句子中做名词用, 意思是“供应”。Supply 常常可以做动词用, 意思是“供给, 提供”。请看下面的句子:

1) Economic stability can be reached if demand and supply are in balance. (如果供求关系平衡的话, 就能实现经济的稳定。)

2) Many materials are in short supply. (许多材料供应不足。)

3) The increasing world population will put a strain on food supply. (不断增长的世界人口将对粮食供应带来重负。)

4) You have to supply him with an answer. (你得给他提供一个答案。)

5) Most towns are supplied with tap-water and electricity. (大多数城镇都有自来水和电力供应。)

run out 是一个常用词组，意思是“用完，用尽”。请看例句：

1) Time is running out. We have to hurry. (时间快到了，我们得快点。)

2) My patience is running out. (我快要耐不住了。)

3) His luck seemed to have run out. (他的好运似乎结束了。)

我们也可以使用 run out 来表达类似的意思，但 run out of 的主语应该是“某人”。如：

1) They have run out of money, so they have to find a job. (他们钱用完了，所以得找一份工作。)

2) I have run out of ink. (我的墨水用完了。)

11. People would pick up handfuls of gravel from the bottom of the streams and sort out the diamonds.

-ful 通常加在名词后面，构成形容词，如 care-careful, help-helpful. 而本句中的 handful 是一个名词，意思是“一把”，在单词部分，我们已经提到过，英语中有不少这样的词，如：

1) He gave me a basketful of peaches. (他给了我满满一篮子桃子。)

2) She put a spoonful of salt in the soup. (她往汤里撒了满满一勺盐。)

3) Tom is carrying an armful of books. (汤姆抱着一捆书。)

sort out 是一个常用词组，意思是“整理，分类”，如：

1) Sort out those of bigger size and put them in a box. (把大点的整理出来，放在盒子里。)

2) It took quite a while to sort out all our luggage. (把我们所有的行李整理好花了不少时间。)

bottom 在句子中做名词用，意思是“底部”。bottom 还有“尽头、末端”的意思。请看例句：

1) There is some deposit in the bottom of the teapot. (茶壶底部有些沉淀物。)

2) At the bottom of the mountain, there is a beautiful village. (在山脚下有个美丽的村子。)

3) I felt grateful to you from the bottom of my heart. (我衷心地感谢你。)

4) Bottoms up. (干杯。)

12. These diamonds were probably carried from where they were formed to India by great sheets of moving ice that covered parts of the earth 20, 000 years ago.

where they were formed 是 where 引出的名词性从句，作介词 from 的宾语。请看下面的句子：

1) He didn't say anything about where the accident took place. (他对事故在哪儿发生的只字未提。)

2) She hasn't made up her mind as to where she should go for the holiday. (她还没有决定到哪儿去度假。)

13. It flows over boards thickly coated with grease.

在本句中的定语从句 thickly coated with greases 前面省略了 which/that are. coat 一般做名词用，意思是“外套”或“(动物的)皮毛”。在本句中 coat 作动词用，意思是“在…上涂(包)着”，如：

1) These pills are coated with sugar. (这些药丸外面包着糖衣。)

2) Don't jump on the bush piles, they are ice-coated and slippery. (不要在灌木堆上跳，上面盖着冰，很滑。)

14. Since diamonds stick to grease, they are left behind by the rocks and mud which flow down the tables.

Stick 在本句中的意思是“粘住”。Stick to 也可以表示“坚持，遵守”的意思。请看下面的句子：

1) I'm sure father hasn't read the book because several pages are stuck together. (我敢肯定父亲没有看过那本书，因为有几页还粘在一起。)

2) It's important for nurses to stick to the rules. (对护士来说，遵守规定是很重要的。)

3) Stick to your post and make sure everything is ok. (坚守你的岗位, 确保一切正常。)

leave behind 在本句中的意思是“留下”, 这个词组还可以表示“忘带; 把…丢在后面”。例如:

1) Take care not to leave anything behind. (小心别丢下任何东西。)

2) Look forward to the bright future and leave all your worries and fears behind. (期盼光明的未来, 把所有的担心和恐惧抛在身后。)

15. Experienced diamond miners can tell a diamond immediately.

句子中的 tell 意思为“判断; 分辨; 看出”。如:

1) I cannot tell her from her twin sister. (我无法分辨出她和她的孪生妹妹。)

2) Can you tell which is my school-bag? (你能分辨出哪一个是我的书包吗?)

3) It is important for you to tell right from wrong. (分辨出正误很重要。)

本课主要词组及语法要点

A. 词组

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. make a cut in sth. | 2. change...into |
| 3. be made from | 4. become popular with |
| 5. run out | 6. pick up |
| 7. handfuls of | 8. sort out |
| 9. carry from | 10. be coated with |
| 11. stick to | 12. leave behind |
| 13. tell... (from) | 14. find out |

B. 语法要点

1. 被动语态

2. 定语从句

3. 状语从句

4. 主语从句

Text B The Difference between Plants and Animals

短语表达

1. difference between...and

Will you please tell me the difference between a horse and a seahorse?

I cannot hear any difference between the American pronunciation and the British pronunciation for this word.

2. neither ...nor

He is not a person to rely on as he is neither honest nor sincere.

I have neither seen him nor heard from him since we last met.

3. look up

Father didn't look up from his book when I entered the sitting room.

The little boy didn't dare to look up at his teacher.

4. a matter of

Everybody would pay some attention to the contest as it is a matter of honor.

Don't panic. This is a matter of record and there is nothing to worry about.

5. throughout

The products of this factory will be supplied to people throughout the country.

He said that a person should be honest and upright throughout his life.

6. be satisfied with

Tom was fully aware of the consequence when his father saw his test paper.

The teacher was satisfied with the students' performance.

7. take place

Great changes have taken place in China in the past 20 years.

The accident took place when people were all fast asleep.

8. lie in

The importance of this book lies in its later influence.

The root of all these events lay in history.

9. be classed as

He was classed as a genius.

Some kinds of seaweed are animals but they used to be classed as plants.

10. hold good

This rule may hold good for you but not for me.

His answer doesn't hold good for this specific question.

11. live on

Cows live on grass.

The old man lives on the government pension.

12. work wonders

I don't think this medicine will work wonders.

We didn't think he could pull through this time but he worked wonders again.

13. take in

Their club took in some new members last week.

He took in his guest and offered him a cup of coffee.

14. suck up

The plants suck up a lot of water.

He sucks all the information you gave him.

15. take up

He took up the newspaper and began to read.

She took up English when she was only five.

All the window seats had been taken up when I got on the bus.

Unit7 (第20讲—第22讲)

Text A Families

本课主要单词

1. definition n. 定义, 释义

define v. 解释; 给...定义; 明确表示

He simply said it was very difficult for him to give a definition for that word. (他只是说要他给那个词下个定义是很困难的。)

The dictionary gives us several definitions, which makes me more confused about the meaning of this word. (辞典给了我们好几个释义, 这使我对该词的意思更加困惑。)

People define him as a genius. (人们说他是天才。)

I have already defined my position on that issue. (我已经明确表示了我在这个问题上的立场。)

2. marriage n. 婚姻, 结婚

marry v. 结婚

married adj. 结了婚的

No one expected that their marriage could break up because of a misunderstanding. (谁也没想到他们的婚姻竟会因为误解而破裂。)

Her second marriage lasted only 6 weeks. (她的第二次婚姻只维持了六个星期。)

They are in love with each other and wish to marry. (他们彼此相爱, 希望结婚。)

Her parents said they wouldn't allow her to marry that poor young man. (她的父母说他们不会允许她与那个穷苦的年轻人结婚。)

He was 35, married with two children. (他 35 岁, 已婚, 有两个孩子。)

She was married to the young artist last month. (她上个月与那位年轻的艺术家结了婚。)

(请注意: 要表述某人同某人结婚, 不能用 sb. marries / married with sb. else, 而应该用 sb. marries/married sb. else 或者 sb. is/was married to sb. else 来表述。)

3. descend v. 下降; 传下, 遗传; 堕落

descendant n. 子孙, 后裔

ascend v. 上升; 登高; 追溯到某个时期

ascendant n. 优势; 祖先 (与 descendant 相对而言) adj. 优势的

The sun descended behind the hills. (太阳下了山。)

The customs have descended to our generation. (这些习俗一直传到我们这一代。)

He was so poor that he descended to begging. (他穷得只好乞讨度日。)

As descendants of the early settlers, they were tolerant and hardworking. (作为早期移民的后裔, 他们忍耐而勤劳。)

They are descendants of an Indian tribe. (他们是一支印第安部落的后裔。)

The airplane ascended into the cloud. (飞机高高飞入云端。)

Queen Victoria ascended the throne in 1837. (维多利亚女王于 1837 年登上王位。)

His party is no longer in the ascendant. (他那一派已经优势不再。)

We still have the ascendant position in world politics. (我们在国际政治中仍占优势地位。)

4. ancestor n. 祖先, 祖宗

His ancestors came to America on the Mayflower. (他的祖先乘“五月花”号来到美洲。)

Their grandfathers were the ancestors of some of the well-known families in Boston. (他们的祖父辈是波士顿几家望族的祖先。)

ancestry n. [总称] 列祖列宗; 血统

He was born of good ancestry. (他出身名门。)

She is an American of German ancestry. (她是德国血统的美国人。)

5. household n. 家庭, 户; 一家人

adj. 家庭的, 家常的

How many people are there in your household? (你们家有几口人?)

Early in the morning the household got into a car and headed for the beach. (一大早, 全家人坐上汽车往海边驶去。)

Household chores are not just women's work. (家务杂事不只是妇女的活。)

Einstein is a household name in the civilized world. (爱因斯坦是文明世界里家喻户晓的名字。)

6. relative n. 亲属, 亲戚 adj. 相对的

His wife had to visit some of her relatives for a few days. (他妻子需要几天时间去看娘家的亲戚。)

The apes are man's closest relatives. (猿是与人类亲缘关系最为接近的动物。)

He told me that his aunt was his only immediate relative. (他告诉我姑母是他唯一的至亲。)

All human values are relative. (人类的一切价值标准都是相对的。)

The Jackson's are living in relative comfort now. (现在, 杰克逊一家生活过得比较舒适。)

7. traditional adj. 传统的

tradition n. 传统

Alice said she would be happy to have a traditional Chinese wedding. (爱丽丝说能有一个传统的中国婚礼她会很开心。)

More and more Westerners believe in traditional Chinese medicine now. (现在, 越来越多的西方人相信传统中医了。)

He reassured his grandfather that he would keep up the family tradition by all means. (他向祖父保证, 他会尽一切可能保持家庭传统。)

In his lecture he talked briefly about the history and traditions of the movement. (在他的讲座中, 他简述了那次运动的历史和传统。)

8. security n. 完全; 保障; 把握

secure v. 保卫, 保证, 获得 adj. 完全的

We are all concerned for the security of the passengers. (我们都很担心旅客的安全。)

Children rely on their parents for love and security. (孩子们靠父母给他们爱和完全感。)

The girl delivered her speech with great security. (那个女孩满怀信心地讲演着。)

She felt secure only when she made sure that both doors were locked. (只有确信两道门都锁上了时, 她才感到放心。)

We all dream of living a quiet and secure life. (我们都梦想过上平静、安定的生活。)

His carefulness secured him from making more mistakes. (他的细心保证了他不犯更多的错误。)

His father couldn't believe that he secured such a good job. (他父亲不相信他找到了这么好的一份工作。)

(注意: securities 指证券)

9. basically adv. 基本上；从根本上说，大致说来

basic adj. 基础的，根本的；初步的；主要的

base n. 基础，根据；基地 v. 把…基于

My work is basically to train students' ability in reading and writing.
(从根本上说，我的工作训练学生的读、写能力。)

There are basically two types of families: nuclear families and extended families.
(大致说来，有两类家庭：核心家庭和大家庭。)

The basic theme of these stories is more or less the same. (这些故事的主题大致相同。)

They are trying to solve the basic economic problems. (他们正试图解决那些基本的经济问题。)

What is your basic aim in life? (你基本的生活目标是什么?)

The base of his argument is that our after service is not very satisfactory.
(他的论据是我们的售后服务不十分令人满意。)

The weary soldiers marched back to their base. (疲惫不堪的士兵们列队返回基地。)

We should base our opinions on facts. (我们的观点应该基于事实的基础上。)

This film is based on the life story of a general. (这部影片是根据一位将军的生平改编的。)

10. nuclear adj. 核子的，核能的；中心的

Mao Zetong used to say that under no circumstances would China be the first to use nuclear weapons.
(毛泽东曾经说过在任何情况下，中国都不会第一个使用核武器。)

Greece was once a nuclear civilization of the world. (希腊一度是世界文明的中心。)

a nuclear explosion 核爆炸 nuclear electricity 核电力

a nuclear power plant 核电站 nuclear technology 核技术

the nuclear age 核时代 nuclear monopoly 核垄断

nuclear waste 核废料 a nuclear nation 拥有核武器的国家

nuclear bomb 核弹 nuclear disarmament 核裁军

nuclear family 核心家庭 nuclear-free zone 无核区

nuclear fuel 核燃料 nuclear reactor 核反应堆

11. nucleus n. 核, 核心, 中心; 起点, 开始

These young people formed the nucleus of the internet bar. (这些年轻人成了网吧的核心。)

The strange behavior of the absent-minded professor became the nucleus of all the stories. (“心不在焉”教授的奇异举止成为所有故事的中心内容。)

12. agricultural adj. 农业的

agriculture n. 农业

More and more modern agricultural methods are used in that village. (在那个村子里, 人们越来越多地使用现代农业方法。)

The agricultural production is on the rise this year. (今年的农业生产呈上升态势。)

His solution greatly improved the agriculture in this area. (他的方法极大地推动了这一地区的农业发展。)

13. industrial adj. 工业的, 产业的

industrialize v. (使)工业化

The industrial output of this city doubled last year. (去年这个城市的工业产量增加了一倍。)

The Industrial Revolution influenced the whole world. (工业革命影响了全世界。)

The country has been steadily industrializing. (这个国家一直在稳步实现工业化。)

14. post-industrial adj. 后工业化的

post- 是一个前缀, 表示“后”: 如:

post-war policies 战后政策

postdoctoral 博士后的

postgraduate courses 研究生课程

post-harvest storage 收后贮藏

postimpressionism 后印象主义

15. earner n. 赚钱者；获得收入者

earnings n. 挣得的财物；收入，利润

earn v. 挣得，获得

How many earners are there in your family? (你们家几个人挣钱?)

Father is not the only earner in the family. (父亲不是家里唯一挣钱的人。)

What are you going to do with your earnings? (挣来的钱你打算干什么用?)

He earns 40 dollars a day. (他每天挣四十美元。)

How did he make his living? (他靠什么谋生?)

His brave act won him the name of a hero. (他的英勇行为使他得到了英雄的名声。)

16. split v. 撕裂；分开；使分裂；分担 n. 分裂，裂口

He is splitting the firewood with an axe. (他正用斧子劈木柴。)

They split the cost of the party between them. (他们两人分担了宴会的费用。)

They split up after years of marriage. (他们俩结婚多年之后分开了。)

She split with her boyfriend last week. (上个星期她与她的男友绝交了。)

Mother mended a split in my trousers. (妈妈缝好了我裤子上的一条裂缝。)

split-hair 极其精确的；过分琐细的

split second 一刹那

split-level 错层式的

split personality 分裂人格

17. divorce v. 离婚；与…离婚 n. 离婚

The child's parents divorced last month. (这孩子父母上个月离了婚。)

He divorced his wife. (他同妻子离了婚。)

I don't think it is possible to divorce sports from politics. (我认为把体育与政治分离开来是不可能的。)

Unit7 (第 20 讲—第 22 讲)

本课主要构词法

affixation (词缀法)

1. 名词后缀 -ion definition

2. 名词后缀 -age marriage

3. 名词后缀 -ity security

4. 形容词后缀 -al agricultural, industrial, traditional, social

5. 动词后缀 -ize industrialize

本课简介

在 Families 这篇课文中，作者首先告诉我们对于不同的人来说“家庭”有不同的含义，但是家庭意味着某种归属这一点是所有人的共识。作者还对核心家庭和大家庭的演变进行了分析，从中我们更可以看出家庭成员在家庭中的角色和作用的变化。

本课语言点

1. ...a group of people related by blood or marriage, ...

句子中的 by 常可与某些名词连用，在名词前面不加定冠词 the，意思相当于“with regard to”，“according to”。请看下面的例句：

1) He is an Englishman by birth. (他祖籍英国。)

2) He is a teacher by profession. (他以医生为职业。)

3) By birth and by education Thomas Jefferson belonged to the highest social class, but he never looked down upon the working-class people.

(按其出生和所受的教育, 托马斯·杰弗逊都属于社会的了最高阶层, 但他从来不轻视劳动人民。)

relate 是一个动词, 在句子中的意思是“使联系”。请看例句:

1) It is not difficult for people to relate the result to the cause.
(人们要把结果和原因联系起来并不困难。)

2) It might be more helpful to you if you can relate theory to practice.
(如果你能把理论和实践联系起来, 对你的帮助也许会更大。)

relate 还可解释为叙述; 有关, 涉及; 相处得好

1) He related us a story vividly. (他生动地给我们讲述了一个故事。)

2) His talk related to the international situation. (他的讲话涉及国际形势。)

3) He relates very well to his classmates. (他和同学们相处得很好。)

related 可以做形容词用, 意思是“有联系的, 相关的。”

1) These four people are closely related to each other. (这四个人联系紧密。)

2) He is very much interesting in painting and the related arts. (他对绘画及其有关的艺术很感兴趣。)

2. ...all those people descended from a common ancestor, ...所有来自同一祖先的人们。

“descended from a common ancestor”是一个省略了 that 的定语从句, 修饰 people descended from 的意思是“传下, 遗传”, 如:

1) His family were descended from an Indian tribe. (他的家庭是印第安部落的后裔。)

2) Darwin concluded that men were descended from apes. (达尔文断定人由猿进化而来。)

descend to 的意思是“屈尊，降低；转而说到”

1) The firm had descended to using nude pictures for advertising.
(那家公司堕落到用裸照做广告。)

2) Mr. Lee then descended to the details we had to be careful about.
(李先生转而谈到了我们必须注意的细节问题。)

common 是一个形容词，意思是“共有的，共同的；普通的”，请看例句：

1) No doubt, this is a grammatical mistake common to beginners in English.
(毫无疑问，这是英语初学者常犯的语法错误。)

2) How could you have no idea about this common knowledge? (对这个普通常识你怎么会一无所知。)

3) They have no common interests. (他们没有共同的爱好。)

3. Some people think of a family as a mother, a father, and their children, ...

think of ...as ...是一个很常用的词组，意思是“把...看作...”，如：

1) He often thinks of himself as a genius. (他常把自己看作为天才。)

2) The Yellow River is thought of as the cradle of the Chinese nation.
(黄河被看作为中华民族的摇篮。)

与 think of...as...意思相近的词组在英语中还有很多。如：

regard...as look upon...as...

see...as... view...as...

consider...as...

4. For others, having a family simply means having children.

本句中，having a family 做主语，mean 为谓语动词，having children 做宾语。mean 在句中的意思是“意味着”。当 mean 作“意味着”解释时，在它的后面应该跟名词或者动名词，如：

1) Accepting the job would mean moving to another city. (接受这份工作将意味着我得搬到另一个城市去。)

2) A raise in the worker's salary will mean a cut in the profit. (增加工人的工资意味着利润的降低。)

当 mean 作“意欲，打算”解释时，在它的后面通常跟不定式，如：

1) I didn't mean to offend you. (我无意冒犯你。)

2) I meant to give you the book yesterday, but I forgot it. (我原打算昨天把书给你的，但我忘了。)

5. Some families have long histories, while others know very little about their ancestors.

请注意 while 的用法，在本句中 while 是一个表示转折意味的连词，意思是“然而”。如：Fred gambled all his money away while Jane saved every penny for her son's schooling. (弗雷德赌输了他所有的钱，而珍妮却为儿子的教育攒下每一分钱。)

while 在不同的语境中有不同的意思，请翻译下面的句子，注意 while 的词义。

1) They decided to find a less expensive place to stay while in Paris. (在巴黎期间，他们打算找个更便宜的地方住。)

2) He looked at his watch several times while talking to her. (在跟她交谈时，他看了几次表。)

3) One group of children are quiet, while the second group was very active. (一组孩子很安静，而第二组孩子非常活跃。)

4) While I have sympathy for these people, I think they are guilty. (尽管我同情这些人，但我觉得他们有罪。)

5) We will succeed while we don't lose hope. (只要我们不失去希望，我们就会成功。)

6. No matter if it is young or old, large or small traditional or modern, every family has a sense of what a family is.

no matter if 连接让步状语从句，更常见的是用 no matter whether. 除了 no matter whether 以外，no matter wh- 引导的让步状语从句还有：no matter what, no matter who, no matter whose, no matter which, no matter when, no matter where, no matter how 等等。而用 wh-ever 引导让步从句也是十分常见的。请看下面的例句：

1) No matter what happens, please let me know. (无论发生什么事, 请让我知道。)

2) No matter who telephones, tell him I'm out. (无论谁来电话, 告诉他我出去了。)

3) No matter how hard I tried, I couldn't succeed. (无论我多努力, 我总不能成功。)

4) No matter whether you believe it or not, it's truth. (无论你信不信, 那总是事实。)

5) No matter where you go, I will follow you. (无论你去哪里, 我都跟着你。)

6) No matter which book you like you can have it. (无论你喜欢哪本书, 你都可以拿去。)

7) No matter whose money it is, we can't spend it so carelessly. (无论是谁的钱, 我们都不能这样随意地花)

上述某些句子可以用 wh-ever 表述如下:

1) Whatever happens, please let me know.

2) Whoever telephones, tell him I'm out.

3) However hard I tried, I couldn't succeed.

4) Wherever you go, I will follow you.

5) Whichever book you like, you can have it.

7. It is that feeling of belonging, of love and security that comes from living together, helping and sharing.

本句中的 it 代指课文前一句中的 a sense of what a family is. feeling of belonging 意思为“归属感”。

security 是一个名词, 意思是“安全”。

that comes from living together, helping and sharing 是定语从句, 修饰 that feeling of belonging, of love and security.

8. However, with the change from an agricultural to an industrial society, many nuclear families moved away from the family home in order to find work.

本句中的 however 是一个表示转折意味的副词，有承接上文的作用，可以使这个句子和前面的句子连接得更紧密，有些接近连词。请看例句：

1) This, however, is not your fault. (但这不是你的错。)

2) I'd like to go with you, however, my hands are full. (我想和你一起去，可是我忙不过来。)

句中的 with 是一个介词，意思是“随着”，请看例句：

1) With the change of the economic foundation, the superstructure has to be transformed too. (随着经济基础的改变，上层建筑也必须改造。)

2) With the development of science and technology, the society is changing rapidly. (随着科学技术的发展，社会在迅速地改变。)

with 是一个十分常用的介词，请看下面的句子，注意 with 的用法和词意：

1) Who will go with you? (谁和你一起去?)

2) The teacher is very strict with us. (老师对我们很严格。)

3) At the news we all jumped with joy. (听了这个消息，我们都高兴得跳了起来。With 表示原因。)

4) He wanted to kill two birds with one stone. (他想一举两得。With 意为“用，以”，译法可灵活。)

5) China is a country with a large population. (中国是一个有众多人口的国家。With 表示“有，带有”)

6) He finished this work with great difficulty. (他好不容易才完成了这项工作。With 引起短语作方式状语。)

7) He was sitting in a chair with his hands folded.

(他双手交叉在胸前坐在椅子上。With 引导独立结构：with+名词+过去分词，做方式状语。)

8) What's wrong with you? (你怎么了? with 意为“就…来说”)

9) With your knowledge and experience, you are sure to find a good job. (以(凭)你的知识和经验,你肯定会找到一份好工作。)

10) With all his shortcomings, he was a nice person. (尽管他有缺点,他还是个不错的人。)

句子中的 in order to find work 做目的状语,除了用 in order to 以外,还可以用 so as to, 也可以把 in order, so as 省去,只用不定式。请看例句:

1) He decided to study harder (so as) to catch up with the others. (他决定加紧学习好赶上别人。)

2) He ran out in a hurry (in order) to catch the last bus. (为了赶上末班车,他匆匆向外跑去。)

9. Therefore we can say that the nuclear family becomes more important than the extended family as the society industrializes.

句子中的 therefore 是一个副词,通常用来表示后面将要表述的内容是前面已经表述的内容的结果,也可以用来引导一个结论。类似的表达还有: so, consequently, as a result 等等。请看例句:

1) It rained, therefore the football match was put off. (天下雨,所以足球比赛延期了。)

2) He is too careless, as a result he failed the exam. (他太粗心,所以考试没及格。)

3) He was ill for about a month, consequently he lagged behind his classmates. (他病了一个月,因此落在了同学后面。)

as the society industrializes 随着社会的工业化。as 是一个连词,表示“当...时”。请看例句:

1) As time goes on, you'll like this place better. (随着时间的推移,你会更喜欢这个地方。)

2) As he talked on he got more and more excited. (他谈着的时候,越来越兴奋。)

本课中还有:

1) The nuclear family is becoming smaller as parents want fewer children.

2) As social scientists study these two new family forms, they will be able to tell us more about the future of the nuclear family in the post-industrial age.

10. social scientists now talk of two new family forms...

本句中的 talk 是一个不及物动词，在表达“谈论某人（某事）”时，talk 后面应该用介词 of 或者 about. 请看例句：

1) What are you talking about? (你们在谈什么?)

2) They are talking of visiting Mr. Zhang. (他们正谈论去看张先生的事。)

3) What do you mean when you talk about culture? (你谈论文化时指的是什么?)

Text B The Changing American Family

短语表达

1. all over

We have friends all over the world.

I have been looking all over for him.

2. provide for

Father had to work very hard to provide food and clothes for the family.

They are trying to provide some guidance for the newcomers.

3. be expected to

Parents are expected to provide for their children.

You are expected to be here before eight.

4. take care of

The nurse took care of the old lady when her daughter was away.

The cat and the dog were taken good care of.

5. on the other hand

I don't think this proposal is workable. On one hand we don't have so much money, on the other hand time is too limited.

6. be considered to be

He is considered to be the best candidate for the job.

Father is considered to be a humorous and responsible person.

7. in addition (to)

In addition, there are some magazines on the table.

In addition to bread, we had some milk and eggs for breakfast.

8. make decision

You have to make an immediate decision about the project.

It is difficult for me to make a decision right now.

9. help with

He hoped that his brother would help him with his math.

At weekends I often help my mother with the housework.

10. in contrast

In contrast with the low grade I got, Paul got a full mark on the biology test.

Their club, in contrast, reached a membership of 2000 last year.

11. give up

You will amount to nothing if you always give up easily.

The doctor persuaded my father to give up smoking.

12. get ready for

He got up early in the morning in order to get ready for the exam.

I haven't got ready for the interview yet.

13. be busy doing

Mother is busy cooking in the kitchen.

The teacher is busy distributing the test papers.

14. in conclusion

She will say a few words about the arrangement in conclusion.

In conclusion, the old people are happy in most of the Asian countries.

15. instead of

Instead of getting the bike repaired he bought a new one.

Who is going to the meeting instead of you?

Unit8 (第23讲—第25讲)

Text A Telecommunication via Satellite

本课主要单词

1. telecommunication n. 电信, 远距离通信

请注意这个词的构成, tele-是一个前缀, 意思是“远”, “远距离”。用 tele-为前缀构成的词很多, 如: television (电视), telegram (电报), telegraph (电报机; 发电报), telephone (电话), telescope (望远镜) 等。

The Japanese hope that we can be persuaded to buy their telecommunications equipment. (日本人希望能劝说我们购买他们的电信设备。)

AT&T has been allowed to enter the field of telecommunications in Shanghai. (在上海, AT&T 公司已获准进入电信领域。)

2. via prep. 经由, 经过, 通过

He went to Shanghai via Wuxi. (他经由无锡去上海。)

He booked a ticket to Washington via New York. (他预定了一张经由纽约去华盛顿的票。)

They transmitted television pictures via satellite all over the world.
(他们通过卫星把电视画面传送到世界各地。)

3. transmit v. 播送, 发射, 传送, 传递

Glass transmits light and water transmits sound. (玻璃能透光, 水会传声。)

The TV program was transmitted by satellite throughout the world.
(电视节目被卫星播送到世界各地。)

They were reluctant to transmit the information to the control center.
(他们不愿意把信息传送到控制中心去。)

4. photography n. 摄影, 照相; 摄影术

photo 是一个词根, 表示“光; 光电; 照相术”; graph 表示“记录”。以 photo 为词根的词还有: photochemistry (光化学), photocopy (影印), photoelectric (光电的), photograph (照片), photographer (摄影师), photosensitive (感光的) 等等。以 graph 为词根的词有: autograph (亲笔), biography (传记), calligraphy (书法), geography (地理学), telegraph (电报) 等等。

5. telegraph n. 电报机; 电报 v. 用电报发送; 发电报

我们刚刚讲到过 tele 是一个前缀, 表示“远, 远距离”, graph 是一个词根, 表示“写, 记录。”

She told him the news by telegraph. (她用电报把消息告诉了他。)

I telegraphed him the result last week. (上个星期, 我把结果告诉他了。)

6. establish v. 建立, 创办; 使确认

He decided to leave school and establish his own company. (他决定离开学校, 创办自己的公司。)

They have established diplomatic relations with that country. (他们已经同那个国家建立了外交关系。)

It is important for businessmen to establish credit. (对于商人来说, 建立信誉十分重要。)

It is strange that they haven't established the cause of death so far.
(很奇怪, 他们至今还没有确定死因。)

There is no way to establish the identity of the man. (没有办法确认那个人的身份。)

7. signal n. 信号; 暗号 v. 向...发信号

He didn't notice the traffic signals when he rode on the street. (他在街上骑车时, 没有注意到交通信号。)

He sat in the room and waited for the signal to speak. (他坐在房间里, 等候着让他说话的信号。)

The ship signaled its position hourly. (该船每小时用信号报告它的位置。)

He signaled me to enter the classroom. (他做手势叫我进教室。)

8. visual adj. 视觉的; 栩栩如生的

vision n. 视力, 视觉; 想像力; 幻想

visualize v. 设想, 想像

Are you sure it is not your visual illusion? (你能肯定这不是你的视错觉吗?)

His stories are very visual. (他的故事写得很生动。)

If you don't tell me anything, it is difficult for me to visualize the scene. (如果你什么也不告诉我, 要想像这个景象很困难。)

9. capable adj. 有能力的, 有才能的

capability n. 能力

I always thought mother was very capable. (我一直认为妈妈很能干。)

With the knowledge and experience, we are capable of overcoming the difficulties. (有了这些知识和经验, 我们能克服困难。)

Don't say anything capable of being misunderstood. (别说任何容易引起误解的话。)

They don't have the capability of solving practical problems. (他们没有解决实际问题的能力。)

Some jobs are beyond their capabilities. (有些工作超出了他们的能力。)

10. broadcast v; n. 广播, 播音

broadcaster n. 播音员

broadcasting n. 广播, 播音

broadcast 可以做规则动词用 (-ed), 也可以做不规则动词用。(过去时, 过去分词与动词原形一致。)

The news was broadcast to the whole country. (这一消息对全国广播了。)

Did you watch the evening broadcast of world news yesterday? (你昨天有没有看晚上播送的国际新闻?)

He works with the Central People's Broadcasting Station. (他在中央人民广播电台工作。)

He suggested all television broadcasting should be prohibited. (他建议禁止播放所有的电视节目。)

His wife is a famous television broadcaster. (他妻子是著名的电视播音员。)

11. access n. 通道, 入口; 接近(进入)的机会

The door gives access to a living room. (从这个门可以进入起居室。)

I cannot find the access to this building. (我找不到进入这座大楼的通道。)

I demanded access to a telephone. (我要求有权使用电话。)

You can easily get access to him. (你很容易接近他。)

People in that mountain area had no access to education. (那个山区的人们过去没有受教育的机会。)

access 也可以做动词用, 意思是“取, 利用”, 如:

The main problem was that they spent too much time accessing the information from the computer. (主要的问题是他们在从计算机上存取信息花了太多的时间。)

12. unlimited adj. 无限制的; 无限制的; 无数的

limited adj. 有限的

limit n. 界限；限度 v. 限制

He longed for unlimited power. (他渴望有无限的权利。)

They stored unlimited amount of food when they heard there might be an earthquake. (他们听说有可能地震贮备了大量的食品。)

Time is too limited, we have to finish this work in a hurry. (时间太紧，我们得匆匆完成这项工作了。)

You have to realize we have limited sources of information. (你得意识到我们的消息来源很有限。)

The driver was fined for exceeding the speed limit. (司机由于超速被罚款。)

There is a limit to one's life, but no limit to serving the people. (人的生命是有限的，但为人民服务是无限的。)

We have to limit the expenses as much as possible. (我们必须尽量节省开支。)

The author will limit himself to a discussion of the first two chapters. (作者只准备讨论前两章的内容。)

13. demonstrate v. 说明，演示；论证，证实；示威游行

demonstration n. 论证；表演；示范；示威

The chemistry teacher demonstrated a very interesting experiment to the students. (化学老师给学生们演示了一个有趣的实验。)

How would you demonstrate that the earth goes around the sun? (你如何证明地球围绕太阳转?)

The workers demonstrated for pay increases. (工人们示威要求加薪。)

Would you please give us a demonstration? (你能给我们演示一下吗?)

His speech was a demonstration of his patriotism. (他的演讲是他一片爱国心的证明。)

Tomorrow they will go to the street to stage a demonstration. (明天，他们将上街示威。)

14. educational adj. 教育的

education n. 教育

educate v. 教育

There are many educational programs on TV. (电视播放很多教育节目。)

He received a good education when he was young. (他年轻时受过良好的教育。)

The education of young people is important to the future of a country. (年轻人的教育对于一个国家的未来来说十分重要。)

He was educated in the United States. (他是在美国受的教育。)

15. remote adj. 遥远的, 偏僻的; (可能性) 很小的

People came to Beijing from the remotest parts of our country. (人们从祖国最偏远的地方来到北京。)

He decided to go to a remote mountain area after graduation from the university. (他决定大学毕业后到偏僻的山区去。)

Can you imagine what will become the world in the remote future? (你能想像在遥远的将来世界会变成什么样吗?)

There is only a remote possibility to finish it in two days. (在两天内完成的可能性极小。)

Please give me the remote control. (请把遥控器给我。)

16. isolate v. 使隔离

isolation n. 隔离, 孤立

He isolated himself from the outside world. (他把自己与外部世界隔绝了。)

The bridge sank and the village was isolated. (桥沉了, 那个村子被隔绝了。)

He doesn't trust anyone and he lives in isolation. (他不信任任何人, 过着孤独的生活。)

17. transportation n. 运输

Bike is a convenient means of transportation. (自行车是很方便的运输物品。)

They used both water and land transportation to send their goods. (他们用水陆两路运输工具。)

18. instruction n. 教学, 指导; 指示, 说明

instruct v. 命令、指示

Read the doctor's instruction before taking the medicine. (服药前请看一看医嘱。)

We will carry out your instructions very soon. (我们将很快执行你的指示。)

He is giving instruction in English. (他在讲授英语。)

The teacher instructed her to do more oral practice. (老师指导她多做口头训练。)

I was instructed to take you to Beijing. (我受命带你去北京。)

19. risk v. 冒…的危险 n. 风险、冒险

He risked his life in saving the drowning child. (他冒着生命危险救那个溺水儿童。)

I don't want to risk my life to find out whether he told the truth. (我不想冒丧命的危险去查证他是否说了真话。)

It must be done at any risk. (不管冒什么危险, 这事必须完成。)

He is unwilling to run the risk of losing his money. (他不愿意冒丧失金钱的危险。)

20. privacy n. 私事; 隐私; 独处

private adj. 私人的

A person should have some privacy. (一个人应有自己的隐私。)

She likes to live in privacy. (她喜欢清静地独居。)

They are having a private conversation. (他们在密谈。)

This is only my private opinion. (这只是我的个人意见。)

21. contact n. 接触, 联系 v. 与...接触

They have lost contact for many years. (他们失去联系已有多年了。)

We have to get into contact with him as soon as possible. (我们得尽快跟他取得联系。)

Contact me by telephone. (跟我电话联系。)

He contacted the control tower by radio. (他用无线电与指挥塔取得了联系。)

22. application n. 申请; 应用

apply v. 申请; 实施

Please fill in the application form. (请填申请表。)

The company rejected his application. (公司拒绝了他的申请。)

It is important to put the theory into application. (把理论应用起来很重要。)

He applied for party membership. (他申请入党了。)

We are trying to apply book knowledge to real work. (我们正努力把书本知识运用于实际工作中。)

本课主要构词法

conversion (转类法)

orbit (n.) — (v.)

telegraph (n.) — (v.) broadcast (n.) — (v.)

channel (n.) — (v.) risk (n.) — (v.)

contact (n.) — (v.) harm (n.) — (v.)

affixation (词缀法)

1. 名词后缀-ation

application

conversation

transportation

communication

2. 形容词后缀-al

personal

educational

本课主要词组及语法要点

词组:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a group of | 2. by blood / marriage |
| 3. descend from | 4. think of...as |
| 5. mean doing sth. | 6. know little about |
| 7. sense of | 8. come from |
| 9. consist of | 10. the center of |
| 11. from...to | 12. move away from |
| 13. in order to | 14. care for |
| 15. take care of | 16. split up |
| 17. the result of | 18. talk of |
| 19. be able to | 20. in...age |

Unit8 (第 23 讲—第 25 讲)

语法:

1. 注意掌握副词放在句首做状语, 修饰整个句子的用法, 如:
 - 1) Basically, there are two types of families.

2) Traditionally, all the members of an extended family lived in the same area.

2. 掌握连接词的用法，连接词可以用来帮助使前后文更加连贯。

1) The children stay in the nuclear family until they grow up and marry.

2) Then they form new nuclear family.

3) The members...are related by blood or by marriage.

4) They are all related, so the members of an extended family are called relatives.

5) However, with the change from an agricultural to an industrial society, many nuclear families moved away from the family home in order to find work.

6) ...but most extended families do not live together.

7) Therefore we can say that the nuclear family becomes more important than the extended family as the society industrializes.

8) The nuclear family is becoming smaller as parents want fewer children, and the number of...

9) ...both the father and the mother earn money for the family...

10) Most single parents find it very difficult to take care of a family alone, so they soon marry again and form remarried families.

以上句子中的画线单词有连词也有副词，在句子中都起连接词的作用。

本课简介

技术是否也是一把双刃剑，在给人们带来帮助的同时也带来了弊端？本课通过卫星通讯的利弊昭示人们“明智”地运用技术才能使我们走向成功。

卫星、计算机和电视的三结合改变了人们的生活。卫星被用来传送电视节目、电话和印刷材料；卫星被用于远程教育，使边远地区的人们通过“空中教室”接受教育；卫星被用来帮助生活在交通不便的偏僻地区的人们；卫星使世界各地的人们便捷地获取信息。然而侵犯隐私、使人与人之间疏于接触交流等弊端也应引起关注。

本课主要语言点

1. At the beginning of the twentieth century, there were four powerful means of transmitting and receiving information over long distances: ...

本句中的 beginning 是一个名词，意思是“开始，开端”。如：

1) from beginning to end (从头到尾)

2) He has made a good beginning. (他开了个好头。)

3) I'm afraid I won't have the time to come back at the beginning of the term. (恐怕我不会有时间在开学初回来。)

means 在本句中的意思是“方法；工具”，请看例句：

1) The most convenient means of transport for people in the United States are cars. (对美国人来说最便利的交通工具是汽车。)

2) He had no means of escape other than jumping. (除了跳窗，他没有别的逃跑方法。)

3) He succeeded by means of painstaking effort. (他依靠苦干获得了成功。)

by all means 尽一切办法

live within/beyond one's means 量入(不量入)为出

a means to an end 达到目的的方法

by some means or other 用某种方法

2. By the middle of the century, both radio and television had become established means of transmitting sounds and pictures.

句中所用的过去完成时，表示过去某时前已经发生的动作或情况。该动作已经完成，或者可能延续下去。用 by 引起的时间状语常与过去完成时连用。例如：

1) By the end of last June, they had visited 15 countries. (到去年六月底为止他们已经访问了 15 个国家。)

2) By the end of last year Henry had collected 1500 butterfly specimens. (到去年年底，亨利已经采集了一千五百多个蝴蝶标本。)

3) By the middle of 1999, more than 10 high buildings had been built in this area. (到 1999 年年中，这一地区已建造了十座高楼。)

4) By the time they got to the cinema, the film had already begun.
(他们赶到电影院时, 电影已经开映了。)

established 在句中做形容词, 意思是“常规的”。这个词还可解释为“ (被) 设立的; 确认的; 既定的; 公认的”。例如:

1) a newly established organization (新设的组织)

2) the established principles of international law (公认的国际法准则)

3) an established fact (既成事实)

4) an established custom (常规)

3. In order to transmit an event such as the Olympics Via satellite, television signals are first changed into radio waves, which are then sent from a station on earth to an orbiting satellite.

such as 的后面既可以跟名词也可以跟从句, 意为“诸如…之类的”: “例如”或“像…这样的人或事物”。请看例句:

1) They will plant flowers such as roses, sunflowers, etc. (他们将栽种玫瑰、向日葵一类的花。)

2) Countries such as France, Germany, Japan and America are developed countries. (像法国、德国、日本和美国这类国家是发达国家。)

3) I felt a weight at my heart such as I had never had before. (我心中感到了一种从未有过的沉重情绪。)

4) I don't have many reference books but I will send you such as I have. (我的参考书不多, 但我愿把我手头有的那些寄给你。)

which 引导的是一个非限定性的定语从句。非限定性定语从句在修饰人时用 who, whom 或 whose, 在修饰物时用 which. 非限定性定语从句常用逗号与主句分开。例如:

1) The students, who wanted to go outing, were disappointed when it rained. (那些学生想去郊游, 天下雨了大家都感到失望。)

2) The team is headed by an American, whose wife is a Chinese. (队长是一个美国人, 他的妻子是中国人。)

3) The book, which he borrowed from me yesterday, cost 1/3 of my salary. (他昨天从我这儿借走的那本书花了我三分之一的工资。)

非限定性定语从句也可用关系副词 where 或 when 来引导。非限定性定语从句的先行词可以是一个词，也可以是前面主句中的一个短语、从句或前面整个句子，通常用关系代词 which 引导。例如：

1) The small town, where he once worked, has turned to be a modern city. (那座小城，他曾在那儿工作过，已变成一座现代化的城市了。)

2) We will put off the outing until next week, when we won't be so busy. (我们把郊游推迟至下周，那时我们不会这么忙了。)

3) They turned a deaf ear to our demands, which made all of us angry. (他们对我们的要求置之不理，这使我们大家都很生气。)

4. In theory, every person will have access to an unlimited amount of information.

in theory 意为“从理论上来说；在理论上”，与其意思相反的词组是 in practice (在实践中；实际上)。例如：

1) Your plan is good in theory, but does it work in practice? (你的计划在理论上还是不错的，但实行起来能行吗?)

2) His proposal worked well in practice. (他的建议很行得通。)

have access to 是一个很常用的词组，意为“可接近，可进入”，to 是介词，动词 have 也可用其他词替换。如 get, gain, give, win 等。在词汇部分，对 access 已做过讲解，在此仅举例一、二。

1) The only access to that building is blocked. (进入那座楼的唯一通道被堵住了。)

2) Students need easy access to books. (学生需要很容易地接触到图书。)

2) You can easily get access to the humorous old man. (你很容易接近那个幽默的老人。)

information 是一个不可数名词，后面不可以加 s，许多信息可以用 a lot of information, a large amount of information, much information 等表达。一条信息可以表达为 a piece of information.

amount 通常用在不可数名词前面，如 the amount of money; a considerable amount of prejudice (相当大的偏见)。在复数名词前面可用 number，如 the number of mistakes; the number of students

5. The satellite also demonstrated how it could provide help to people living in isolated areas where transportation is difficult.

how 引导的是一个宾语从句。我们很熟悉的是 that 引导的宾语从句，而且 that 常常可以省略。如：We must remember (that) things are easier said than done. (我们必须记住事情都是说起来容易，做起来难。)

用连接代词或副词引导的宾语从句我们也应弄清楚。请看下面的句子：

1) He didn't tell me where the shopping center was. (他没有告诉我购物中心在哪里。)

2) Do you know what they were talking about? (你知道他们刚才在谈论什么吗?)

3) Let's see how we can solve the problem. (我们看看怎么来解决这个问题。)

4) I'm wondering if the letter is overweight. (我想知道这封信是不是超重。)

5) We must find out who did this. (我们必须弄清楚这是谁干的。)

provide 是一个常用单词，通常可以有如下用法：provide sth. to/for sb.; provide sb. with sth.; provide sb. sth.; provide that..., 在前一个单元中，我们已对 provide 一词有过讲解，再看几个例子：

1) It is impossible for the government to provide all young people with a job. (政府不可能给所有的年轻人都提供一份工作。)

2) Can you provide 5 buses for/to the tourists? (你们能为游客们提供五辆巴士吗?)

3) The agreement provides that the two sides shall meet once a month. (协议规定双方每月会晤一次。)

6. He was then able to follow the doctor's instructions on how to care for the patient.

句子中的 on 意思为“关于；有关”，可用 about 替换。例如：

1) He wrote a book on India. (他写了一本有关印度的书。)

2) He gave us a report on the international economy. (他给我们做了关于国际经济的报告。)

3) They exchanged views on questions of common concern. (他们就共同关心的问题交换了意见。)

care of 在句子中的意思是“照顾”，可用 attend; look after 替换。例如：

1) The whole society should care for the younger generation. (全社会都应该关怀年轻的一代。)

2) You can't really find out how to care for children from books. (你从书本上不可能真正找到照顾孩子的方法。)

care for 还可以解释为“担心”，“介意”，“愿意”，可用 about 替换 for.

1) He doesn't care about/for his clothes. (他不讲究衣着。)

2) The old lady cared much for her daughter's safety. (老太太非常为女儿的安全担心。)

3) Would you care for a cup of tea? (来杯茶，好吗?)

4) I don't care for him to read the letter. (我不愿意让他看这封信。)

7. The most common use of telecommunication satellites, however, has been for transmitting telephone calls. however

在本句中做副词用，意思相当于 but. 但是 however 和 but 在用法上是有差异的。however 不放在句首或句末时，前后通常都加逗号，而 but 则不用。请看例句：

1) It is not, however, the only answer to the question. (然而，这不是问题的唯一答案。)

2) I'd like to go and see the films, however, I don't have the time. (我很想去看电影，但我没时间。)

3) However, we still have 10 minutes left. (不过，我们还有十分钟。)

4) The composition is well written, there is room for improvement, however.

5) I am sorry, but I won't be able to come this time. (很抱歉，我这次不能来了。)

6) He would like to go, but he was busy. (他想去，但他太忙。)

7) It's not cheap, but it's really good. (这个不便宜, 但的确很好。)

8. Telecommunication can make information from around the world available to use quickly and easily, but some people worry that this may be a risk to our privacy.

available 是一个形容词, 意思是“可得到的; 可用的; 有效的”。

1) I am sorry those shoes are not available in your size. (很抱歉, 那些鞋没你的尺码。)

2) If I am not available when you call, leave a message. (你打电话来时如果我不在, 请留个言。)

3) If the tickets is available, I will go to the concert. (如果能弄到票, 我会去听音乐会。)

4) The ticket is available on the day of issue only. (此票仅发售当天有效。)

9. We can prevent this from happening by carefully controlling the new technology.

prevent...from... 意思为“阻止...发生”, 也可用 stop...from... 或 keep...from. From 可被省去。例如:

1) They tried every means to prevent the disease (from) spreading. (他们想方设法阻止疾病蔓延。)

2) Nothing can prevent him (from) going there. (什么也阻止不了他去那儿。)

本课主要词组及语法要点

词组:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. at the beginning of | 2. means of |
| 3. over long distance | 4. by the middle of |
| 5. such as | 6. change into |
| 7. from...to... | 8. be capable of |
| 9. not only...but... | 10. in theory |

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 11. have access to | 12. amount of |
| 13. provide...to... | 14. follow sb's instructions |
| 15. care for | 16. as well as |
| 17. at the same time | 18. make...available |
| 19. pay for | 20. isolate...from... |

语法:

1. 过去完成时

1) ...both radio and television had become established means of transmitting sounds and pictures.

2. 非限定性定语从句

1) ...radio waves, which are then sent from a station on earth to an orbiting satellite.

2) ...back to earth, where another station picks them up and changes them back into television signals.

3) The combination of satellites, which transmit information, computers, which store information, and television, which displays information, will change every home into an education and entertainment center.

2. 宾语从句

1) We must remember that technology alone is not the answer.

2) The satellite also demonstrated how it could provide help to people living in isolated areas...

3. 注意 such as, as well as, as 的用法

1) In order to transmit an event such as the Olympics via satellite, ...

2) ...printed materials such as books and magazines.

3) ...as well as get any information they need, ...

4) As one telecommunication expert says, ...

Text B What People Don't Know about Air

短语表达

1. without

We couldn't have finished the work so soon without your help.

Without air, there would be no wind or clouds.

2. adv. + past participle

It is widely known that the earth goes around the sun.

It is generally believed that the earth is getting hotter.

3. where

Where there is a will, there is a way.

Where there is hope, there is life.

4. be forced to

He was forced to drop out of school.

They were forced to work 14 hours a day.

5. shelter v. & n.

Mother tried to shelter her from the blow of the tragic news.

You have to find shelter from the blazing sun.

6. protect from

It is necessary that we protect our skin from being burned by the sun.

She had his umbrella to protect her from the sun.

7. deadly adj.

They made a deadly attack on the enemy's air base.

A drop of this poison might be deadly to man.

8. burst

As he braked a tire burst.

All the boys burst from their tents.

Everybody in the room burst out laughing.

The little girl burst into tears.

9. rest upon

His arm rested upon the table.

The task rested upon my shoulder.

His eyes rested upon a strange object.

10. gaze at

He was standing at the window, gazing at the street.

What are you gazing at?

11. not...until

He didn't go out to play until he finished his homework.

No one was to go to bed until further order.

12. in the meantime

His case won't come to court for several months, and in the meantime more than half of the people think him guilty.

At last we were released. In the meantime, our friend had informed the newspaper.

13. pay attention to

Please pay more attention to your spelling next time.

I didn't pay much attention to what he said yesterday.

14. add to

If you praise others more often, you can add great happiness to their life.

What he said just now added to my confusion.

Unit9 (第 26 讲—第 28 讲)

Text A learned words and popular words

本课主要单词

1. learned adj. 有学问的, 博学的; 学术上的

这个单词做形容词用时有两种读音, 一是 , 另一个是 或 . 读 时, 意思是“有学问的, 博学的; 学术上的”; 读 或 时, 意思是“经过训练学到的”。

a learned man (学者) a learned discussion (学术讨论)

a learned doctor (医道高明的医生) a learned journal (学术刊物)

a learned response 后天的反应 (指非天生的)

He was learned in the ways of the words. (他深通人情世故。)

2. cultivated adj. 耕种的; 栽培的; 有修养的

cultivate v. 耕种; 种植; 培养; 陶冶; 建立; 教化

cultivation n 耕种; 栽培; 培养; 修养。

1) The farmer was busy cultivating the land when I found him. (我找到那位农民时, 他正忙着耕地。)

2) His father cultivated a farm of 80 acres. (他父亲耕种一个 80 英亩地的农场。)

3) Extensive reading can cultivate your mind. (广泛阅读能陶冶你的心性。)

4) He tried hard to cultivate good relations with his colleagues. (他努力与同事们建立良好关系。)

5) He is a very cultivated young man. (他是一个非常有教养的年轻人。)

6) Her cultivated voice was pleasing to the audience. (她文雅的话音很悦耳。)

7) He just can't understand why they allowed the land to go out of cultivation. (他就是不理解他们为什么任土地荒芜。)

8) The cultivation of good manners will be very helpful to his future. (礼貌习惯的养成对他的未来将有很大的帮助。)

9) He is a man of charm and cultivation. (他既有魅力又有教养。)

3. concern n. 关心; 关系; 关联 v. 涉及, 有关于; 使关心, 使挂念

1) This matter is no concern of yours. (这件事跟你毫无关系。)

2) I don't think it is my concern, go and ask the manager, please. (这事跟我没关系, 请去问经理。)

3) We felt concern for (或 over) your health. (我们为你的健康担心。)

4) He is said to have been concerned in the crime. (据说他与这起犯罪事件有关。)

5) The energy problem concerns us all. (能源问题关系到我们每个人。)

6) The baby's poor health concerned his parents. (孩子身体不好使父母担忧。)

concern oneself in sth..... 关心

concern oneself with (about, over, in) 忙于

concern oneself about (for) 担忧

have no concern with 与...无关

to whom it may concern (用作正式信件的开头) 敬启者

concerned adj. 担忧的, 不安的; 有关联的; 关心的

1) We are concerned about (at, over) world peace. (我们关心世界和平。)

2) He spoke to the people concerned. (他对有关的人讲了话。)

3) We are not concerned with who is right or wrong. (我们对谁是谁非不感兴趣。)

4) As far as ability is concerned, he is the best candidate. (就能力而言,他是最佳人选。)

concerning prep. 关于

1) This is a proposal concerning child health. (这是一项关于儿童健康的建议。)

2) Please inform me concerning this matter. (请把关于这件事的情况告诉我。)

4. possession n. 所有, 拥有

possess v. 拥有; 具有; 掌握; 耐住(性子)

1) The possession of a degree does not guarantee you a job. (有学位不一定保证能找到工作。)

2) When his father died, he came into possession of a large ranch. (他父亲去世后,他继承了一个大牧场。)

3) He was a poor man with few possessions. (他是个没有什么财产的穷人。)

4) The old house is now in his possession. (这所老房子现在归他所有。)

5) The old lady is in possession of some gold coins. (那位老太太拥有一些金币。)

6) How much money does he possess? (他有多少钱?)

7) He told us that he possessed a little French. (他对我们说他懂一点法语。)

8) He possessed his temper despite the insult. (尽管受到了侮辱,他还是按捺住怒气。)

5. occasion n. 时刻; 场合; 时机

occasional adj. 偶尔的, 偶然的

occasionally adv. 偶然地

1) We've met each other on more than one occasion. (我们已经不止一次地见过。)

2) He wanted to give people a good impression on this special occasion. (他想在这个特别的场合给人们留下好印象。)

3) The weather was good except for an occasional shower. (除了偶尔有阵雨外, 天气很好。)

4) They go into town occasionally. (他们偶尔进城。)

6. acquaintance n. 相识; 了解; 熟人

acquaint v. 使认识; 了解

1) I had some acquaintance with this subject. (对这一课题我曾有所了解。)

2) He has many acquaintances. (他交游甚广。)

3) It's necessary to acquaint Western readers with recent happenings in China. (向西方读者介绍中国最近的动态很有必要。)

4) She decided to acquaint herself with every aspect of the question. (她决定使自己对这个问题的每一个方面都了如指掌。)

5) We were acquainted with each other several years ago. (我们几年前就相互认识了。)

7. formal adj. 正式的; 形式的; 礼仪上的

informal adj. 非正式的; 不拘礼节的

formally adv. 正式地

1) They wrote a formal letter of thanks. (他们写了一封正式的感谢信。)

2) He received formal training in music when he was only 6. (他六岁时就接受了正规的音乐训练。)

3) It's not appropriate to wear informal clothes on formal occasions. (在正式场合穿便装不合适。)

4) Discussions were formally opened in David Camp last week. (讨论上周在戴维营正式开始。)

8. elevated adj. 提高的；高贵的，庄严的

elevate v. 提高；提升

elevation n. 高度；提升；崇高

elevator n. 起重工人；电梯

1) She considers herself too elevated to eat in a fast-food restaurant.
(她自视过高，不愿在快餐店用餐。)

2) He spoke in an elevated tone. (他用庄严的语气讲着。)

3) He was elevated to a higher rank. (他晋了级。)

4) They worked hard to elevate the living standards. (他们努力工作以提高生活水平。)

5) He was overjoyed at his elevation to the position of general manager.
(他因晋升为总经理而欣喜万分。)

6) They are flying at an elevation of 8000 feet. (他们正在 8000 英尺高空飞行。)

7) You can take an elevator to the 18th floor. (你可以乘电梯去十八楼。)

9. style n. 风格；文体；式样

1) They sell hats in all sizes and styles. (他们出售各种式样和尺寸的帽子。)

2) He changed his style of painting when he returned from Paris. (他从巴黎回来后就改变了画风。)

3) Sincerity and simplicity are his style. (真挚和简练是他的文体。)

come into style (开始流行)

be in style (在流行中)

be out of style (不再流行)

10. case n. 情况，事实；病例，案例；箱子，盒子

1) He thought the more time he spent on his lessons, the better performance he would make. But now he realizes it is not the case. (他原以为花在功课上的时间越多, 成绩就越好, 现在他认识到情况并非如此。)

2) If that's the case you'll have to work harder. (如果真是那样, 你得更加努力。)

3) Don't worry too much about it, it is a light case of flu. (别担心, 只是轻度流感。)

4) The police are studying the murder case. (警察正在研究这起谋杀案。)

a case in point (恰当的例子)

a case of honor (荣誉攸关的问题)

a civil (criminal) case (民事/刑事诉讼)

a case of life and death (生死攸关的事情)

a hard case (棘手的事情)

in any case (无论如何)

in case (假使; 以防)

in the case of (就...来说)

just in case (以防万一)

11. popularity n. 普及, 流行; 名望, 受欢迎

popular adj. 普遍的; 多数人喜爱的; 大众的

1) He was amazed at the popularity of table-tennis when he first came to China. (他第一次来中国时惊异于乒乓球运动的普及。)

2) The new president achieved great popularity. (新任总统深得人心。)

3) Books on popular science are selling well. (科普书籍销得很好。)

4) He is popular among young students. (他深受青年学生的欢迎。)

12. classification n. 分类; 分级

classify v. 把…分类

1) There are different opinions about the classification of a particular word. (对某一特定的词的分类有不同的看法。)

2) They classified the books according to their contents. (他们根据内容把图书分了类。)

在英语中有不少以-fy 为后缀的动词，其名词形式常以-ation 为后缀，如：

purify-purification

qualify-qualification

simplify-simplification

identify-identification

13. convenient adj. 方便的

inconvenient adj. 不方便的

convenience n. 方便

1) If it is convenient for you, please inform me of the case as soon as possible. (如果于你方便的话，请把案情尽早告诉我。)

2) Your visit caused him great inconvenience. (你的来访给他带来极大的不便。)

3) I appreciate the convenience of living near the office. (我喜欢住处离办公室近这点方便。)

14. avoid v. 避免，避开

1) You should avoid being late for the meeting. (你应该避免开会迟到。)

2) We should avoid making the same mistake. (我们应该避免犯同样的错误。)

15. presence n. 出席，到场

present adj. 出席的；当前的 n. 礼物 v. 呈献；送

1) We shall be greatly honored to have your presence. (你如能出席, 我们将荣幸之至。)

2) He felt shy to speak in the presence of a large audience. (在众人前讲话他感到难为情。)

3) All the students are present today. (今天, 所有的学生都到堂了。)

4) He is talking about the present situation. (他正在谈当前的形势。)

5) He's father gave him a lovely birthday present. (父亲给了他一个可爱的生日礼物。)

6) He presented his teacher with a book he wrote. (他送给老师一本自己写的书。)

本课主要词缀

Affixation (词缀法)

1. 形容词后缀-ed (多接于名词之后, 表示“具有…”, “充满…”的意思)

learned, cultivated, educated, elevated

2. 名词后缀-ion, -ation

possession, classification, misconception, cultivation

3. 名词后缀-ance

acquaintance, importance

Unit9 (第 26 讲—第 28 讲)

本课简介

在 learned words and popular words 这篇课文中, 作者对学术词汇和普通词汇进行了定义。讲述了两类词汇之间的差异, 并且指出把词分为学术的和普通的方便而且有条理。但是人们必须注意, 把普通词汇理解为属于大众所有的词, 而不是某个特定阶层的人们所拥有的东西。学术词汇也并非有学问之人专用, 只是它的存在是由于书籍和文学的培养而不是日常会话的实际需要。

本课主要语言点

1. In every cultivated language there are two great classes of words which, taken together, make up the whole vocabulary.

class 在本句中的意思是“种类”，相当于 type, category. 如：

1) It is very difficult to meet the needs of various classes of readers.
(要满足各种读者的需要十分困难)

2) How many classes are you going to divide these books? (你打算把这些书分成几类?)

class 还常用来表示“等级”，如：a second-class hotel (二等旅馆)；
an economy-class ticket (经济舱票)；fly first class (乘头等舱航空旅行)。

class 也可以用动词用，意思是“把…分类；把…看作”，如：

1) At 19 you are still classed as a teenager. (到了十九岁，你仍旧是青少年。)

2) He was classed as a genius (他被看作为天才)

make up 在本句中的意思是“组成、构成”，请看例句：

1) Twenty-six boys and twenty-four girls make up the class (二十六名男生和二十四名女生组成了这个班)

2) Twelve doctors made up the medical team (十二名医生组成医疗队)

用被动语态时则应用 be made up of, 如：

This engine is made up of 490 parts (这台发动机是由四百九十个部件装配而成的)

taken together 过去分词短语做后置定语，对中心词做一些附加说明，相当于一个非限定性定语从句，要用逗号和中心词隔开，如：

All the letters in the drawer, written in pencil, are from my brother.
(抽屉里的这些用铅笔写的信都是我弟弟写的。)

2. First, there are those words with which we become familiar in ordinary conversation, which we learn, that is to say, from the members of our own family and from our friends, and which we should know and use even if we could not read or write.

句子中 which 引导的都是定语从句，修饰中心词 words. 第一个 which 的前面有介词 with，这儿的 with 是 familiar with 中的介词前置了。Familiar with 意为“熟悉”。如：Are you familiar with the man standing over there? (站在那边的那个人你熟悉吗?)

请注意 familiar with 与 familiar to 的区别，familiar with 的主语通常是人，而 familiar to 的主语通常是物。如：

1) I am not familiar with this place.

2) This place is not familiar to me.

that is to say 是插入语，其作用是对整个一句话进行解释，类似的插入语还有 so to speak, if I may say so, if you don't mind 等等，如：

1) I'd really rather not go, if you don't mind 我确实不想去，你如果不介意的话。

2) The new emperor was, so to speak, a puppet. 新皇帝可以说是个傀儡。

3. They concern the common things of life, and are the stock in trade of who speak the language concern 在句中的意思是“涉及，有关于”，如：

1) Don't interfere in things that don't concern you (别干预跟你无关的事)。

2) The energy problem concerns us all (能源问题关系到我们每个人)

stock 的意思很多，如“存货”，“股票”，“公债券”，“牲畜”等。

1) They hold a rich stock of information (他们掌握着丰富的材料)

2) You cannot buy it because it's out of stock (你买不成了，货品已经脱销)

3) He used to have a stock farm (他曾经拥有一个畜牧场)

4) The fridge was carefully stocked up with food. (冰箱里周到地放满了食品)

stock in trade 也可以写成 stock in trade, 意思是“例行工作”，“常规”，如：

1) Complaints were a stock in trade of an airport manager's job (机场经理的工作就是常常面对投诉)

2) He was the master of black humor, it was his stock in trade (他是黑色幽默大师, 黑色幽默是他的专长)

4. Such words may be called “popular”, since they belong to the people at large and are not the possession of a limited class only.

since 在句中引导的是一个原因状语从句, 请看例句:

1) Since it was Saturday, he got up very late (因为是周六, 他起床很晚。)

2) You can take the place of him since he is not interested (你可以取代他, 因为他对这事不感兴趣)

at large 在本句中的意思是“整个”, 这个词组的意思还有很多, 请看下面的句子:

1) The people at large love peace (大多数人热爱和平)

2) The virus is still at large (这种病毒还在蔓延)

3) The murderer is still at large (杀人犯仍逍遥法外)

4) He talked at large about his plans (他详尽地谈了自己的计划)

5) They made the arrangements at large (他们随意地做了安排)

5. 请注意区别与 possession 有关的两个词组: in possession of sth……和 in the possession of sb.

1) He is in possession of this house (他拥有这所房子)

2) The house is in the possession of him

3) On the other hand, our language includes large number of words which are relatively seldom used in ordinary conversation.

英语中有许多表示启承转合的词语, 阅语中注意这些词有助于我们提高理解力, 写作中注意用这些词, 有助于我们把文章写得连贯、有条理。On the other hand 在本句中用来表示不同或相反的语气, 在前一段中讲了 popular word 这一段中作者则要讲讲 learned words. 表示不同或相反语气的词还有很多, 比如: Conversely, however, on the contrary, unlike, whereas, yet 等等。

前面我们提到过 number 可以与可数名词连用, 而 amount 可与不可数名词连用, 如:

1) A large number of students have passed the exam (许多学生已经通过了考试)

2) They paid a large amount of money for the house (他们付了一大笔钱买了这座房子)

6. Their meanings are known to every educated person, but there is little occasion to use them at home

occasion 通常可以做可数名词用,意思是“时刻、场合”;也可以做不可数名词用,意思是:“必要性、需要;机会”。如:

1) They're met on several occasions (他们已相遇过好几次)

2) They are occasions when you find it difficult to say "Good-bye". (有时候你会觉得说“再见”很难。)

3) I don't remember I had occasion to blame him (我不记得我有责备他的必要)

7. In the latter, we are using a Latin Derivation which has exactly the same meaning

在前一句中用了“in the first case,”本句中的“in the latter”是指 in the latter case.对两件事分别进行表述时,可以用 in the first case, in the latter case 这一类词,条理非常清楚,也可以用 the former, the latter 来表述。derivation 是 derive 的名词形式。Latin derivation 意思是“拉丁语词源的词”,请看例句:

1) These words are derived from Latin (这些词由拉丁语派生而来)

2) The derivation of words is interesting (词的派生很有意思)

8. The terms “popular” and “learned”, as applied to words, are not absolute definitions.本句中的 term 意思是“术语、名称”,如:

1) I don't know how to put this term into Chinese (我不知道如何把这一术语译成中文)

2) Writer is hardly the term to apply to him (“作家”这一名称很难用在他身上)

term 还有“期限;任期;学期”的意思,如:

1) During his 4-year term of office, he did a lot of things for the common people. (在他四年的任职期间,他为普通百姓做了不少事。)

2) He decided to run for a second term (他决定竞选连任。)

3) The autumn term is coming to an end (秋学期快要结束了。)

apply to 在句中的意思是“用于”，如：

1) This rule applies to upper class students only (这条规则只适用于高年级学生。)

2) I don't think what he says applies to you (我想他的话对你不适用)

3) They are eager to apply the theory to practice (他们急切地想把这一理论用于实践)

apply for 则是“申请”的意思，如：

1) How many people have applied for the job? (有多少人申请了这个工作?)

2) They applied for permission to use the tennis court (他们申请使用网球场。)

9. Still the classification into “learned” and “popular” is convenient and sound. 本句中的 sound 是形容词，意思是“正确的；明智的”，如：

1) He felt so happy that he had made a sound decision. (做了正确的决定，他感到很高兴。)

2) He was so carried away by power that he could not make any sound judgement (他被权力冲昏了头脑，无法做出任何明智的判断)

请看下面几个句子，注意 sound 在句中的意思：

1) He is sound in body and mind (他身心健康)

2) The house is sound. Don't hesitate to buy it (这所房子完好无损，别犹豫，买下它)

3) The baby is having a sound sleep. (宝宝在酣睡)

4) Father gave him a sound beating. (父亲给他一顿痛打)

10. When we call a word “learned” we don't mean that it is used by learned persons alone, but simply that its presence in the English

vocabulary is due to books and the cultivation of literature rather than to the actual needs of ordinary people

not (that) ... but (that)。意思“不是…。而是。”如：

1) I came here again not because I enjoy the scenery so much but because I like the people . (我又来这儿，不是因为我多喜欢这儿的景色，而是我爱这儿的人们。)

2) By calling him Shylock, I don't mean that he is named Shylock, but that he is as miserly as Shylock. (叫他夏洛克，我不是说他的名字叫夏洛克，而是说他像夏洛克一样吝啬。)

due to 在句中的意思是“由于”，如：

1) His failure was due to carelessness (他的失败是由于粗心。)

2) Due to lack of funds, they had to postpone the project. (由于缺少资金，他们不得不推迟计划)

rather than 在本句的意思是“不是…而是……”，“与其……不如…”

1) He is a writer than a teacher (与其说他是教师，不如说他是作家。)

2) He lay rather than sit in the armchair (与其说他是坐在扶手椅上不如说是躺在里面。)

本课主要词组

1. make up

2. be familiar with

3. learn from

4. belong to

5. at large

6. on the other hand

7. be known to

8. acquaintance with

9. in a style

10. be of importance
11. in the first case
12. in the latter (case)
13. in print
14. apply to
15. come up
16. as to
17. as a whole
18. due to
19. rather than

Text B how should you build up your vocabulary?

短语表达

1. build up (建立; 增强; 增加)

They worked hard to build up the friendship between the people in two countries.

Get plenty of exercise every to build up your health.

2. come across (穿过, 出现; 遇到)

They came across the street to meet me.

A good idea came across my mind

We are bound to come across difficulties, but we are determined to overcome them.

3. look up (查阅)

If there are words you don't understand, look them up in the dictionary .

For further information about this matter, look up this book.

4. at top speed (以最高速度)

He drove his car at top speed

It's dangerous to corner at top speed

5. depend on (依靠; 取决于)

We'll depend mainly on ourselves to solve the problem.

The accomplishment of the task depends on the solution of this major problem.

6. make sense (有意义、讲得通)

What he said just now didn't make any sense to me.

This sentence doesn't make any sense.

7. try doing sth (尝试做某事)

You can try using another method to go it

He tried climbing the mountain without any help.

8. come up with (提出, 想出; 提供)

He is expected to come up with some ideas after he thinks about the problem.

The TV network will come up with better shows in the future.

9. lead to (导致)

Our discussions led to confusion. The earthquake led to heavy loss of life.

10. after all (毕竟)

Don't expect too much of him, he is, after all, a child of 10.

We didn't finish all the work. After all, we didn't have enough hands

11. provide with (提供)

It is necessary that you provide them with all the equipment

We are satisfied to be provided with these kitchen utensils

12. begin with (以……开始)

The first word of a sentence should begin with a capital letter .

To begin with, we ought to know what we are here for.

Unit10 (第29讲—第31讲)

Text A scientific attitudes

本课主要单词

1. attitude n. 姿势, 姿态; 态度, 看法

1) The plane was in a nose-down attitude. (飞机处于俯冲姿态。)

2) They decided to take an attitude of wait and see to/toward the new policy. (他们决定对新政策采取观望态度。)

3) We should adopt a correct attitude about tests. (对考试我们应抱正确的态度。)

2. environment n. 环境, 周围状况, 自然环境

1) A child can easily adjust to changes in the environment. (孩子很容易适应环境的变化。)

2) They promised to provide us a good environment for work and rest. (他们许诺为我们提供良好的工作或休息环境。)

3) Science offers us total mastery over environment and over our destiny. (科学赋予我们控制环境掌握命运的能力。)

4) He grew up in an environment of poverty. (他在贫穷的环境中长大。)

environmental adj. 环境的

environmental protection 环境保护

environmental pollution 环境污染

environmental biology 环境生物学, 生态学

environmental engineer 环境工程师

3. curiosity n. 好奇(心) curious adj. 好奇的; 离奇古怪的

1) He walked to the silent old man out of curiosity. (出于好奇, 他向那位沉默寡言的老人走去。)

2) She showed great curiosity about my past. (她对我的过去显示出莫大的好奇。)

3) Children are curious about everything. (儿童对什么都感到好奇。)

4) Not long after they left, a curious thing happened. (他们走后不久, 一件古怪的事情发生了。)

4. imagination n. 想像, 想像力; 幻觉; 应变能力

imagine v. 想像; 料想

1) He is a writer of rich imagination. (他是一个富有想像力的作家。)

2) No one moved in the bushes, it was only your imagination. (没人在树丛里走动, 只是你的幻觉而已。)

3) Due to his lack of imagination, he just didn't know what to do next. (由于缺少应变能力, 他不知道下一步该怎么办。)

4) It is hard to imagine life with electricity. (很难想像没有电, 生活会是怎样。)

5) I imagine he will come tomorrow. (我料想他明天会来。)

请注意区别下面三个形容词 imaginative, imaginary, imaginable

1) It is an imaginative tale. (这是个虚构的故事。)

2) The teacher is waiting for imaginative answer. (老师正等待着具有丰富想像力的回答。)

3) The equator is an imaginary circle around the earth. (赤道即假想的环绕地球的大圆。)

4) an imaginary enemy (假想敌)

5) They said they would save the patient by every means imaginable. (他们说他们会用尽一切想得出的方法抢救病人。)

(imaginable 常与最高级形容词或 all, every, only 等连用, 放在被修饰的名词的后面。)

5. apart adv. 分离, 分开

1) The two schools are 20 miles apart. (两校相距 20 英里。)

2) I cannot tell these two things apart. (我无从区分这两件东西。)

3) Apart from what he mentioned just now, there are some other causes for the failure. (除了他刚才提到的, 还有一些其他的失败原因。)

4) He took the machine apart to see what was wrong. (他把机器拆开, 看看出了什么毛病。)

6. stimulate v. 刺激, 激励

stimulation n. 刺激, 激励

1) Praise stimulated the students to make greater efforts. (表扬激励学生作更大的努力。)

2) Exercise stimulates the flow of blood. (锻炼促进血液循环。)

3) TV, if properly used, can stimulate a child's imagination. (电视如果使用适当能激发孩子的想像力。)

4) The intention of lowering interest rates is to stimulate the economy and develop industries. (降低利率的打算是为了刺激经济, 发展工业。)

5) Young children needs stimulation. (年幼的孩子需要激励。)

7. regardless adj. 不留心的, 不注意的 adv. 不顾, 不惜

1) He crushed the bloom with regardless tread. (他毫不在意一脚践踏了鲜花。)

2) There may be difficulties but I shall carry on regardless. (可能会遇到种种困难, 但不管怎样, 我将继续干下去。)

3) I'm buying the book, regardless of the cost. (不管价钱如何, 我都打算买下那本书。)

请注意区别 regardless of 和 in spite of

1) The plane will take off, regardless of the weather. (不管天气好坏, 飞机都将起飞。)

2) The plane took off in spite of the bad weather. (尽管天气不好, 飞机还是起飞了。)

8. disagreeable adj. 让人不愉快的, 不合心意的; 难相处的

disagree v. 不同意; 不符; 不适宜

1) She is disagreeable towards me. (她对我不友好。)

2) This medicine has a very disagreeable smell. (这药有一股很难闻的气味。)

3) I disagree with you on that point. (在那一点上我跟你意见不同。)

4) The damp weather disagrees with me. (潮湿的天气使我不舒服。)

9. failure n. 失败; 变弱

fail v. 失败; 变弱; 使失望

1) His plans ended in failure. (他的计划以失败告终。)

2) The power failure caused heavy losses. (供电中断造成严重的损失。)

3) His carelessness resulted in his failure of the exam. (他的粗心致使他考试不及格。)

4) I failed in persuading him. (我没能说服他。)

5) His eyesight is failing. (他的视力在衰退。)

6) His courage failed him. (他失去了勇气。)

10. solution n. 解决办法

solve v. 解决

1) The loan was only a temporary solution to the country's financial difficulties. (借贷只能暂时解决这个国家的经济困难。)

2) After a day's careful thought, he came up with a good solution. (经过一天的仔细考虑, 他才想出一个好办法。)

3) We should work together on the solution of our national problems.
(我们应该一起解决我们国家的问题。)

4) I really don't know how to solve the problem. (我真不知道如何
解决这个问题。)

5) They found a new way of solving the problem. (他们找到了解决这
个问题的新办法。)

(请注意用 solution 这个名词时, 通常用 a solution to a problem 表示
“问题的解决办法。”。)

11. adapt v. 使适应, 使适合; 改写

1) We should adapt our thinking to the new conditions. (我们应该
使自己的思想适应新的情况。)

2) Some animals will modify their behavior to adapt to their
environment. (一些动物改变它们的习性以适应环境。)

3) Can you adapt your way of thinking to the new life-style? (你
能使你的思想适应新的生活方式吗?)

4) They adapt a novel for the screen. (他们把小说改编为电影。)

请注意 adapt 和 adopt 的区别, adopt 意为“采用; 收养”。

1) They are going to adopt new techniques in raising silkworms. (他
们准备采用新的养蚕技术。)

2) A little girl was adopted into the family. (一个小女孩被收养为
家庭一员。)

12. perfect adj. 完美的; 完全的 v. 使完美, 改善

1) He speaks perfect English. (他说一口地道的英语。)

2) The actor is perfect for the part. (由这位演员担任这一角色再理
想不过了。)

3) He is in perfect health. (他身体十分健康。)

4) He is a perfect stranger. (他是个完全陌生的人。)

5) They decided to send their son to England to perfect his English.
(他们决定把儿子送到英国去提高他的英语水平。)

13. acceptable adj. 可以接受的

accept v. 接受

1) This proposal is acceptable to all. (这个建议大家都能接受。)

2) Tom received an acceptable marks on the test. (汤姆在测验中的分数尚可。)

3) Don't accept everything you see on TV as true. (别以为在电视上看到的一切都是真实的。)

4) I didn't expect him to accept my suggestion. (我没指望他接受我的建议。)

5) The plan has won wide acceptance among the people. (这个计划受到了人们的普通欢迎。)

6) He nodded in delighted acceptance. (他愉快地点头表示赞同。)

14. evidence n. 发现; (调查或研究) 结果; 根据

evident adj. 明显的

1) Do you have any evidence for this statement? (你这样说有任何根据吗?)

2) There are evidences that somebody has been living here. (迹象表明有人一直住在这儿。)

3) It is evident that we do not understand each other. (显然, 我们彼此不了解。)

4) He spoke with evident disappointment. (他带着明显的失望说话。)

5) We can say with good evidence that their work is one of the best. (我们有充分的证据说明他们的工作是最好的。)

15. determine v. 决定; 确定

determined adj. 下决心的

determination n. 决心; 结论

1) He has determined on a course of action. (他已决定了行动计划。)

2) The police wanted to determine all the facts. (警察想查明全部事实。)

3) His father is determined to quit smoking. (他父亲决心戒烟。)

4) He made his determination after he read the test report. (他在看了化验报告后下了结论。)

5) Mr. Smith is a man of determination. (史密斯先生是个有决断力的人。)

16. growth n. 生长

grow v. 生长

1) The growth in tourism is really astonishing. (旅游业的发展实在令人惊异。)

2) The rapid growth of world population is creating more and more problems. (世界人口的迅速发展带来了越来越多的问题。)

3) His hair has grown too long. (他的头发长得太长了。)

4) Friendship grew between them. (他们之间产生了友情。)

5) You will grow used to it. (你会渐渐对此习惯的。)

本课主要构词法

Affixation 词缀法

1. 形容词后缀 -able

disagreeable acceptable

2. 副词后缀 -ly

scientifically previously entirely frequently

3. 名词后缀 -ion

imagination solution

4. 反义词前缀 un-

unknown unpleasant

Unit10 (第 29 讲—第 31 讲)

本课简介

在“Scientific Attitudes”这篇课文中，作者指出科学始于人类对周围环境的疑问。当人类具有去伪存真的能力时，科学也开始迅猛发展。好奇和想像是有助于推动科学 发现和发展重要素质。作者还认为具有科学头脑的人相信“因果”关系。任何现象的存在必有原因，只是有些尚未被发现。思想开放、无偏见；尊重别人的观点；凡事以事实为依据都是科学的态度。

人物背景

1. Benjamin Franklin: 富兰克林 (1706—1790 年)，美国政治家及科学家。美国 18 世纪名列华盛顿后的最著名的人物，参加起草独立宣言。在科学方面进行过有名的电实验，并对电做了理论说明。只受过极短的正规教育，全靠勤奋自学成才。法国经济学家杜尔哥颂扬他“从天空抓到雷电，从专制统治者手中夺回权力”。

2. Thomas Edison: 爱迪生 (1847—1931 年)，美国发明家。技术历史中显著的天才之一，拥有白炽灯、留声机、电影放映机等 1093 种发明专利，还创办了世界上第一个工业研究实验室。

3. Galileo: 伽利略 (1564—1642 年)，意大利物理学家及天文学家。对现代科学思想的发展作出过重大贡献。最早用望远镜观察天体，并曾用大量事实证明地球环绕太阳转，否定地心说。

4. Louis Pasteur: 巴斯德 (1822—1895 年) 法国化学家及微生物学家。证明发酵及传染病是微生物引起的，创始并首先应用疫苗接种以预防狂犬病、鸡霍乱等，挽救了法、英等国的养蚕业和啤酒业。

5. Edward Jenner: 金纳 (1749—1823 年)，英国医生，牛痘接种法创始人。历经周折使牛痘接种法得以公认，并传播到欧美大陆及全世界，使天花的病死率大为下降。

本课语言点

1. Science had its beginning when man started asking questions about his environment.

句中的 beginning 是一个名词，意思是“开始、开端、” 例如：

1) We had too much rain at the beginning of the month. (月初雨水过多。)

2) He has made a good beginning in the field of publishing. (他在出版领域做出了良好的开端。)

在动词 start 的后面，可以用动名词作宾语，也可以用不定式。一般来说，如果表示有意识地“开始做某事”，多用动名词，否则用不定式更多一些，如：

1) We started working on it in 1999. (我们是 1999 年开始这项工作的。)

2) Suddenly it started to rain. (突然下起雨来。)

2. He sought answers to these and other questions.

本句中的 sought 是动词 seek 的过去分词。seek answers to... “寻找...答案”，to 是介词，常与 answer 这类名词连用。例如：

1) The answer to your question is very simple. (你的问题答案很简单)

2) I haven't found the solution to the problem yet. (我还没找到解决这个问题的办法)

3) He couldn't find the key to the door. (他找不到开这个门的钥匙)

3. Not all his answer were correct, but at least he did want to know.

Not all his answer were correct 这是一个部分否定的句子。部分否定一般用下列三种形式表达：

A. 主语中有 all/both/every/each, etc + 否定谓语

B. 主语中有 not + all /both/every/each, etc + 肯定谓语

C. 否定谓语+ all /both/every/each, etc

1) All the students are not in the classroom. (学生们并不都在教室里。)

这句话相当于：Not all the students are in the classroom.

2) Every computer is not of high quality. (并非每一台计算机都是高质量的。)

这句话相当于：Not every computer is of high quality.

3) I didn't see both of them. (我只见到了他们两个中的一个。)

这句话相当于：I only saw one of the two men

... but at least he did want to know. 句子中的 did 是助动词，随人称和时态的变化而变化，用于强调，如

1) He does know the way to the library. (他的确知道去图书馆的路)

2) I do enjoy pop music. (我的确喜欢流行音乐)

3) They did give us a lot of help. (他们的确帮了我们不少忙)

4. The child wants to take apart a watch to see what makes it work.

句子中“to take apart a watch”是不定式做宾语，后面的“to see what makes it work”则是不定式做目的状语。请看下面的例句：

1) He offered to help me. (他提出要帮助我。)

2) I didn't expect to find you here. (没想到在这儿碰到你。)

3) We all want to learn more knowledge. (我们都想学更多的知识。)

4) To do it well, you have to make more efforts. (你得更努力，才能做好。)

5) To protect the child, he laid down his life. (为了保护那个孩子，他献出了自己的生命。)

6) They ran over to welcome the hero. (他们跑过去欢迎那位英雄。)

在上述 6 个句子中，前 3 句是不定式做宾语，而后 3 句则是不定式做目的状语。

take apart 的意思是“拆开”，如：

1) He took the toy apart but found nothing unusual. (他把玩具拆开但没发现任何异常。)

2) I'll have to take the bike apart to see what is wrong. (我得把自行车拆开看有什么毛病。)

5. He combined his curiosity with imagination and carried out his well-known experiment to show that lightening and electric spark are the same thing.

combine with 是一个常用词组，意思为“使结合；使联合”：例如：

1) Experience is fine when it is combined with the right personality. (经验与健全的人格相结合是很好的。)

well-known 是一个复合形容词，意思为“出名的，众所周知的”，例如：

A well-known film critic (有名的影评家)，a well-known voice (熟悉的声音)。除了做定语用以外，well-known (或写成 well known) 也可以做表语，如：

1) It is well known that excessive drinking and smoking can be harmful to one's health. (众所周知抽烟喝酒过多有害健康。)

2) It is well known that education of young people is vital to the future of a country. (众所周知年轻人的教育对一个国家的未来至关重要。)

6. Scientifically minded people believe in a “cause-and-effect” relationship

句子中的 minded 是一个形容词，在 minded 前面常用形容词或副词，组成一个复合形容词，如：a narrow-minded person (一个心胸狭窄的人)，the absent-minded young man (心不在焉的年轻人)，open-minded people (思想开放的人们)，liberally-minded parents (思想开明的父母)，a politically-minded old man (有政治头脑的老人)

cause-and-effect 是一个复合形容词，修饰后面的名词 relationship. 如此构成的复合形容词在英语中很常见，如：

1) a never-to-be-forgotten moment (永远难忘的时刻)

2) an epoch-making event (划时代的大事)

3) a seven-year-old boy (一个七岁男孩)

4) a wait-and-see attitude (等着瞧的态度)

7. ...there is a good reason why some leaves turn red and others yellow in the fall

句子中的 why 是一个关系副词，它所引导的是一个定语从句，请看例句：

1) He didn't give the reason why was absent yesterday (他没有提到昨天缺席的理由)

2) The reason why he missed the train was that he got up late (他没赶上火车的原因是他起床晚了)

3) This is the reason why he did it (这就是他做那件事的原因)

有时，我们也会看到在 reason 后面用 for 的情况，用 for 的时候，后面只能接名词，或动名词短语，不能接句子，如：

1) I don't know the reason for his absence. (我不知道他缺席的理由)

2) One of the reasons for coming to England was to make money. (到英国来的原因之一是挣钱)

3) There is no reason for his poor work. (他的工作干不好是没有理由的)

句子中的 fall 是一个名词，意思为“秋天”，例如：

1) I met her again in the fall semester. (我在秋学期又见到了她)

2) They moved to Washington in the fall of 1998. (一九九八年秋天他们搬到了华盛顿)

8. In cases where the explanation is unknown the scientific point of view is that there is a reason if it can only be discovered

句子中的 where 是关系副词，引导定语从句，修饰名词 cases，因此，in cases where the explanation is unknown 可以译为“在对一些的解释还不为人们所知的情况下。”用关系副词 where 引导定语从句也是很常见的，如：

1) Let's think of a situation where this idiom can be used (我们来想一个可以使用这个习语的场合)

2) Is there a library around where we can borrow books? (附近有什么图书馆可以借书吗?)

句子中 that 引导的是一个表语从句。表语从句和主句中的连系动词连用，结构为：主语+连系动词+表语从句，例如：

1) My idea is that we should do it as soon as possible (我的建议是我们应该尽早做这件事)

2) It looks that it is going to rain (看起来天要下雨)

句子中的 if... only 在此表示尚欠缺的唯一条件，if it can only be discovered 可以译为“只是尚未被发现罢了”。

9. This means the ability to face the facts as they are regardless of what one has previously thought. 句子中的 as 是一个连词，表示方式，意思是“按照；如同；例如”

1) We must state the facts as they are. (我们必须如实地陈述事实)

2) Give me the bike as it is, I'll get it repaired (把自行车照实给我，我去修理)

Regardless of 是一个常用词组，意思是“不顾”，例如：

1) Our manager often acts regardless of consequences (我们经理做事常常不顾后果)

2) He set out regardless of the heavy snow (他不顾天降大雪出发了)

10. The worker in science must face facts whether they are pleasant or unpleasant.

whether...or 引导的是一个让步状语从句，意思是“无论，不管，” 例如：

1) Whether you believe it or not it's truth (无论你信不信，那总是事实)

2) He will be here on time whether he drives or takes the train (不管他开汽车来还是乘火车来，他总会准时到达)

11. Scientists must be able to change their thinking and to adapt their theories to new facts as they are discovered.

adapt 意为“使适应，使配合”，常指改变以适应新的情况，后面常接介词 to， 例如：

1) Some animals will modify their behavior to adapt to their environment (有些动物会改变习性来适应环境)

2) We have to adapt our thinking to the new conditions (我们得使自己的思想适应新的情况)

请注意区别动词 adapt 和 adopt，在词汇部分，我们已作了讲解。

12. A scientific truth offers an explanation that is acceptable only in the light of what is known at a particular time

in the light of 是一个常用词组，意思是“根据，按照；考虑到”，例如：

1) To find truth in the light of science is the only correct way
(凭借科学探求真理是唯一正确的方法)

2) We must apply Marxism in the light of China's specific conditions
(我们必须按照中国的具体情况应用马克思主义)

This should be discussed more fully in the light of the developments
in the University (考虑到学校的发展, 这个问题应该讨论得更充分一些。)

本课主要词组

1. seek answers to
2. lay aside
3. be curious about
4. take apart
5. combine with
6. carry out
7. believe in
8. regardless of
9. whether...or
10. be willing to
11. succeed in
12. in advance
13. adapt to
14. make up one's mind
15. once and for all
16. in the light of
17. respect for
18. come up

19. laugh at
20. change one's mind
21. experiment on

Text B solving problems scientifically

有用的词和词组 Useful words and expressions:

1. arouse one's curiosity

Once his curiosity is aroused, he will try every means to make everything clear.

2. first of all

First of all I want to thank you with all my sincerity.

3. arise

New problems will arise when old ones are solved.

4. result from

His failure resulted from his lack of experience.

5. bring about

The new policy has brought about a lot of changes in the rural areas.

6. in need of

I think we will be in need of your help soon.

7. build up

How can I build up my confidence when I meet failures time and again?

8. modify

Some animals will modify their behavior to adapt to new environment.

9. check with

I am not sure if these answers check with the key in the teacher's book.

10. turn out to be

His experiment turned out to be a great success.

Unit11 (第32讲—第34讲)

Text A The Great American Garage Sale

本课主要单词

1. garage n. 车库, 汽车修理厂

1) Jim jumped out the car and opened the garage doors. (杰姆跃出车外, 把车库门打开。)

2) It is already 6:30. I think the garage must be closed. (已经六点半了, 我想汽车修理厂准已关门了。)

3) Mr. Henderson worked as a garage mechanic before he retired. (退休前亨德森先生做汽车修理工。)

4) They decided to have a garage sale to get rid of some unwanted stuff. (他们打算进行一次现场旧货出售, 把一些不需要的物品清除掉。)

2. unwanted adj. 没人要的; 不需要的, 多余的

1) The little girl felt unwanted when both her parents left her. (父母丢下了她, 小姑娘觉得自己是多余的。)

2) Herbicides can be used to keep down unwanted plants. (除莠剂可以被用来控制多余的植物的生长。)

3) The unwanted objects are set out on the front yard of their home. (那些不需要的物品就展示在他们家的前院里。)

在英语中, 用前缀 un——加动词的过去分词构成的形容词很多, 如: unexpected (想不到的), uneducated (没受教育的), undisturbed (没受到干挠的), unhurried (不慌不忙的) 等等。

3. rid v. 使摆脱, 使去掉

1) We must rid ourselves of the illusions and be more practical. (我们必须去掉幻想, 更加务实。)

2) Who do you think can rid the country of this wickedness? (你觉得谁能使这个国家摆脱邪恶?)

3) You should try to get rid of the uneasy feeling. (你应该尽量使自己摆脱这种不安的感觉。)

4) Jack got rid of the old van and bought himself a new Buick. (杰克卖了那辆旧货车, 给自己买了辆新别克。)

5) He just didn't know how to get rid of that annoying boy. (他就是不知道怎么摆脱那个恼人的男孩。)

4. homemade adj. 家里做的; 自制的; 本国制造的

1) The cake is really tasty. I didn't expect it is homemade. (这蛋糕味道真好, 我没想到这是家里做的。)

2) The woman told the boy that candy was homemade. (那位夫人对男孩说糖果是自制的。)

在英语中, 像 homemade 这类词很常见, 如: handmade, machine-made, man-made, China-made 等等。

5. neighborhood n. 四邻, 邻近地区, 附近

1) He told the police that he lived in a wealthy neighborhood. (他对警察说他住在富人区。)

2) They didn't know they lived in the same neighborhood. (他们不知道他们俩在同一地段。)

3) The noise from the construction site disturbed the entire neighborhood. (工地的噪声骚扰了整个地区的居民。)

4) She sent the child to the neighborhood nursery, as she had to go to work. (她把孩子送进了附近的托儿所, 因为她得去上班。)

5) He lives in the neighborhood of a shopping center. (他住在一个商店区附近。)

6. advertisement n. 广告; 启事; 公告

1) Today's newspaper has an advertisement for air-hostesses. (今天的报纸载有一则招聘空姐的广告。)

2) They decided to place an advertisement on TV for the child as lost.
(他们决定在电视上登走失儿童的广告。)

在使用中，我们常用 ad. 作为 advertisement 的简写。

advertising 也可用作名词，意思是“广告业，登文选”，或“广告(总称)”

1) He runs a firm that does big advertising. (他经营着一家做大规模广告生意的公司。)

2) The newspaper carries much advertising. (这报纸上登有大量广告。)

3) The supermarket attracted many customers by advertising. (这家超市用广告吸引了众多顾客。)

advertise 做动词用，意思是“(为)…做广告；宣传”

He saw a teaching post advertised by the local newspaper. (他在当地报纸上看到一则招聘教师的广告。)

7. ever-increasing adj. 不断增长的

1) They are trying hard to meet the ever-increasing demands of the neighborhood. (他们正在努力满足这地区的人们不断增长的需要。)

2) The ever-increasing number of students put a great strain on them.
(不断增长的学生人数给他们带来了很大的压力。)

英语中这一类的形容词也不少见，如：ever blooming (四季开花的)，ever lasting (永久的)

8. stuff n. 原料；东西 v. 塞满

1) He has got all the stuff ready for building his new house. (他已备齐新房所需的全部材料。)

2) She is always eating sweet stuff. (她总是吃甜食。)

3) He is unwilling to read the stuff he has written to the whole class.
(他不愿意把自己写的东西读给全班听。)

4) The old man stuffed his pipe with tobacco. (老人把烟斗装满烟丝。)

5) The boy stuffed the bills carelessly into his pocket. (那男孩随便地把钞票往口袋里一塞。)

6) The book is stuffed with interesting stories. (这本书里全是有
趣的故事。)

请注意区别 stuff 与 staff, staff 通常用做名词, 意思是“全体职员”

1) The school has got a staff of 800. (这所学校有 800 名教员。)

2) They have large stuffs of language experts (他们有大批语言专
家。)

9. cast off adj. 抛弃的; 穿旧的 n. 被抛弃的人(或物)

1) He was reluctant to dress in his older brother's castoffs. (他
不愿意穿哥哥丢下的旧衣服。)

2) He felt himself a social castoff (他觉得自己是一个被社会抛弃
的人。)

cast off 是一个词组动词, 意思是“把…放开”, “丢弃; 与…断绝关系”。

1) He cast off the hunting dog to chase the wounded hare. (他放开
猎狗去追受伤的野兔。)

2) Cast off all restraints and do with you like. (抛掉一切限制去做
你喜欢的事。)

10. extra adj. 额外的 adv. 非常

1) She could get some extra sleep at weekends. (周末时她可以多睡
一会儿。)

2) Mother needs extra help in the kitchen. (妈妈需要额外的人手帮
厨。)

3) He was extra nice to them. (他们对他们特别好。)

4) Mr. Jones arrived extra late. (琼斯先生到得格外迟。)

11. original adj. 起初的; 独创的 n. 原作

1) Philadelphia was the original capital of the united states. (费
城是美国的旧都。)

2) What is the original meaning of this word? (这个词的原义是什么?)

3) The original plans were changed (原先的计划改了。)

4) he has some original ideas in his book. (他的书里有创新思想。)

5) The teacher asked us to read some novels in their original versions.
(老师让我们读一些原版小说。)

12. remnant n. 残余, 剩余

1) They dumped the remnants of the feast into the garbage can. (他们把残羹剩菜倒进了垃圾桶。)

2) The remnant of the defeated army withdrew to a valley. (战败部队的残兵撤进了山谷。)

3) The remnant is large enough for an apron. (这块零头布足够做个围裙了。)

13. bargain n. 交易; 特价商品 v. 讨价还价

1) I was sure it would be a losing bargain at the beginning. (我开始就认定这是一笔赔本买卖。)

2) She showed me how to shop bargains. (她让我看看该怎样觅购特价商品。)

3) I'm considering the possibility of bargaining with our opponent.
(我在考虑和对手谈判的可能性。)

4) She refused to bargain over the price. (她不愿讨价还价。)

14. fabulous adj. 神话式的, 惊人的

1) He is a fabulous figure in history. (他是历史上的传奇式人物。)

2) Mr. Wang really didn't know what to do with fabulous fortune at the moment. (王先生一时不知如何处置这笔巨额财富。)

3) We had a fabulous time at the party. (我们在晚会上玩得很痛快。)

15. mercy n. 慈悲, 宽容

1) Have some mercy on the poor child (对可怜的孩子发发慈悲吧。)

2) He showed no mercy on (to) his opponents. (他对对手毫不手软。)

3) The jury found him guilty and did not recommend mercy. (陪审团认为他有罪, 所以未提请法庭宽大处理。)

4) What a mercy that you could survive the air crash. (你能在空难中幸存是多么幸运啊!)

at the mercy of 任凭…的摆布

for mercy's sake 看在上帝的份上

leave... to the mercies of 听由…任意摆布

16. reluctant adj. 不情愿的

1) He was reluctant to give them any help. (他不愿意给他们任何帮助。)

2) She gave us a reluctant promise (他勉强地给了我们允诺。)

17. bound adj. 一定的; 受约束的; 开往…

1) We are bound to succeed. (我们一定会成功。)

2) He is bound to refuse. (他一定会拒绝)

3) She has no time to go shopping as she is bound to her job. (她被工作束缚住了, 没时间去购物。)

4) Where are you bound for? (你上哪儿去了?)

5) He is bound for home from Shanghai (他在从上海回家的途中。)

本课简介

“The Great American Garage Sale”这篇课文通过对一户普通的美国家庭把家里不再需要的物品整理出来进行现场旧货出售一事的描述,告诉读者现场旧货出售在美国深受普通百姓的喜爱,买卖双方都乐在其中。究其原因不外乎如下几点:

1) 充抵不断上扬的生活费用;

2) 享受结识新朋友的快乐;

3) 希冀有意外收获的美梦成真。Garage sale 既降福予者也降福取者,只是有一天买东西的人会成为卖东西的人,因为他也遇到了同一个问题-如何打发掉家里多余的物品。

本课主要语言点

1. Not long ago, Charles Erickson and his family decided to do some Spring housecleaning.

动词 do 常与一些名词连用。表示从事某种普通的活动或工作, 比如: do you teeth (brush your teeth) ,

do the flowers (arrange the flowers) , do the dishes (wash the dishes) 。再看一些例句:

1) When mother was away, I did the cooking and Tom did the cleaning. (妈妈不在家时, 我做饭, 汤姆搞卫生。)

2) Who does the washing up after each meal? (每顿饭后谁洗餐具?)

3) I will go to supermarket to do some shopping this afternoon. (今天下午, 我要去超市买点东西。)

2. Sorting through their possessions, they came up with some 1, 500 old, unwanted items—all sorts of things they wanted to get rid of.

sort 通常做名词用, 意思是“种类、类别”, 如:

1) What sort of iron did she buy this morning? (她今天上午买的哪一种熨斗?)

2) I don't think he will be interested in this sort of book. (我想他不会对这一类书感兴趣。)

3) He would find all sorts of excuses for his failure. (他会为自己的失败找寻各种借口。)

在本句中 sort 用作动词, 意思是“整理; 分类”。Sort 常用于短语 sort out, 但 out 也常可省略。

1) He was alone in the post office sorting letters. (他独自一个在邮局里分拣信件。)

2) Old John was sorting through a pile of old shoes. (老约翰正在整理一堆旧鞋。)

3) The teacher asked Mary to sort out the bigger balls. (老师让玛丽把大一点的球拣回来。)

4) I need to sort out my own problems first. (我需要先把我自己的问题解决。)

Unit11 (第32讲—第34讲)

come up with 这个短语我们在前面碰到过，意思是“提供，提出，想出”，在本句中该短语意为“产生，制造出”。

1) We always count on Xian Li to come up with help of one kind or another. (我们总是可以指望小李提供这样或那样的帮助。)

2) He came up with a good idea after 2 hours' of thinking. (经过两个小时的思考，他想出了一个好主意。)

3) The company has come up with a new time-saving device. (这家公司已制造出一种新的省时装置。)

get rid of 这个短语已在词汇部分做了讲解，请再看两个例句：

1) It is not easy to get rid of a bad habit (去掉不良习惯不是一件容易的事)

2) I want to get rid of this old bike and buy a new one. (我想卖掉这辆旧自行车，买辆新的。)

3. The Ericssons needn't have worried

表示姓名的专有名词变成复数，前面加定冠词 the，指此姓的一家人，或夫妇俩，如：

1) The Blacks were in France when the earthquake happened in their hometown (家乡发生地震时，布莱克一家正在法国。)

2) The wangs were holding a birthday party when the police paid them a visit. (警察来访时，王先生夫妇在举行生日聚会。)

“needn't + have + 过去分词”表示在某时之前本无必要做某事，如：

1) We needn't have worried so much about him. He is old enough to take care of himself. (我们本无必要为他如此担心，他是大人了，该会照顾自己了。)

2) You needn't have told him everything about it. It has nothing to do with him. (你本无必要把一切都告诉他，这件事跟他无关。)

3) I needn't have worked so hard if you could give me a little help. (如果你给我一点帮助，我本不用如此辛苦的。)

4. Eager buyers bought all but 50 of the items in one weekend leaving the family \$442 richer.

all but 是一个常用短语，意思是“几乎，差不多；除了……都”，如：

1) Give me one more minute. I have all but finished. (再给我一分钟，我差不多要做完了。)

2) He found all but one exit blocked. (除了一个出口外，其余的出口都被封了。)

3) All the boys but him went camping last weekend. (上周末除了他之外，所有的男孩都出去野营了。)

leave 在本句中的意思是“使……处于某种状态”，如：

1) Leave the door open. (让门开着吧。)

2) The seven-day strike left the company in great confusion. (为期七天的罢工使公司极其混乱。)

3) The result has left everybody dissatisfied. (结果使每一个人都不满意。)

4) The new policy would leave taxpayers worse off. (新政策使纳税人处境更糟。)

5. Rising living costs are considered by almost everyone as a reason both for holding sales and for attending them

本句中的 rising 可以看作为形容词，做定词，修饰其后的名词短语，

如：rising prices (上涨的物价)，the rising rate of inflation (上升的通货膨胀率)，

rising sun (升起的太阳朝阳)

consider 是一个常用动词，请看下面的例句，注意 consider 的用法：

1) They consider themselves to be very lucky. (他们认为自己很幸运。Consider to be)

2) They don't consider it as important. (他们认为这个不重要。consider as, 用被动语态则是 be considered as)

3) He is considering moving to a smaller city. (他正在考虑搬到小一点的城市去。Consider doing sth.)

4) I consider that one computer is not enough. (我估计一台电脑不够用。Consider+a clause)

在前一单元我们讲到过, reason 后面可以跟 for, 也可以跟 why, 只是在 for 后面必须用名词或名词短语, 在 why 后面必须用句子。请再看两个例句:

1) Nobody knows the reason why he is so upset. (谁也不知道他为什么如此沮丧。)

2) The reason for his going to France was unknown. (无人知晓他去法国的原因。)

6. But beyond that, they are fun.

beyond 是一个常用词, 在本句中做介词用, 意思是“除...以外”, 相当于 besides, 多用于否定句和疑问句中, 如:

1) I know nothing of it beyond what you told me. (除了你告诉我的以外, 别的我都不知道。)

2) Beyond that, there is nothing more I can say. (除了那个, 我再也没什么可说的了。)

3) He owns nothing beyond the shabby house. (除了那个破旧的房子, 他一无所有。)

beyond 做介词用时, 还有“在...的那边; 迟于; 超出”等意思, 如:

1) What lies beyond the mountain? (山那边有什么?)

2) Don't stay there beyond midnight. (别在那儿待到半夜后)

3) What he said is beyond my understanding. (他说的话我不懂)

4) How he managed to find us is beyond me. (我不清楚他是如何设法找到我们的。)

7. One psychologist suggests that people are fed up with the computerization of their lives.

在动词 suggest (建议, 提议) 后面可以用 doing sth. 和 that 从句, 在 that 从句中用虚拟语气, 请看例句:

1) I suggest bringing the meeting to an end (我建议结束会议。)

2) He suggested that the work (should) be started at once. (他建议立即动工。)

3) Her parents suggested that she (should) have a medical examination. (她父母建议她做一次体检。)

当 suggest 的意思为“认为；暗示；启发；表明”时，that 从句中不用虚拟语气，如：

1) Jane's pale face suggested that she was ill (珍妮苍白有脸色表明她病了。)

2) He suggested that accident was my fault. (他认为那起事故是我的过错。)

be fed up with 意思是“厌倦，”相当于 be tired of 或 be weary of, 如：

1) I'm fed up with his complaints (对他的抱怨我厌倦之极。)

2) Many students are fed up with some of the dull courses (许多学生对一些乏味的课程甚为厌倦。)

8. Many of the younger buyers say they are turned off by the poor quality of modern goods and are looking for remnants of a stringer and firmer era, when things were built to last.

turn off 是个常用短语，通常表示“关掉；解雇；避开，”在本句中的意思是“失去兴趣”，请看例句：

1) Be sure to turn off the lights before you leave. (请你离开前务必把灯关掉。)

2) She was turn off by the boss as she couldn't type fast enough. (她因打字不够快而被老板解雇。)

3) He turned off the question with a shrug of the shoulder. (他耸耸肩回避开了这个问题。)

4) This music really turns me off. (这种音乐真叫我倒胃。)

5) A number of students are turned off by this subject. (这门课使许多学生厌烦。)

句中的 when 是一个关系副词，引导非限定定语从句，也可把 when 看作是并列连词，意思相当于 at the time，如：

1) The meeting will be put off till next week, when all the participants will arrive from different parts of the country. (会议被推迟到下周，届时所有的与会者将从全国各地赶来。)

2) I'll join you next month, when I will have made all the preparations. (我下个月加入你们当中，那时我将做好一切准备。)

9. ……it blesseth him that gives and him that takes

blesseth 为古英语动词现在时第三人称单数，相当于现在的 blesses. 句中的 that 引导的是定语从句，如：

1) God help those that help themselves. (自助者天助。)

2) Give it to whoever that is in need of help. (把这个给任何一个需要帮助的人。)

本课主要词组

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. sort through | 2. come up with | 3. all sorts of |
| 4. get rid of | 5. set out | 6. all but |
| 7. put up | 8. be considered as | 9. be fed up with |
| 10. search for | 11. turn off | 12. run across |
| 13. in the back of one's mind | 14. (be) of great value | |
| 15. separate...from | 16. be bound to | 17. be faced with |

短语表达

1. urge sb. to do sth. /be urged to do sth.

They urged the management to give them a definite answer.

2. without adv.

Never mind, we can manage without.

3. instead of

He stayed at home reading instead of going to see a film.

4. range from ...to

The boys range in age from 7 to 13.

5. specialize in

He specialized in biology.

6. at low prices

This small shop offers goods at low prices.

7. be likely to

He is likely to come late.

8. refer to

He used to be referred to as “the Iron Man”。

9. be known for

China is known for its silk and tea.

10. keep the flavor

The vegetable cannot keep its flavor if overcooked.

Unit12 (第35讲—第37讲)

Text A How Dictionaries Are Made

本课主要单词

1. mainly adv. 主要地; 大部分地

1) I don't know what his interests are, because we talk mainly about work when we meet.

(我不知道他的兴趣是什么, 因为我们见面时主要谈工作。)

2) The visitors were mainly students from Mainland China. (来访者多半是来自中国大陆的学生。)

3) He quit the job mainly because of health problem. (他辞了那份工用是由于健康原因。)

2. grammarian n. 语法学家

-ian 或 -an 是一个名词后缀，表示“…地方的人”，“精通…的人”，“信奉…的人”，如：American (美国人)，Italian (意大利人)，Musician (音乐家)，Historian (历史学家)，Confucian (儒家)，Christian (基督徒)

grammarian 这个单词是由 grammar 加后缀 -ian 构成的。

3. supreme adj. 最高的；极度的，最主要的

1) He enjoys supreme power in this country (他在这个国家享有至高无上的权力。)

2) They are fulfilling a task of supreme importance. (他们正在完成一项极其重要的任务。)

3) No one expected that he would change his idea at the supreme moment. (谁也没料到他会在决定性的时刻改变主意。)

Supreme court (美国联邦(州)最高法院。)

The supreme commander (最高统帅)

Supreme Soviet (前苏联最高苏维埃)

4. authority n. 官方，当局；权利，权威

1) The government is the highest authority in the country (政府是国家的最高权利机构)

2) Have you talked it over with the authorities concerned? (你已经跟有关当局讨论过这个问题了吗?)

3) What authority do you have for entering this house? (你有什么权利进这个屋子?)

4) Who is the authority on this subject? (谁是这门学科权威?)

5) Chinese parents have more authority over their children (中国的父母对孩子更有权威。)

5. usage n. 惯用法；使用；用法

1) It's difficult to master the usage of these grammatical forms.
(要掌握这些语法形式的用法很困难。)

2) That phrase has gone out of usage. (那短语已不再为大家所惯用。)

Usage 常表示语言等的“用法”，“使用”，“惯用法”，我们不能说 incorrect usage，而应该说 incorrect use.

6. dispute v. 争吵；对…提出质疑 n. 争论，争端

1) They are disputing with each other on/about the ownership of the territory.

(他们正在就领土所有权问题进行争论。)(dispute 做不及物动词用)

2) They disputed how to get the best results. (他们争论如何才能取得最好的效果。)(dispute 作及物动词用)

3) Your honesty has never been disputed. (没有人怀疑过你的诚实。)(dispute 作及物动词用)

4) There has been much dispute, and the question is certainly not yet settled (争论很多，所以这个问题当然还没解决。)(dispute 作不可数名词用)

5) They lived together happily without disputes. (他们快乐地生活在一起，没有任何争吵。)(dispute 作可数名词用)

6) Her ability to do the job is not in dispute. (对她的工作能力人们没有疑问。)

7. self-assurance n. 自信

1) His self-assurance was based upon his faith in his own ability (他的自信基于他坚信自己的能力。)

2) His self-assurance enabled him to pull through difficulties. (他的自信使他能够渡过困难。)

assure v. 使确信；使放心；向…保证；保障

1) Please assure my parents that I am safe and sound. (请让我父母放心我安全而健康。)

2) I can assure you of the reliability of the information. (我可以向你保证这消息是可靠的。)

3) This film had assured him a place in movie history. (这部影片保证了他在电影史上的地位。)

assurance n. 把握; 信念; 自信; 保证

1) I have full assurance of the feasibility of the plan. (我充分相信这个计划的可行性。)

2) "He will be here soon", said Mary with assurance. ("他很快就会到这儿", 玛丽很有把握地说。)

3) He gave us the assurance that he wouldn't let out the secret. (他向我们保证他不会泄露秘密。)

8. regard v. 看待, 考虑; 把...看作为; 尊重 n. 关心, 重视; 尊重; (复数) 问候

1) I regard it as difficult. (我认为这事是困难的。)

2) They are regarded as the best table-tennis players. (他们被看作为最好的乒乓球运动员。)

3) He was regarded highly by his students. (他很受学生们的尊敬。)

4) You have to pay regard to public opinions. (你得重视舆论。)

5) My regard for him grew day by day. (我对他的尊敬与日俱增。)

6) Give my regards to your parents. (请代我问候你的父母。)

9. peculiar adj. 特殊的; 独特的, 奇怪的

1) She expressed her gratitude to him in her own peculiar way. (她用自己独特的方式对他表达谢意。)

2) He says this change is not peculiar to this small village. (他说这个变化不是这个小村子所独有的。)

3) The young girl was wearing a very peculiar pair of glasses. (那个年轻姑娘戴着一副很古怪的眼镜。)

4) She gave him a peculiar look. (她朝他古怪地看了一眼。)

10. occurrence n. 发生, 出现, 事件

1) Researchers are trying hard to find ways to reduce the occurrence of cancer.

(研究人员正努力寻求减少癌症发病率的方法。)

2) The occurrence took place in 1978. (这一事件发生于1978年。)

occur v. 发生; 出现; 被想到

1) Don't let the tragedy occur again. (不要让这样的悲剧再次发生。)

2) These animals occur in Africa only. (这些动物只在非洲才有。)

3) It occurred to me that I didn't ask for his telephone number.
(我想起没有要他的电话号码。)

4) A good idea occurred to him (他想到了一个好主意。)

11. occupy v. 占用, 占领, 使忙碌

1) The village was occupied by the enemy. (村子被敌人占领了。)

2) I didn't expect this work would occupy so much of my time. (我没料到这一工作会占用我这么多时间。)

3) His speech occupied 5 minutes. (他的讲话占了五分钟。)

4) He is occupied (in) repairing the bike. (他正忙着修理自行车。)

5) The fridge occupies a big space in the kitchen. (这台冰箱占了厨房很大的空间。)

12. stack n. 整齐的一叠 v. 把...叠成堆

1) He saw a stack of paper boxes in the room. (他看到房间里有一堆迭着的纸盒。)

2) There are a stack of journals on the table. (桌子上有一叠杂志。)

3) I have stacks of work to do. (我有一大堆工作要做。)

4) It's dangerous to stack the firewood here. (把木柴堆在这儿很危险。)

5) The shelf was stacked with empty bottles. (架子上堆放着空瓶子。)

6) Father stacked up the plates and put them in the sink. (父亲把盘子叠放好, 然后放入水池。)

13. illustrate v. 说明, 阐明; (用图或例子) 说明

1) Nothing illustrates his selfishness more clearly than his behavior to his wife. (没有什么比他对妻子的行为更能清楚地说明他的自私。)

2) He told us a story to illustrate the fact that bad habits die hard. (他通过给我们讲故事来阐明积习难改的事实。)

3) Children's books are often beautifully illustrated. (儿童书籍常常有美丽的插图。)

4) He gave us an example to illustrate his point. (他给了我们一个例子说明自己的观点。)

14. historical adj. 历史的, 历史上的;

1) They played an important part in the historical process. (在历史的进程中他们起过重要的作用。)

2) The historical event changed him completely. (这一历史事件完全改变了他。)

请注意区别 historical 和 historic 这两个形容词。

historical 指历史上存在或发生过的 (actually existed, or happened in history)。

historic 指历史上有名的, 有历史意义的 (important in history)。

a historical event (历史事件) - 真实存在于历史上;

a historic event (历史性事件) - 具有历史意义的;

15. discard v. 丢弃, 抛弃;

1) I don't think it is necessary for them to discard the present assembly line entirely. (我认为他们没有必要完全丢弃现有的流水线。)

2) They ate food discarded by the restaurant (他们吃饭店丢弃的食物。)

3) How could he discard his old friends? (他怎么能抛弃老朋友呢?)

16. reveal v. 揭露, 泄露; 展现, 显示;

1) He didn't reveal what he had felt about her. (他没有透露对她的感觉。)

2) David revealed a talent for fixing things. (大卫展现出修理东西的才能。)

3) He didn't want to reveal his identity at the time. (那时他不想暴露自己的身份。)

17. influence n. 影响, v. 影响

1) The old man had a great influence on the family. (那位老人对家庭的影响很大。)

2) His teachings exerted a strong influence on the young people. (他的教导给年轻人施以深刻的影响。)

3) The government would use its influence to try to make the talk successful. (政府将以其影响努力使会谈成功。)

4) I didn't want him to influence me in my choice. (我不想让他影响我的选择。)

5) Do you think British art is influenced by American painting. (你认为英国的艺术受美国绘画的影响吗?)

请注意区别 influence 和 affect 这两个词。

influence 常指间接地、以一种无形的力量去潜移默化地影响人的行为、性格或观点等。

affect 表示对...产生(不良)影响, 如:

1) The economic crisis has seriously affected the export of that country. (经济危机严重影响那个国家的出口。)

2) Too much smoking may affect your lungs. (吸烟过多会影响你的肺。)

18. scatter v. 撒; 驱散; 消散;

1) Clouds were scattered by the wind. (风起云散。)

2) The books scattered on the desk. (书桌上撒满了书。)

3) The noise scattered the dogs and chickens (响声使得鸡、狗四散。)

4) The Police scattered the demonstrators with tears gas. (警察用催泪弹驱散示威者。)

5) Don't scatter your strength. (不要分散精力。)

19. invention n. 发明, 创造; 虚构;

1) Telephone is the invention of Alexander Bell. (电话是亚历山大·贝尔发明的。)

2) The whole thing was an invention of a New York newspaper. (整件事都是一家纽约报纸虚构的。)

invent v. 发明、创造、虚构;

1) When the teacher asked the pupil why he had not come to class, he invented an excuse.

(老师问 那个学生为什么没来上课, 他编造了一个借口。)

2) Edison invented the electric bulb. (爱迪生发明了灯泡。)

本课简介

人们普遍认为在每一个词都有其正确的词意。词典和语法书是我们寻求词意和用法的至上权威, 但是我们甚少去询问词典和语法的编著者以何为据。在本篇课文中, 作者详细介绍了词典编写的过程, 并且强调编写词典不是对词的意思, 建立权威的解释, 而是竭尽所能记录下 每一个词对其过去的作者而言是何意思。世界在变化, 语言也在变化, 我们不得不赋予旧词以新的解释、新的用法, 因此词典需要增补新的内容。

本课主要语言点

1. ...dictionaries and grammars are the supreme authority in matters of meaning and usage.

本句中 in matters of 也可用 in the matter of, 意思是“在……方面”, “就……而论”, 如:

1) It was impossible for them to reach an agreement because they had too many divergences in matters of detail. (他们不可能达成协议, 因为在细节问题上, 他们有太多的分歧。)

2) He is considered an expert in the matter of intellectual property.
(他被看作是知识产权方面的专家。)

3) He would suffer heavy losses in matters of money if he continued to believe those dishonest people. (如果他继续相信那些不诚实的人, 他会遭受巨大的经济损失。)

Unit12 (第35讲—第37讲)

2. Few people ask by what authority the writers of dictionaries and grammars say what they say.

句子中的 few 表示否定, 意思是“很少的, 几乎没有的”, 如果用 a few 则表示肯定, 意思是“有些, 几个”。如:

1) Very few people survived the explosion. (在爆炸中幸存的人很少。)

2) Many of us tried but very few succeeded. (我们许多人都试了, 但成功者甚少。)

3) He will try it a few more times. (他会再试几次。)

4) A few of my friends speak English. (我的朋友中有几个人能讲英语。)

by 在本句中的意思相当于 according to (根据)。如:

1) Never judge a person by his appearance. (千万别以貌取人。)

2) He would be classified as rich by Chinese standards. (依照中国的标准, 他会被归于富有一类。)

authority 这个词在词汇部分已做过讲解, 我们在此再巩固一下。Authorities 常指“当局, 官方”, 用作不可数名词时, 常指“权力, 管辖权”, 用作可数名词时, 常指“专家, 权威”。如:

1) The labor union continued to seek dialogue with the authorities.
(工会继续寻求与当局对话的机会。)

2) Police have the authority to arrest law-breakers. (警察有权逮捕犯法的人。)

3) He had made efforts to exercise his authority over those young people (他已努力对那些年轻人行使管辖权。)

4) A good dictionary is an authority on the meanings of words. (一本好的词典是词义方面的权威。)

5) He is now an authority on American literature. (现在他成了美国文学方面的专家。)

本句中 what 是一个关系代词，引导宾语从句，如：

1) We always mean what we say. (我们向来说话算数。)

2) Let him do what he wants to do. (让他去做他想做的事。)

3) I don't know what they know. (他们知道的事我并不知道。)

3. I once got into a dispute with an English woman over the pronunciation of a word and offered to look it up in the dictionary.

once 在本句中的意思是“一次，曾经”。在某些语言环境中，once 也可以表示：一旦……（就……）。请看下面的例句，注意，once 的不同意思：

1) He once lived in Shanghai. (他曾经在上海住过。)

2) Even if you only do it once, you will forever remember it. (即使你只做一次，你会永远记得。)

3) It once belonged to my father. (这个曾经属于我父亲。)

4) Once the sun had set, the air turned cold. (太阳一落，空气就变冷了。)

5) Once you show any fear, he will attack you. (你一直露出恐惧，他就会攻击你。)

6) Once published, the book will be very popular. (这本书一旦出版就会大受欢迎。)

get into a dispute with sb. over sth. 与某人就某问题进行争论，over 也可用 about 替换。如：

1) They had a dispute about where to go. (他们为了去哪里而争论。)

2) The workers and the management got into a dispute over pay. (工人和厂方由于工资问题产生争端。)

3) It was a dispute over economic policy. (这是一场关于经济政策的争论。)

4. ...anyone who is willing to quarrel with the dictionary is regarded as either eccentric or mad.

who 引导的是一个定语从句，修饰 anyone.

be willing to 意思是：愿意做……，如：

1) He is willing to help us. (他愿意帮助我们。)

2) No one is willing to pay so much money for this old bike. (谁也不愿意付这么多钱买这辆旧自行车。)

quarrel with sb. 意思是“与某人争吵”。如：

1) He quarreled with his brother yesterday. (他昨天跟他兄弟吵架了。)

2) I don't want to quarrel with you about it. (我不想为此事跟你争吵。)

regard as 意思是“把……看作为”，在其后可以跟名词（或名词短语，动名词短语）；形容词等。如：

1) He regarded the book as one of his masterpieces. (他把这本书看作是他的杰作之一。)

2) He was regarded as an important figure in history. (他被看作为历史上的重要人物。)

3) Nobody would regard this as important. (没人会认为这件事很重要。)

4) Many people regard parents as being responsible for the control of their children. (许多人认为父母应负责管教子女。)

either...or... 意思是为“不是……就是……”，“要么……要么……”。如：

1) He is either drunk or mad. (他不是醉了就是疯了。)

2) Tell them that they can either stay or leave immediately. (告诉他们，他们要么留下，要么现在就离开。)

3) Either my brother or I am going to see my father off. (不是我兄弟就是我去为父亲送行。)

5. The task of writing a dictionary begins with the reading of vast amounts of the literature of the period or subject that the dictionary is to cover.

begin with 在本句中的意思是“以……开始；以……为起点”。如：

1) I shall begin with this book today. (我打算今天先读这本书。)

2) The drought began with that dry and hot summer. (干旱是从那个干热的夏季开始的。)

3) The teacher began the class with a story. (老师以一个故事开始了讲课。)

amount 可以做可数名词用,也可以做不可数名词用,意思是“数量,数额”。amount 的谓词动词的数与 amount 的数一致,而与所修饰的名词的数无关。如:

1) A large amount of money was spent on this project.

2) Large amounts of money were spent on this project.

That 引导的是一个定语从句,修饰 the dictionary

在 be 动词的后面加动词不定式,表示“安排、命令、职责、目的、用途、可能性等”。如:

1) We are to meet at the station at 5: 00 (我们约定 5 点钟在车站碰头。)

2) You are to be back by 9: 00. (你得在 9 点钟前回来。)

3) The report is to be found in today's papers. (那个报道可在今天的报上找到。)

Cover 在本句中的意思是“涉及”。如:

1) His researches covered a wide field. (他的研究涉及范围很广。)

2) They covered many topics in their conversation. (他们谈话时讨论了许多问题。)

6. The writing of a dictionary is not a task of setting up authoritative statements about the “true meanings” of words, but a task of recording to the best of one's ability, that various words have meant to authors in the distant or immediate past.

Not...but 在本句中的意思是“不是……而是”。如:

1) What he needs is not money but some understanding. (他所需要的不是钱,而是一些理解。)

2) The story I have read is not a comedy but a tragedy. (我读的那个故事不是个喜剧而是个悲剧。)

To the best of one's ability 意思是“尽某人的最大努力”。如：

1) I'll put the article into Chinese to the best of my ability.
(我将尽最大努力把这篇文章翻成中文。)

2) He promised to do the work to the best of his ability. (他许诺说他会尽最大努力做这个工作。)

a task of recording what various words have meant to authors... ,
what 引导宾语从句，做 recording 的宾语。Mean 意思是“表示……的意思”，
“意指”等。如：

1) What he said means nothing to me. (他所说的对我来说毫无意义。)

2) What does this word mean? (这个词的意思是什么?)

我们曾经对 mean 这个单词做详细讲解，再看几个例句：

1) What do you mean by saying that to him? (你对他说那话的意思是什么?)

2) I didn't mean to make you unhappy. (我不是故意要使你不开心的。)

3) You know what I meant to say. (你知道我想说的是什么。)

4) His criticism is meant for all of us. (他的批评是针对我们大家的。)

7. ... but we cannot be bound by it...。

Bound 是动词 bind 是过去分词，be bound by sth. 意思是“受……束缚”，
也可用 be bound to sth.

1) We should not be bound by conventions. (我们不应该受习俗的束缚。)

2) Housework kept her bound to the house. (家务把她束缚在家里。)

3) The term papers kept him bound to his desk. (学期论文使他终日厌案。)

本课主要词组

1. learn... from

2. in matters of
3. get into a dispute
4. dispute over
5. offer to do sth.
6. look up
7. be willing to
8. quarrel with
9. be regarded as
10. arrive at
11. apply to
12. go on
13. begin with
14. vast amounts of
15. a large number of
16. along with
17. such as
18. from...to...
19. stack of
20. according to
21. hard-and-fast rule
22. be based on
23. in front of
24. be influenced by
25. ought to

26. not at all
27. set up
28. to the best of one's ability
29. in the past
30. send out
31. force sb. to do sth.
32. be bound by

Text B reading provides necessary survival skills

短语表达

1. emphasis on

The emphasis on education would certainly bring great changes to the people and the country.

2. be the case

He said he was the best tennis player in his school, but it was not the case.

3. involve sth. / doing sth.

Accepting the job would involve working at weekends.

4. get an idea about sth.

Have you got any idea about the whole incident?

5. expect from

Don't expect too much from others. You have to learn to depend on yourself.

6. cue in

Remember to cue in the headmaster on what happened during his absence.

7. apply to

It will be great if we can apply what we have learned in books to practical work.

8. out of

The boy opened his sister's mail out of curiosity.

9. keep up with

What do you think a scientist has to do to keep up with the latest development in his field?

10. at top speed

If you run at top speed, you may get there in 10 minutes.

11. concentrate on

You will find it easier to concentrate on the reading material if you read in a quiet place.

12. be familiar with

I am not familiar with the person you mentioned just now.

13. be aware of

He was not aware of the danger when he was walking toward the building.

14. look up

If you look up the word in the dictionary you will find it has two different pronunciations.

15. slow down

You have to slow down or you may get a fine.

16. be alert to

Be alert to new words and you will enlarge your vocabulary.

17. add to

His explanation added to my confusion.

Unit13 (第 38 讲—第 40 讲)

Text A Insurance

本课主要单词

1、insurance n. 保险；保险金

fire (car, health, casualty) insurance 火 (汽车, 健康, 伤亡事故) 险

sell life insurance 兜揽人寿保险生意

insurance policy 保险契约, 保险单

insurance company 保险公司

insurance agent 保险代理人

1) You will have to show your driving license and car insurance certificate. (你得出示你的驾驶证和汽车保险证明。)

2) The holiday cost 50 pounds plus insurance and airport taxes. (这次度假的代价是 50 英镑, 另加保险费和机场税。)

动词 insure 和 assure 都可以指“给…保险”。如:

1) He insured his house against fire. (他给自己的房屋保了火险。)

2) The insurance company refused to insure him again after all his car accidents. (他的汽车出了那么多事故以后, 保险公司不愿再给他保险了。)

3) He assured his life with this company. (他向这家公司保了人寿险。)

assure 还可以指“向…保证”, “使确信”。如:

1) She assured me that she would come earlier. (她向我保证她会早点来。)

2) I can assure you of the quality. (它的质量我可以向你保证。)

在美国英语中, insure 可以表示“保证, 确保”。如:

We must try to insure peace around the world. (我们必须确保世界和平。)

而另一个动词 ensure 常在正式用法中取代 insure, 表示“保证, 担保”, 这个动词还有“保证给予”的意思。如:

1) His diligence will ensure his success. (他的勤劳将保证他取得成功。)

2) I'm sorry I cannot ensure you a better job. (很抱歉, 我不能保证给你一个更好的工作。)

2、coverage n. 覆盖; 承保范围; 新闻报道范围

在前一个单元中, 我们学了动词 cover, 意思是“涉及”, 当然, 除了“涉及”以外, cover 还有其他的意思, 如:

1) Dust covered the desk. (书桌上蒙上了灰尘。)

2) The floods covered the town. (洪水淹没了城镇。)

3) They covered 140 miles in two hours. (他们两小时行了 140 英里。)

4) Some reporters have been sent to cover the conference. (已经派了几名记者去采访会议情况。)

5) One hundred dollars hardly covers two nights at a good hotel. (100 美元几乎不够付好点旅馆两夜的房钱。)

Coverage 则做名词用, 如:

1) This radio station has great coverage. (这个无线电的覆盖范围很广。)

2) Can you recommend me an insurance policy with extensive coverage? (你能给我推荐一个承保范围广泛的保险吗?)

3) They had an excellent coverage on African situation. (他们对非洲形势作了出色的报道。)

3、consumer n. 消费者; 顾客

producers and consumers 生产者和消费者

consumer rights 消费者权益

a consumer guide 消费者指南

1) These machines were enormous consumers of electricity. (这些机器耗电量很大。)

2) The change in policy will affect all gas consumers. (政策的变化会影响所有的油料消费者。)

consume 作动词用, 意思是“消耗, 花费”。如:

1) He consumed much of his time in watching TV. (他花许多时间看电视。)

2) Do you know how much oil the Americans consume daily? (你知道美国人每天的耗油是多少?)

3) He consumed all his energy. (他耗尽了所有的精力。)

4、policy n. 方针, 政策; 保险单

policies on education 教育方针

personnel policy 人事政策

economic and foreign policy 经济和外交政策

policy maker 决策人

policy holder 投保人

1) The policy of reform and opening to the outside world has brought about great changes to China. (改革开放政策给中国带来了巨大的变化。)

2) This service is free to policy holders. (这项服务对投保人免费。)

5、sum n. 总数, 金额 v. 共计; 总结

1) The expenses came to an enormous sum. (开支总数巨大。)

2) He paid a large sum of money for the house. (他出了一大笔钱买这所房子。)

3) The boys, in sum, did a good job. (总之, 男孩子们干得不错。)

4) At the end of the discussion, he summed up, and added a few points. (讨论快结束时, 他作了总结并补充了几点。)

5) I cannot sum up his opinion in one sentence. (我无法用一句话来概括他的观点。)

6、adequate adj. 充足的, 充分的; 胜任的

1) His income is adequate to support his family. (他的收入足以维持他一家人的生活。)

2) What should be done to assure adequate supplies of water? (应该怎样来保证足够的水供应?)

3) I think he is adequate to the job. (我认为他胜任这工作。)

4) He gave us an adequate description of the situation. (他对形势作了恰当的描述。)

7、major a. 主要的 n. 专业, 专业学生 v. 主修, 专攻

1) It is not a major problem. (这不是个大问题。)

2) She had a major operation last month. (她上个月初了次大手术。)

3) He is a physics major, but he is interested in journalism. (他是物理专业学生, 但他却对新闻越兴趣。)

4) Biology is his major. (生物是他的专业。)

5) My brother majors in traditional Chinese medicine. (我弟弟主修中医。)

6) She majors in early education. (她专攻早期教育。)

与 major 意思相反的词是 minor. 如:

1) Don't worry about it, it is only a minor problem. (别担心, 这只是个小问题。)

2) History is his major, and English is his minor. (他主修历史, 副修英语。)

major 和 minor 的名词形式是在其后加-ity.

8、remind v. 提醒, 使想起; 使发生联想

1) Please remind me, if I forget to give you the key. (如果我忘记给你钥匙, 请提醒我。)

2) Remind him to put the book on the shelf when he is done with it. (他看完书后提醒他把书放在书架上。)

3) We had to remind him that he had a meeting at 10: 00. (我们不得不提醒他十点钟有个会。)

4) Is it necessary to remind him about the party? (有必要提醒他不要忘记赴宴吗?)

5) The picture reminds me of my childhood in the countryside. (这张照片使我联想起在农村度过的童年。)

9、possibility n. 可能性; 可能的事

Possibility 是 possible 的名词形式, 英语中有不少以 -ible, -able 为字尾的形容词, 表示“有能力”, “易做”, “适合”, “足以做…”的意思, 而这些形容词的名词通常以如下形式出现:

possible——possibility responsible——responsibility

probable——probability available——availability

able——ability feasible——feasibility

1) We must accept the possibility that we might be wrong. (我们必须接受这种可能性, 即我们也许错了。)

2) I am not sure if we have the possibility of success. (我不能肯定我们是否有成功的可能。)

3) It is a possibility that he will get the job. (他有可能得到那份工作。)

10、injury n. 损害, 伤害

1) Building workers risk injury by not wearing helmets. (建筑工人不戴安全帽便有受伤的危险。)

2) He did not suffer any injuries in the accident. (他在事故中没有任何损伤。)

3) The man got an injury to the head in the fight. (在打斗中那个人头部受伤。)

injure 是 injury 的动词形式，请注意区别 damage, wound, hurt 和 injure 这几个词。Damage 指损害某物。wound 指人在战斗，攻击中身体受伤，出现明显的伤口。Hurt, injure 指人在平时或事故中受伤，还表示伤害感情自尊等。hurt 更表示有强烈的疼痛感。如：

1) The boat was seriously damaged in the storm. (那条船在风暴中严重受损。)

2) The soldier was badly wounded. (那个士兵受了重伤。)

3) He injured his leg in an accident. (在一次事故中，他的腿受了伤。)

4) I fell off my bicycle and hurt my arm. (我从自行车上摔下来，摔伤了胳膊。)

5) I didn't mean to hurt your feelings. (我本无意伤害你的感情。)

11、complex adj. 复杂的 n. 综合体；情绪；夸大的情绪反应

1) What he said was too complex for me to understand. (他说的太复杂了，我不理解。)

2) This is a complex problem. (这是个复杂的问题。)

3) There will be an industrial complex in our province. (我们将有一个大工业中心。)

4) He has a complex about bugs. (他对小虫子有病态恐惧。)

12、professional adj. 职业的，专业的 n. 自由职业者，专业人员

1) We need to have some professional advice. (我们需要职业性的指导。)

2) He is a professional basketball player. (他是职业篮球运动员。)

3) The band consists of a professional and three amateurs. (这支乐队由一名职业乐师和三名业余人员组成。)

4) He is a professional at his job. (他是一个精通本职工作的人。)

profession 名词，意思是“职业”。如：

1) He decided on teaching as his profession. (他决定从事教书工作。)

2) He is a carpenter by profession. (他以木工为业。)

What's your father's profession? (你父亲是从事什么工作的?)

13、ignorance n. 无知, 愚昧; 不知

1) Some animals have been wiped out through ignorance. (有些动物由于人们的无知而灭绝了。)

2) It might be better to keep her in ignorance of what has happened. (不让她知道发生了什么事也许更好。)

ignorant 是形容词, 意思是“无知的, 没有学识; 不知道的”。如:

1) She was ignorant about these people. (她对这些人全然不了解。)

2) His parents were kept ignorant of the fact that he failed in the exam. (关于他考试又不及格这件事他父母还蒙在鼓里。)

3) How can you believe such an ignorant person? (你怎能相信这样一个无知的人?)

14、opposite adj. 对面的; 相反的 n. 对立面

1) He lives in the house opposite to ours. (他住在我们对面的那所房子里。)

2) She burst into the room through the opposite door. (她从对面的那扇门冲进房间。)

3) The result was opposite to what we had expected. (结果和我们所期望的相反。)

4) You are active, she is the opposite. (你很活泼, 她正相反。)

5) Our view is the opposite of yours. (我们的意见与你们的相反。)

6) He sat opposite to her. (他坐在她对面。)

7) There was an explosion opposite. (对面发生了爆炸。)

Unit13 (第38讲—第40讲)

15、effective adj. 有效果的, 有成效的

1) We have to take effective measures to control pollution. (我们得采取有效措施控制污染。)

2) I hope the medicine can be effective. (我希望这药有效。)

本课简介

态度友善、衣着得体、热切助人的保险代理人的来电或造访常令美国人不安，甚至戒备，这是为什么呢？本文作者列举了美国人不愿谈论保险的三个原因。其一是保险昂贵，各类保险成了大多数美国家庭的一大花费；其二是保险总令人想到自己生活于其中的世界充满了不安全因素。人们得面对疾病、伤害、死亡、经济损失等种种不幸；其三是保险是一个困难而复杂的问题，能完全弄明白这个问题的人少而又少，掩饰无知的方式是避免谈论。然而，这正是由于上述三个原因，人们有必要对保险问题多多了解，才能成为明智的消费者，才能理智地正视保险问题，才能避免成为“保险盲”。

本课主要语言点

1. Yet few Americans really enjoy visiting with these eager, helpful men and women.

在前一单元中，我们已讲到过 few 通常否定，意思是“很少的，几乎没有的”，本句中的 few 同样表示否定意味。

动词 enjoy 的后面跟名词或者动名词，不能跟动词不定式，如：

1) He enjoys classical music. (他喜欢古典音乐。)

2) She enjoys going to concerts. (她喜欢赴音乐会。)

3) Painting is something that Mary really enjoys doing. (画画是玛丽真正喜欢做的事。)

visit with 是美国用法，意思是“访问；在…处做客、逗留”，如：

1) She will come and visit with you for a few weeks. (她会来你这儿做客住上几个星期的。)

2) He hasn't visited with his uncle since 1990. (他从1990年至今没有拜访过他叔叔。)

eager 是一个形容词，通常用于词组 be eager to do sth.

1) They are eager to get the information. (他们急切地想得到那信息。)

2) The little boy was eager to tell his parents that he won the first prize. (那个小男孩急切地想告诉父母他得了一等奖。)

2. We are on guard when they visit our homes.

guard 这个词既可做名词用，也可做动词用。做名词用时，意思是“看守；守卫；警惕；”做动词用时，意思是“保卫，保护；看守。”

1) He works as a door guard for that company. (他在那家公司做门警。)

2) They will give him an armed guard. (他们会给他配备一队武装卫兵。)

3) I was immediately on guard when father mentioned that incident. (父亲提起那件事，我就立刻提防起来。)

4) Police were sent to guard his house. (警察被派去守卫他的房子。)

5) She had been locked in her room and guarded day and night. (她被锁在房间里日夜看守着。)

6) The old man told his son to guard against conceit. (那位老人嘱咐他的儿子谨防骄傲。)

3. Three reasons why we are unwilling to discuss insurance can be suggested.

本句的主要成份是：Three reasons can be suggested. Why 引导的是一个定语从句，修饰 reasons. 如：

1) The reason why she refused my help is unknown. (没人知道她拒绝我的帮助的原因。)

2) The room where Mary used to live has been painted blue. (玛丽曾经住过的那个房间已被漆成了蓝色。)

3) The day when John came was cold. (约翰来的那天很冷。)

4. In effect, they pay as much for the insurance as they do for the car itself.

in effect 意思是“实质上；实际上”，如：

1) They have in effect been severely punished. (他们实际上已受到严厉惩罚。)

2) In effect, she has no choice. (实际上她没有选择。)

3) What in effect I'm saying is that he couldn't keep his promise.
(我实质上要说的是, 他不可能信守诺言。)

请注意 pay 和 spend 两个动词的用法:

1) He paid 100 yuan for that used bicycle. (他出 100 元买那辆旧自行车。)

2) He spent 100 yuan on that used bike.

5. Insurance also reminds us that we live in an unsafe world.

在词汇部分, 我们已讲过 remind 这个词的词意及用法, 再巩固一下:

remind sb. of sth.

1) I remind him of his promise. (我提醒他许下的诺言。)

2) Her smile reminds me of her mother. (她的微笑使我想起了她的母亲。)

remind sb. about sth.

1) Don't forget to remind him about the meeting. (别忘记提醒他开会的事。)

2) He called to remind me about the return ticket. (他打来电话提醒我回程票的事。)

remind sb. to do sth.

1) Remind me to turn off the computer. (提醒我关电脑。)

2) Mother reminded him to air the quilt when it is fine. (母亲提醒他天气好时晒晒被子。)

remind + 从句

1) I was reminded how his attitude had changed. (我注意到他的态度改变了。)

2) Remind his that he has to go to the parents' meeting. (提醒他去参加家长会。)

6. ...in our hearts we hope that we might be spared.

spare 做形容词用时, 意思是“多余的; 空闲的; 俭朴的”。如:

1) In his spare time he wrote some short stories. (他用余暇写了一些短篇故事。)

2) Sorry, I don't have any spare cash. Can I write a check? (对不起, 我没有多余的现钱, 我可以开支票吗?)

3) He is keen on this spare lifestyle. (他喜欢这种俭朴的生活。)

在本句中, spare 用作动词, 意思是“饶恕; 使免遭”。如:

1) He begged them to spare his life. (他求他们饶他一命。)

2) You may spare yourself the trouble. (你不必找此麻烦。)

3) Call him and spare yourself a visit. (给他打个电话, 省得你自己跑一趟。)

spare 也可以表示“抽出时间; 出让”。如:

1) Can you spare me 5 minutes? (你能抽出 5 分钟时间给我吗?)

Spare me 50 yuan and I will return the money on payday. (借给我 50 元钱, 发工资那天我就还你。)

7. ...We would rather talk about football or the weather or what we had for lunch.

在 world rather 后面应用动词的原形形式。如:

1) I would rather stay at home. (我宁愿呆在家里。)

2) He would rather go and play football than go to the cinema. (他宁愿去踢足球, 而不愿去看电影。)

3) I would rather you didn't tell me the truth. (我宁愿你没告诉我真话。)

在第三句中, would rather 后面跟的是从句, 从句中的动词用虚拟语气形式。

what we had for lunch 意思是“午饭吃了什么”。如:

1) What did you have for breakfast? (你早饭吃了什么?)

2) I had nothing but a cup of coffee for breakfast. (早饭我只喝了一杯咖啡。)

8. Neither should we depend entirely on the agent when we buy insurance.

当否定词放在句首时，句子通常用倒装。如：

1) Never in my life have I seen such a beautiful place. (我一生中从没见过这么美丽的地方。)

2) Tom doesn't like pop music. Neither does his wife. (汤姆不喜欢流行音乐，他妻子也不喜欢。)

3) In no case will he give up the experiment. (无论如何他都不会放弃那个试验。)

4) Not only was he a teacher, but also a poet. (他不仅是一位教师，还是一位诗人。)

9. It is better that we plan for these situations by finding means to deal with them than to just hope that they will somehow go away.

plan 一般可用作及物动词，而本句中的动词 plan 作不及物动词用。

1) We will plan our weekend at noon. (中午时我们将安排周末的活动。)

2) I planned to go and meet him at the station. (我打算去车站接他。)

3) We should plan for our future. (我们应该筹划未来。)

deal with 意思是“处理，对付；论述”

1) This is a book dealing with the skills of reading, writing and speaking. (这是一本论述读、写、说技能的书。)

2) The man is difficult to deal with. (那人很难打交道。)

3) There will be a lot of difficulties to be dealt with when you start your own business. (你开始自己做生意时会有许多困难要克服。)

10. Quite the opposite

本句的意思是“恰巧相反”，有时我们也可以用 just the opposite. 如：

They are very excited. I am quite the opposite. (他们很兴奋，我则恰好相反。)

本课主要词组

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. be interested in | 2. be eager to |
| 3. be of help | 4. visit with |
| 5. be on guard | 6. at best |
| 7. be unwilling to | 8. first of all |
| 9. a sum of | 10. pay for |
| 11. in effect | 12. remind...of |
| 13. would rather | 14. depend on |
| 15. look...in the face | 16. plan for |
| 17. deal with | 18. go away |
| 19. neither...nor | |

Text B What is money and what are its functions?

短语表达

1. be familiar with

I am not familiar with the book he mentioned in his lecture.

2. throughout

He never stopped learning throughout his life.

We want to make this place known throughout the world.

3. a number of

A number of ways have been suggested to control air pollution.

A number of students have applied for this part-time job.

4. rule out

The regulations rule out anyone under the age of 16.

The possibility of suicide has been ruled out.

Heavy rain ruled the match out for that day.

5. search for

The police are still searching for survivors of the plane crash.

They are searching the wood for the lost child.

6. worth

This bike is worth 250 yuan.

I don't think a two-day vacation is worth much.

7. respond to

How did he respond to what you said?

8. rather than

He is a writer rather than a teacher.

Rather than cause trouble, he left.

9. in terms of

She was asked to express her idea in terms of science.

We usually measure the value of material goods in terms of money.

10. be conscious of

I was not conscious of what was happening.

He was not conscious of his mistake.

11. convert to

Water can be converted to electricity.

He wanted to convert the US dollars to RMB.

Unit14 (第 41 讲—第 43 讲)

Text A The importance of being kind and polite

本课主要单词

1. frankly adv. 坦白地, 直率地; 坦率地说

1) He frankly admitted that he had made a mistake. (他坦率地承认自己犯了个错误。)

2) She asked me to tell her frankly what I wished to do. (她让我坦率地告诉她我希望做什么。)

3) Frankly, he is not easy to get along with. (坦率地说, 这个人不好打交道。)

4) Quite frankly, I don't care about what they may say. (坦率地说, 我不在乎他们会说什么。)

frank adj. 坦诚的 v. 盖免费邮戳于(邮件); 准许...自由通过

1) They gave us a frank reply. (他们给了我们一个坦率的回答。)

2) They have franked these letters. (他们已经给这些信件盖了邮资已付的邮戳。)

3) We are trying to frank him through customs. (我们正努力使他免检通过海关。)

2. boring adj. 令人厌烦的; 乏味的

bored adj. 感到厌烦的

bore v. 使厌烦, 使厌倦 n. 令人讨厌的人或事

boredom n. 厌烦, 厌倦; 乏味

1) It was such a boring journey that he didn't want to say anything about it. (这次旅行很乏味, 他什么也不想提及。)

2) I am bored. I don't have anything to do. (我无事可做, 感到乏味。)

3) Most of the book had bored him, with the exception of one chapter. (除了其中的一章, 这本书的大部分内容使他感到乏味。)

4) Sam is such a bore that no one wants to have anything to do with him. (山姆是个很令人讨厌的人, 谁都不想与他打交道。)

5) She seems so depressed by the boredom of her city life. (城市生活的乏味似乎令她沮丧。)

3. honestly adv. 诚实地; 的确

honest adj. 诚实的

honesty n. 诚实

dishonest adj. 不诚实的；不正直的

1) Honestly, I don't know what you're talking about. (说实在的, 我不知道你在讲些什么。)

2) You have to answer the following questions honestly. (你得诚实地回答下列问题。)

3) He is honest, he doesn't tell lies. (他是老实人, 不说谎。)

4) First of all, you should be honest about why you want the money. (首先, 你应该坦率地说为什么要这些钱。)

5) We have no doubt as to his honesty. (对他的诚实我们毫不怀疑。)

6) How can you believe such a dishonest person. (你怎么能相信这样一个不诚实的人?)

7) He got his money in dishonest ways. (他以不正当的方式搞钱。)

4. impress v. 给...深刻的印象

impression n. 印象; 效果, 影响

impressive adj. 给人以深刻印象的

1) What I saw and heard there impressed me deeply. (那儿的所见所闻给我留下了深刻的印象。)

2) I was impressed by his high efficiency. (他的高效率给我留下了深刻的印象。)

3) My advice seemed to make no impression on him. (我的劝告似乎对他不起作用。)

4) She made a very good impression on her employer. (她给雇主留下了极好的印象。)

5) The impressive scene will be always in his mind. (那个难忘的场面将永远留在他的脑海中。)

5. collection n. 收集; 收藏品

collect v. (去)取; 接; 聚集

1) He has a large collection of books. (他有大量的藏书。)

2) The collection of butterfly specimens takes up all his spare time.
(他所有的业余时间都用于采集蝴蝶标本了。)

3) He likes collecting stamps. (他爱好集邮。)

4) I have to go and collect my daughter. (我得去接女儿了。)

5) A large crowd collected in front of the building. (那座楼前聚集了一大群人。)

collect 也可以做副词用, 意思是“由受话人付费”, 如:

I will call London collect. (我将给伦敦打一个对方付费的电话。)

6. misunderstand v. 误解, 误会

misunderstanding n. 误会; 争执

1) Don't misunderstand us, we are here to help, not to make trouble.
(别误解我们的意思, 我们是来帮忙的, 不是惹麻烦的。)

2) She misunderstood what her friend said, and went away in a fury.
(她误解了她朋友所说的话, 怒气冲冲地走了。)

3) They had a misunderstanding, but they have become friendly again.
(他们曾有过争执, 不过又言归于好了。)

4) I don't hope the minor misunderstanding will affect our friendship.
(我不希望这点小误会会影响我们的友谊。)

7. friction n. 摩擦; 不和, 争执

1) Constant friction caused the rope to break. (不断的摩擦使绳子断了。)

2) The efficiency of the machine is higher because there is less friction.
(由于摩擦力较小, 这台机器的效率更高了。)

3) Family frictions can interfere with a child's schoolwork. (家庭中的争吵会影响孩子的学业。)

4) The friction between the two countries is getting more and more serious. (两国之间的摩擦在加剧。)

8. conflict n. 冲突, 抵触 v. 冲突, 抵触

1) The conflict between the two villages lasted for years. (两个村子之间的冲突持续了数年。)

2) They came into conflict over the ownership of the house. (他们就房屋的所有权问题产生了激烈的争执。)

3) His statement conflicted with what his friend said. (他的说法与他的朋友所言截然不同。)

4) My idea might conflict with his. (我的观点, 可能会与他的观点相冲突。)

9. enforce v. 实施, 执行; 强制; 强调

1) The president of our university said time and again that it was necessary to enforce the school regulations. (我们大学的校长一再说执行校规很有必要。)

2) People were dissatisfied with the government's inability to enforce its law. (人们对政府无力执行法律十分不满。)

3) Very often parents enforce their own will on children. (父母常常把自己的意愿强加给孩子们。)

4) Illness enforced him to lie in bed. (疾病迫使他卧床。)

5) You need to enforce your arguments by producing facts and figures. (你需要提出事实与数据来加强你的论点。)

10. interact v. 相互影响, 相互作用, 相互交流

interaction n. 相互影响, 相互作用

1) Mothers and babies interact in a complex way. (母婴以一种复杂的方式相互交流。)

2) Students are encouraged to interact in class in English by the teacher. (老师鼓励学生在课堂上用英语互动。)

3) There is a need for more interaction between parents and children. (父母和孩子之间需要更多的相互交流。)

4) They are doing some research on the interaction between seawater and lava. (他们正对海水与溶岩的相互作用进行研究。)

inter-是一个前缀,表示“相互”;“在...中间”。如:interchange (互换);intercommunicate (互相联系;互相通信);interdependent (相互依赖,相互依存);international (国际的);interstate (州际的);interuniversity (大学间的)

11. consensus n. 合意; (意见等的)一致; 舆论

1) There was a kind of unspoken consensus between them. (他们之间有一种默契。)

2) The consensus was to abandon the project. (大多数人的意见是放弃该项计划。)

3) It is very difficult for them to reach a consensus on what they are going to do. (要就他们将要进行的事情达成大致意见是很困难。)

4) You have to build a consensus with them if you really want to get their help. (如果你真想得到他们的帮助,你得与他们达成一致意见。)

12. guideline n. 指导方针, 准则, 标准

1) They are going to adopt new guidelines for national economy. (他们将采取新的国民经济指导方针。)

2) Today the moral guidelines are not as obvious as they were. (现在的道德准则不再以前一样明确了。)

3) The chemical additives still exceed guidelines set to protect public health. (化学添加剂仍然超过了为保护公众健康而确定的标准。)

13. unacceptable adj. 不能接受的, 不受欢迎的

acceptable adj. 可接受的

accept v. 接受

1) It is entirely unacceptable to break the law for the sake of money. (为了钱而犯法是完全不可接受的。)

2) The proposal was unacceptable. (这个建议是不能接受的。)

3) This is a proposal that is acceptable to all sides. (这是一个各方面都能接受的建议。)

4) They didn't accept the invitation to attend the evening party.
(他们没有接受出席晚会的邀请。)

14. adolescent adj. 青春期的; 青少年的 n. (16岁以下的)
青少年

adolescence n. 青春期(13-16岁的发育期)

1) He was afraid that his son had anything to do with the adolescent gang.
(他担心他儿子与青少年犯罪集团有牵连。)

2) This film aimed at adolescents. (这部电影专为青少年拍摄。)

3) His adolescence was not a happy time for him. (他的青春期过的不快乐。)

4) Before his parents could realize it Tom had already reached the age of adolescence.
(父母还没意识到这个问题, 汤姆已到了青春期年龄。)

15. swear v. 诅咒; 发誓 n. 誓言

1) Don't swear in front of the children. (别在孩子们面前骂人。)

2) Will you swear that you were not on the scene? (你愿意起誓说你当时不在现场吗?)

3) I swear that I will never trust him any more. (我保证再也不相信他了。)

4) He swore by his honor that he would return the money in two weeks.
(他以自己的名誉发誓保证在两周内还钱。)

5) They refused to swear on a Bible. (他们拒绝手按圣经发誓。)

6) Don't take his swear seriously. (别拿他的誓言当真。)

16. indifferent adj. 冷漠的, 不关心的

indifference n. 冷漠

1) If parents are indifferent to their success, children will fail to make progress.
(如果父母漠视孩子的成功, 孩子就不会进步。)

2) He is absolutely indifferent to other people's miseries. (他对别人的痛苦漠不关心。)

3) He put on an air of indifference. (他摆出了一副满不在乎的神气。)

4) She was annoyed by her son's indifference to her. (她儿子对她的冷漠态度令她恼怒。)

17. discipline n. 纪律, 训练; 学科 v. 训练; 使有纪律; 惩罚

1) The discipline of hard work would do you a lot of good. (艰苦工作的磨练会对你大有好处。)

2) The young teacher couldn't keep discipline in her classroom. (那个年轻的教师无法维持课堂秩序。)

3) Scientists of many disciplines would work together to solve the problem. (许多学科的科学学家们将一道来解决这个问题。)

4) They must learn to discipline themselves. (他们必须学会锻炼自己。)

5) He was disciplined for being late. (他因迟到而受罚。)

18. individual n. 个人, 个体 adj. 个别的, 单独的; 独特的

1) The freedom of the individual was greatly emphasized in his talk. (他在讲话中十分强调个人的自由。)

2) Handwriting varies from individual to individual. (每个人的笔迹都不相同。)

3) Each individual leaf on the tree is different. (树上的每一片叶子都各不相同。)

4) There was nothing individual about him except a deep scar across his right cheek. (他除了右脸颊有条深疤外别无特征。)

本课简介

在人类共同生活的社会里有一些公认的社会准则, 这些准则为大多数人所接受。如果你不能遵循这些准则, 你则会被看作为一个缺少文明礼貌举止的人。善待他人, 尊重他人能给我们带来一种优势, 而这种优势会帮助我们成功。正因为如此, 我们应该学会在看电影时保持安静; 在点燃香烟前征得他人同意; 注意选择接听移动电话的场合; 与老师交谈时摘下随身听的耳机; 满口含着食物时不随意开口讲话; 该尊称他人时不随性而为乱称呼……。这些看似不重要的小节恰恰是最能反映一个人的社会公德的。

本课主要语言点

1. Unless you want to end a relationship, you don't tell another person what you think of her or him like this.

unless 在本句中的意思是“if not”（除非，如果不），如：

1) You will fail the exam unless you study harder.（你若不更加努力学习，考试会不及格。）

2) We will go on with the experiment unless something unforeseen happens.（如果不发生意外，我们将继续试验。）

3) I will not go to the party unless he invites me.（如果他不邀请我，我就不去参加聚会。）

4) Nothing, unless a miracle, can save him.（除非出现奇迹，他无法得救。）

end 在本句中用作动词，意思是“结束”。如：

1) The meeting did not end until midnight.（会议开到半夜才结束。）

2) The anti-Japanese War ended in 1945.（抗日战争于1945年结束。）

3) He refused to end his four-week tour in such a manner.（他不愿以这种方式结束为期四周的旅行。）

Unit14（第41讲—第43讲）

2. Failing to be impressed by a friend's collection of stamps, yawning when a golfer tells you about what great shot he made... are all things that educated people try not to do.

本句中三个并列的动名词短语做主语，整个句子是一个“主语+系动词+表语”的句型。如：

1) Smoking is not good for your health.（吸烟有害你的健康。）

2) Making experiment is one way of learning.（实验是学习的一条途径。）

be impressed by 意思是“给...深刻印象”。如：

1) I was impressed by his talent.（他的才干给我留下了深刻的印象。）

2) He was impressed by the gorgeous sunset. (绚丽的夕阳给他留下了深刻的印象。)

golfer 意思为“高尔夫球运动员”，这个词是由 golf 加后缀-er 构成的，英语中这一类词很多。如：baker (面包师傅)，gardener (园丁)，miller (磨坊主)，singer (歌唱家)，user (使用者。)

1) He tried not to let out the secret. (他试图不泄露秘密。)

2) We tried not to be misled by them. (我们努力不被他们误导。)

3. There are no laws enforcing respect.

本句是一个 There be + noun + V-ing 结构，表示存在(有)，there 失去表示场所的意义。如：

1) There was a fire burning in the fireplace. (壁炉里火在燃烧。)

2) There were two bulldozers knocking the place flat. (两台推土机把那儿夷平。)

句中的 enforce 是一个及物动词，意思是“实施；强制”。如：

1) It is necessary to enforce discipline in the army. (在部队里执行纪律是必要的。)

2) He strongly objected to enforcing obedience on children. (他强烈反对强迫儿童服从。)

4. These guidelines represent what a majority of people consider acceptable and what they consider unacceptable.

represent 在本句中做及物动词用，意思是“代表；体现”。如：

1) The blue lines on the map represent rivers. (地图上的蓝线代表河流。)

2) These views don't represent the real thinking of the local residents. (那些观点并不反映当地居民的真实思想。)

句中 what 引导的是宾语从句，如：

1) I will always remember what my mother said to me before I went to college. (我将永远记住我上大学前妈妈对我说的话。)

2) I didn't see what they were doing there. (我没看见他们在那儿干什么。)

3) His idea couldn't represent what the ordinary people really liked. (他的想法不能代表普通百姓真正所喜欢的东西。)

consider 是一个常用动词，通常有以下几种用法：

1) consider + 宾语

He had no time to consider the matter. (他没有时间考虑这件事。)

2) consider + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

Some people considered the attack a mistake. (有人认为那次进攻是个错误。)

3) consider + that 从句

We consider that the young man is not guilty. (我们认为那个年轻人无罪。)

4) consider + V. + ing He considered changing his job. (他考虑换一份工作。)

5) consider to be/as

They consider themselves to be very lucky. (他们认为自己很幸运。)

He is considered to be an authority. (他被认为是权威。)

They considered the house as beautiful. (他们认为那房子很美。)

在上面的三个例句中，to be 和 as 都可以被省略，因此三例句可以改写为：

They consider themselves lucky.

He is considered an authority.

They consider the house beautiful.

5. They are not even aware that this habit will bother the other members of the audience.

aware 这个形容词很常用，需好好掌握，在第十二单元中我们已经接触过这个词，在此再巩固一下。

1) be aware of

If you were aware of all that, you would change your mind. (如果你知道了那一切, 你会改变主意的。)

2) be aware that

He was aware that he had drunk too much. (他知道他喝的太多了。)

bother 在本句中做动词用, 意思是“打扰”。在 bother 后用不定式则表示“费心去做某事”。如:

1) Don't bother me, I have to finish the work in an hour. (别打扰我, 我得在一小时内做完这个工作。)

2) Don't bother to talk to him. He has no interest in anything. (别费心跟他讲话, 他对什么都没兴趣。)

audience (观众, 听众) 当一个整体看待, 用做单数; 当各成员看待, 用做复数。如:

1) The audience was (were) enjoying the performance. (观众在欣赏演出。)

2) That book has a large audience. (那本书有广大的读者。)

6. ...the look-at-me phone users whose boring conversations are just as dangerous to our mental health as smoke is to our lungs.

look-at-me 是作者自造的复合形容词, 意思是“看我多神气”。

as dangerous...as...形容词的同等比较, 意思是“与……同样危险”。

这句话的意思是“如同吸烟有害我们的肺一样, ‘那些瞧我多神气’的移动电话使用者的无聊谈话有害我们的精神健康。”

英语学习中, 经常会有不善区别现在分词做形容词和过去分词做形容词的用法和词意的情况, 请看下列例句:

A. interested interesting

1. He is interested in that book.

2. The book is interesting

B. excited exciting

1. We were very excited on hearing the news.
2. The exciting news was soon spread all over the country.

C. bored boring

1. The audience was bored by the speaker's empty talk.
 2. The boring lecture made my sleepy.
7. ...they listen to their walkmans while the teacher is talking to them.

listen 是一个不及物动词，后面必须加介词 to 才可以跟宾语，如：听音乐（listen to music），听收音机（listen to the radio），听天气预报（listen to the weather forecast）。请注意，不能丢掉介词 to。

walkman 指随身听。注意其复数形式是在后面加-s，而不是把 man 改成 men。

8. Kids who have no idea what being polite means will pay the price sooner or later.

have no idea of sth. 意思是“对……不理解”。have no idea 后面接从句，常可省去 of，如：

1) He had no idea what was likely to happen next. （他无法预料接下去会出现什么情况。）

2) I have no idea why she left. （我不知道她为什么离去。）

polite 是形容词，前面必须用系动词，而在 what 从句中，做主语用的系动词 be 则要变成 being. 如：

Being honest means telling no lies. （诚实意味着不说谎话。）

句子中的 who 引导的是一个定语从句，修饰 kids，而 what 则引导了一个同位语从句，对 idea 的内容加以解释。如：

1) I have no idea what will turn up.

2) I have no idea how soon they will arrive.

3) Word came that they had succeeded.

pay the price 意思是“付出代价”。如：

They will pay the price for their ignorance. (他们将为自己的无知付出代价。)

sooner or later 意思是“迟早”，如：

You will understand me sooner or later. (你迟早会理解我的。)

9. When they join the work force, their employers and associates alike will soon realize that the behavior of these rude young people is closer to that of animals than civilized people.

associate 在本句中做名词，意思是“同事”。

alike 通常做形容词用，如：The two brothers are very much alike. (这两兄弟非常相象。) 在本句子，alike 作副词用，意思是“一样地”。

1) Teachers and students alike will have a 3-week holiday. (老师和学生一样将有为期三周的假期。)

2) The book is interesting and instructive alike. (这书既有趣，也有教益。)

句子中的第一个 that 引导的是一个宾语从句。第二个 that 则用来替代前面出现过的名词，本句中 that 替代前面的 behavior，意思是“这些粗鲁的年轻人的行为更接近动物的行为。”

1) By 1990, production in the area is expected to double that of 1980.

2) The weather in Shanghai is milder than that of Beijing.

10. Being polite and showing respect can give us an edge.

Edge 在本句中的意思是“优势” (advantage)，如：

1) The edge was with our team. (优势在我们队这边。)

2) Since he obtained the edge, he was sure to win. (既然他取得了优势，他一定会赢。)

3) have an edge over sb. (胜过某人)

4) maintain a nuclear edge (保持核优势)

本课主要词组

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. think of | 2. be impressed by |
| 3. fall asleep | 4. a trip to |
| 5. interact with | 6. a majority of |
| 7. show respect for | 8. as well |
| 9. be aware of | 10. listen to |
| 11. have no idea | 12. pay the price |
| 13. sooner or later | 14. be close to |
| 15. because of | 16. get ahead |
| 17. give sb. an edge | 18. be based on |

Text B Why we walk in circles

短语表达

1. rather than

He came all the way to China for promoting friendship rather than for making money.

He was reading a book rather than watching TV.

2. somewhat

He felt somewhat tired.

This book is somewhat difficult to understand.

3. instead of

Instead of pushing and crowding, he waited quietly for his turn.

He gave us a lot of trouble instead of help.

4. go astray

The letter had gone astray.

Make sure that no sheep go astray.

5. keep from

The poor child was kept from seeing his mother.

The bad weather kept us from getting there as scheduled.

6. cut off

Cut me off if I talk too much.

Gas supplies had now been cut off.

7. be worth

This book is worth reading.

This problem is worth following up.

8. reach one's goal

You have to work hard to reach your goal.

9. such as

Many stories such as these will prove instructive to the children.

10. intend to

He intended to give us an explanation, but he didn't.

I didn't intend to hurt you.

11. no more...than

He is no more a teacher than a writer.

We are no more satisfied than you are.

12. 让步状语从句的倒装

Young as he is, he holds an important position in the company.

Smart as they are, they are always modest.

Child as he was, he knew what was the right thing to do.

13. 独立结构: with + 名词 + 过去分词

With many eyes fixed on her, she felt very nervous.

With all the work completed, we felt greatly relieved.

With all his savings gone, he had to find a job now.

Unit15 (第44讲—第46讲)

Text A How TV Violence Affects Kids

本课主要单词

1. violence n. 暴力; 强烈

violent adj. 暴力的; 强烈的

1) Preschool children suffer most from TV violence. (学龄前儿童受暴力电视节目的危害最深。)

2) People in that country hated the king to the marrow as he ruled the country with violence. (那个国家的人民对国王恨之入骨, 因为他用暴力进行统治。)

3) He flung open the door with violence. (他用劲地猛然把门打开。)

4) The violent blow sent him down on his knees. (那猛烈的一击使他跪倒在地。)

5) The doctor told him not to do any violent exercise. (医生嘱咐他不要进行剧烈运动。)

2. exposure n. 暴露; 揭露; 曝光

expose v. 暴露; 使曝光; 使遭受; 使处于...影响之下; 展出

1) Too much exposure to sunlight will burn your skin. (过度晒太阳会晒伤皮肤。)

2) The exposure of corruption by the media caught the attention of the public. (传媒对腐败的揭露引起了公众的注意。)

3) She concealed the secret from her parents, fearing the exposure would stun them. (她对父母隐瞒了这个秘密, 担心秘密暴露会令父母震惊。)

4) How many exposures have you made? (你拍了几张照片?)

5) His shirt was open, exposing the tattoo on his chest. (他的衬衣敞开了, 露出了刺在胸部的文身。)

6) His fatness exposed him to a lot of joking at the office. (他长得肥胖, 因此在办公室常受取笑。)

7) He was exposed to music when he was a child. (他自幼受音乐熏陶。)

8) Parents should expose their children to good books. (父母应让孩子们读好书。)

9) He is going to expose all his collections at the auction. (他打算拍卖时把收藏品全部陈列出来。)

3. allocate v. 分配; 把...拨给; 把...划归

allocation n. 分配; 划拨的款项

1) Some doctors and teachers will be allocated to the villagers to help the people there. (一些医生和教师将被派往那些村子帮助那儿的人们。)

2) They were dissatisfied with the way resources were allocated. (他们对资源分配的方式不满意。)

3) One third of the money has been allocated to the public services. (三分之一的经费已拨给了公用事业。)

4) They said the allocation of seats was unfair. (他们说席位的分配不公平。)

5) He has a \$5000 allocation to cover the expenses. (他有一笔5000美元的拨款以应付各项支出。)

4. significantly adv. considerably 相当数量地; meaningfully (有意义地)

significant adj. important, meaningful (意义重大的)

marked, considerable (不必忽略的; 相当数量的)

significance n. consequence (意义; 影响) implication (含义)

1) Their opinions don't differ significantly from each other. (他们俩的看法没有明显差别。)

2) He said to us significantly that education of the youth would be vital to the future of a country. (他意味深长地对我们说年轻人的教育对于一个国家的未来至关重要。)

3) July 4 is a significant date for Americans. (对美国人来说七月四日是一个意义重大的日子。)

4) There has been a significant increase in juvenile crime in recent years. (近年来, 青少年犯罪活动有了相当大的增加。)

5) This is an event of great significance. (这是一个非常重大的事件。)

6) It is necessary to attach great significance to environmental protection. (重视环境保护是必要的。)

5. per prep. 每一, 每

1) He earns \$3000 per month. (他每月挣 3000 美元。)

2) We drove at the speed of 70 miles per hour. (我们以每小时 70 英里的速度行驶。)

3) Take the medicine 3 times per day. (这药每日服三次。)

4) They spent more than 20 million pounds per year. (他们每年花费两千万英镑。)

6. given prep. considering (考虑到)

1) Given their inexperience, they have done a good job. (考虑到他们缺乏经验, 这工作他们做得不错。)

2) Given his age, the old man is in good condition. (考虑到老人的年龄, 他的身体状况很不错了。)

3) Given my interest in oil painting, this is the best place to study. (考虑到我对油画的兴趣, 这是学习的最好地方。)

4) It seems unreasonable to send him away, given that he is doing quite well. (考虑到他的工作干得很不错, 把他解雇是不合理的。)

7. adopt v. take up (采取); accept (收养); officially pass (正式通过)

1) I don't know if I should adopt a positive attitude towards the whole happening. (我不知道我是否应该对整个事件采取积极态度。)

2) Their country adopted press censorship. (他们国家采取了新闻检查制度。)

3) They adopted an orphan as they had no child of their own. (他们自己没孩子，所以收养了一个孤儿。)

4) The boy was happy as anything when his parents decided to adopt a puppy. (当爸爸妈妈决定收养一条小狗时，那个男孩高兴极了。)

5) Congress adopted the new measures. (国会通过了新措施。)

6) The National Congress adopted the government report. (全国人大通过了政府工作报告。)

请注意区别 adopt 和 adapt

adapt vi. adjust (调节; 改变...以适应)

vt. revise (校准; 调整; 改编)

1) He had to adapt himself to the new condition. (他不得不使自己适应新的情况。)

2) Mr. Wang could not adapt himself to the new climate. (王先生不能适应新的气候。)

3) He is adapting the novel for television. (他正把那部小说改编为电视剧。)

8. distinguish v. separate (区别, 辨别); identify (认出)

1) You have to distinguish facts from rumours if you want to form a correct opinion. (如果想有一个正确的观点, 你得分辨事实和传闻。)

2) He was distinguished from other boys by his height. (他的身高显出他与其它男孩的不同。)

3) Some children were unable to distinguish between the letters b and p. (有些孩子不能分辨字母 b 和 p。)

9. fantasy n. 想像; 幻想

1) He is always having fantasies about becoming rich. (他总是抱着发财的幻想。)

2) To a small child, fantasy and reality are very close to each other. (对幼儿来说, 幻想和现实靠得很近。)

请注意区别 fancy, fantasy, imagination

fancy 和 fantasy 多指无事实依据的凭空想像。Fancy 的内容多是虚构的, 幻想的; fantasy 的内容更是荒诞古怪的。

Imagination 的想像多依据所见所闻或现实内容一般是合理的。

1) She went wherever the fancy took her. (她随兴致所至想去哪里就去哪里。)

2) These fantasies are sometimes very dangerous to school children. (对学龄儿童来说这些古怪念头是很危险的。)

3) Poets, artists and inventors need imagination. (诗人, 艺术家和发明家都需要想像力。)

10. underlying adj. 在下面的; 根本的; 潜在的

1) There are underlying similarities between all human beings. (人与人之间有着潜在的相似之处。)

2) The underlying theme of the novel is very serious. (这本小说的潜在主题是极其严肃的。)

3) Can you understand the underlying meaning of what he said? (你能理解他所说的话的含义吗?)

4) The underlying structure of this building is no doubt very firm. (这座楼的底层结构无疑是牢固的。)

11. motive n. reason, purpose (动机, 目的)

1) Greed was his only motive for receiving bribery. (贪婪是他受贿的唯一原因。)

2) His motive in coming was a wish to achieve mutual understanding. (他来的动机是想达成相互理解。)

3) The little boy opened his sister's mail through motives of curiosity. (那个小男孩出于好奇打开了姐姐的邮件。)

4) You should question his motive before you approve his conduct. (在你赞同他的所作所为之前应该先质询他的动机。)

12. subtlety n. delicacy; sensitivity 微妙之处, 细微之处; 敏锐

subtle adj. 隐约的; 微妙的

1) Nobody noticed the subtlety of his remarks. (没有人听出他话中的微妙含义。)

2) They can sense each other's intentions with great subtlety. (他们能敏锐地感觉到彼此的意图。)

3) It is difficult for people from other cultures to master the subtleties of the American joke. (对于来自其他文化的人来说掌握美国笑话的微妙之处是困难的。)

4) His whole attitude has undergone a subtle change. (他的整个态度已经有了微妙的变化。)

5) He dwelt on the subtle distinction between the two words. (他详述两个词词义的细微差别。)

13. moral adj. 有道德的 n. 道德; 寓意

1) He complained that he had witnessed a fall in moral standards. (他抱怨说他目睹了道德标准的衰落。)

2) Parents are responsible for the children's moral welfare. (父母应对孩子道德上的健康成长负责。)

3) The moral of the story was "A friend in need is a friend indeed". (这个故事的教益是“患难之交见真情。”)

4) I don't know what moral to draw from all this. (我不知道从所有这一切中应得出何种教训。)

5) He has no morals and will do anything for money. (他毫无道德, 为了钱什么都干得出来。)

14. recovery n. 康复; 收回

recover v. 恢复; 收复; 挽回

1) He is recovered from his illness. (他已恢复了健康。)

2) She recovered her strength after two days' rest. (经过两天的休息, 她恢复了力气。)

3) The police recovered the stolen watch. (警察追回了失窃的手表。)

4) He said he had to work hard to recover the lost time. (他说他得努力工作, 把失去的时间补回来。)

5) Mr. Wang insisted that the economic recovery was still slow. (王先生坚持认为经济复苏还太缓慢。)

6) She made a remarkable recovery from the illness. (她令人惊异地从那场疾病中康复了。)

7) The recovery of the lost wallet thrilled the whole family. (失落钱包的复得使全家人兴奋不已。)

15. unrealistic adj. impractical (不切实际的)

1) It is unrealistic to expect better conditions in the near future. (在不远的将来指望有更好的形势是不现实的。)

2) This demand proved unrealistic and unworkable. (这个要求证明是不切实际且不可行的。)

3) You have unrealistic expectations. (你的期望不切实际。)

16. imitate v. 模仿

imitation n. 模仿

imitative adj. 模仿的; 仿制的

1) Many writers imitate the language of Shakespeare. (许多作家模仿莎士比亚的语言。)

2) His handwriting is difficult to imitate. (他的笔迹很难模仿。)

3) Children learn many things by imitation. (儿童通过模仿学会许多东西。)

4) Acting is an imitative art. (表演是一种模仿性艺术。)

5) Monkeys are imitative (猴儿爱模仿。)

17. undermine vt. weaken (侵蚀...基础; 暗中破坏; 逐渐损害)

1) Many severe colds undermined the old man's health. (多次严重的感冒损害了老人的健康。)

2) Failures undermined her confidence. (一再的失败使她渐渐丧失了信心。)

3) The foundations of the house have been undermined by groundwater. (地下水侵蚀了这座房屋的地基。)

18. jeopardize vt. threaten endanger (使处于危险境地; 危及, 损害)

1) He jeopardized his life to save the drowning child. (他冒着生命危险救护那个溺水儿童。)

2) He jeopardized his fortune by making bad investments. (他由于投资不当而危及自己的财产。)

3) I didn't want to jeopardize my relationship with my new friend. (我不想损害我和新朋友的关系。)

19. interpret vt. 解释; 口译

interpretation n. 解释; 口译

interpreter n. 口译者

1) Literature helps to interpret life. (文学有助于阐明人生的意义。)

2) His silence was interpreted as consent. (他的沉默被认为是同意。)

3) People often give different interpretations of the past. (人们往往对过去作出不同的解释。)

4) He is talking to the foreign guest through an interpreter. (他正通过译员与外国客人交谈。)

20. monitor n. 监视器; 监控器; 监听员; 班长 v. 监听; 监视; 监控

1) The patient was connected to the monitor. (一台监控器连接到病人身上。)

2) He is the monitor of our class. (他是我们班班长。)

3) The police monitored all the phone calls of the suspect. (警察监听了疑犯的所有电话通话。)

4) Water flow will be monitored by computer. (水流将由计算机来监测。)

Unit15 (第44讲—第46讲)

21. initiate vt. 开始; 发起, 倡议; 接纳新成员

1) We should initiate direct talks with the trade unions. (我们应该与贸易联合会开始直接对话。)

2) They initiated a new program of reform. (他们开始实施一项新的改革方案。)

3) The club will initiate new members next week. (俱乐部将在下周接纳新成员。)

22. restrict vt. 限制; 约束

restricted adj. 受限制的; 有限的

restriction n. 限制, 约束

1) Women in China are no longer restricted to domestic labor now. (现在, 中国妇女不再被束缚于家务劳动了。)

2) He was restricted in his movements. (他的行动受约束。)

3) This rule has a very restricted application (这条规则的适用范围极为有限。)

4) The government placed restrictions on sales of weapons. (政府对武器销售实行限制。)

23. depict vt. portray (描画, 描述)

1) The painter tried to depict the splendour of the sunset. (画家试图描绘出日落的壮丽景象。)

2) She went on to depict the confusion of departure (她继续描述离开时的混乱情景。)

24. imply v. 暗示, 含有的意思

implied adj. 含蓄的

implication n. 含义

1) I don't imply that you are wrong. (我的意思不是说你错了。)

2) His silence implied consent. (他的缄默表示同意。)

3) I don't understand the implied meaning of this sentence. (我不理解这句话的含义。)

4) The implication of his statement is that I was wrong. (他这句话的含义是我错了。)

25. alternative n. 供选择的东西 adj. 两者择一的; 供选择的

1) He was given the alternative of going on to college or starting to work. (他得在上大学继续求学和开始工作之间作出选择。)

2) Is there any alternative to undergoing a surgical operation? (除外科手术外还有其它办法吗?)

3) You have no alternative but to stay here overnight. (你只好留宿一夜, 别无他法。)

4) We should explore alternative possibilities in solving the problem. (我们应该探求各种供选择的可能性来解决这个问题。)

5) The alternative plans of having a picnic or taking a boat trip put them in a dilemma. (去野餐或者去乘船旅游二者只能择一的计划使他们左右为难。)

本课简介

越来越多的事实证明,暴力电视节目对儿童的成长有不良影响,学龄前儿童受暴力电视节目的危害尤深,因为他们尚不完全具备辨别事实与幻想的能力,对人类行为、道德冲突的内在动机也不理解。儿童常常把从电视中看到的行为用于现实生活之中。父母还应帮助儿童理解他们所看的电视节目,父母也要了解幼儿的老师对与战争和暴力相关连的电视节目及儿童玩具的态度,并与那些有共识的其他儿童的父母一同努力,寻求各种方法取代观看暴力电视节目。

本课语言点

1. For more than a quarter of a century, evidence has been increasing that children's exposure to violence on television has long-lasting effects on their behavior.

a quarter (of) “四分之一”, 如: a quarter of a pound (四分之一磅); a quarter of a century (四分之一世纪); a quarter of a mile (四分之一

英里)；a quarter (of a dollar) (25 美分)；a quarter of a million (25 万)；a quarter (of an hour) (15 分钟)。

...that children's exposure to violence on television...

that 引导的是一个同位语从句，这个同位语从句没有直接跟在名词 evidence 的后面，而是被 has been increasing 隔开了。同位语的作用是对它所说明的名词作进一步解释，说明这个名词指的是谁或什么。如：

1) I had no idea that he told us a lie. (我不知道他对我们说了谎话。)

2) You have to produce enough evidence that he is guilty. (你得拿出足够的证据说明他有罪。)

3) There was little possibility that they would succeed. (他们成功的可能性极小。)

4) There can be no doubt that TV violence affects children. (毫无疑问，暴力电视节目对儿童有不良影响。)

exposure to “暴露于...”，如：

1) The best part of the job was her constant exposure to books. (她这个工作的最大优点是能经常接触书籍。)

have an effect on “对...有作用(影响)”，如：

1) Constant rain had much effect on the harvest. (持续的降雨对收成有很大的影响。)

2) The cement factory has much effect on the environment. (水泥厂对环境的影响很大。)

3) His persuasion had little effect on her. (他的劝说对她没什么作用。)

2. ...the amount of television time allocated each week to violent programs increased significantly.

...the number of violent acts on television...has increased...

上面两个句子中分别用了 amount 和 number 两个词。amount 用来修饰从体积，重量，金额等方面着眼的东西，一般在 of 后接用不可数名词；而 number 则用以修饰可数的人或物。在第一个句子中，amount of 后面用的是不可数名词 time，第二个句子中 number of 后面用的是可数名词 acts. 再看例句：

1) A large amount of money has been spent on this project. (一大笔钱已经花在了这个工程上。)

2) The amount of work assigned to him was formidable. (分配给他做的工作量极大。)

3) The number of students of the university has been increasing. (这所大学的学生人数在增加。)

4) The number of tourists to that place is limited. (去那个地方旅游的人数有限。)

请注意区别 act 和 action 这两个名词。①这两个名词都表示“行为”，“行动”的意思，常可互换使用。act 强调行为的结果，而不涉及行为的动机与性质，常是即兴，瞬间的举动；action 偏重于动作的方式和过程。②act 行为的发出者可以是人也可以是物；action 只是物。③在须用不可数名词表示总的概念时，多用 action，而一般不用 act。如：

1) The time has come for action/act. (采取行动的时间了。)

2) The thoughtless young man did another foolish act. (那个鲁莽的年轻人又做了件傻事。)

3) Every sudden emotion quickens the action of the heart. (每件突如其来的令人激动的事情都能加快心跳。)

4) Actions speak louder than words. (事实胜于雄辩。)

3. Given the amount of time that children watch television, it has become one of the most powerful models they want to follow.

given 在本句中用作介词，意思是 considering, taking into account (考虑到)，在词汇部分我们已作了比较详细的讲解，再看两个例句：

1) Given they are fresh from university, they've done a great job. (考虑到他们刚走出大学校园，他们干得不错。)

2) Given that he has always been dreaming of visiting the great wall, it seems cruel not to take him to Beijing. (他一直梦想游长城，不带他去北京似乎太残酷了。)

除了作“考虑到”解释外，given 还有如下意思：

1) 规定的，特点的 (形容词)

The work must be done within the given time. (工作必须在规定时间内完成。)

2) 假设的; 作为前提的(形容词)

Given the chance, she could have done as well as you have. (如果给他这个机会, 她会干得跟你一样好。)

4. Children naturally often want the toys shown on and advertised during these programs.

Shown on and advertised during these programs 在本句中的作用是分词短语作定语, 相当于被动语态的定语从句, 修饰 toys.

1) Last night, we saw a documentary dubbed in English. (昨晚, 我们看了一部用英文译制的记录片。)

2) The play put on by the first-year students was very good. (一年级学生演出的剧目很好。)

3) The letters written in pencil are from my brother. (那些用铅笔写的信是我弟弟带来的。)

These programs 是 shown on 和 advertised during 这两个词组中的介词的共用宾语。如:

He doesn't care about and has no interest in other people's opinion. (对别人的观点他不在乎也没兴趣。)

5. With these toys, their play tends to be more imitative than imaginative.

With 在本句中表示原因, 意思是“由于, 因”, 如:

1) He is in bed with flu. (他因患流感卧病在床。)

2) Her eyes were dim with tears. (她的双眼因泪水而模糊。)

3) The boy's face was white with nervousness. (那个男孩的脸因紧张而发白。)

tend 的后面接不定式, 意思是“易于, 往往会”, 如:

1) Plants tend to die in hot weather if you don't water them. (植物在炎热天气如不浇水容易枯死。)

2) He tends to get impatient if you ask him more than two questions.
(如果你问他两个以上的问题, 他往往会不耐烦。)

6. The narrow range of most violence-related toys advertised on television jeopardizes the role of play in helping children make better sense of their own feelings and interpret their world.

在第三单元中, 我们已经学过 range 这个词, 意思是“山脉”, “(在某范围内) 变动, 变化”。而在本句中, range 的意思是“范围”, 如:

1) His reading is of very wide range. (他的阅读面很广。)

2) Over the long range, the most important step will be a general tax reform. (从长远看, 最重要的步骤是全面实行税制改革。)

Make sense of 意思是“了解; 弄明白”。如:

1) I can not make any sense of what he says. (他的话我弄不懂。)

2) His lecture helped me make better sense of the poem. (他的讲解帮助我更好地理解这首诗。)

3) I could make no sense of his carelessly written letter. (我看不懂他马马虎虎写的那封信。)

7. Many preschool teachers do not like to have commercially made toy weapons brought into the classroom and welcome hearing your concerns about this matter.

have...toy weapons brought into the classroom (把玩具武器带进教室。)
have sth. done 是极为常见的用法, 如:

1) I need to have my bike repaired. (我需要把自行车修一下。)

2) He had his files destroyed before he left. (在离开前, 他把文件都毁了。)

3) She wanted to have the rooms repainted before moving in. (她想在搬入前把房间重新粉刷一遍。)

welcome 在本举句中作动词用, 这个词也可以作名词和形容词用。请看下面的例句, 注意 welcome 在各例句中的词类。

1) He ran to the door to welcome his friends. (他向门口跑去, 欢迎他的朋友。)

2) Welcome to Beijing. (欢迎到北京来。)

3) Her marriage was not welcomed by the family. (她的婚姻不被家人接受。)

4) They gave her a warm welcome. (他们给她以热烈欢迎。)

5) He received a hero's welcome at the airport. (他在机场受到英雄般的欢迎。)

6) You are welcome to use my bike. (我的自行车你尽管用。)

7) He is a welcome guest. (他是个受欢迎的客人。)

concern about sth. 意思是“对…的关心”，在第九单元中，我们学过 be concerned about. 如：

1) We are all concerned about his education. (我们都关心他的教育。)

2) His parents are very much concerned about his health. (他的父母非常关心他的健康。)

3) My concern about the matter is known to all. (人人知道我对这件事的关心。)

本课主要词组

1. a quarter of

2. expose to

3. have an effect on

4. allocate...to

5. point out

6. distinguish from

7. tend to

8. make sense of

9. apply...to

10. be crazy about

11. put together

12. ask sb. about sth.

13. have sth. done

14. concern about

15. an alternative to sth.

16. look for

Text B Why don't girls think like boys?

短语表达

1. do well

Many people believe that boys do well in science.

Mr. Smith didn't expect that he could do so well in industrial engineering.

2. in one's opinion

In my opinion, what he said could be true.

Parents should be friendly with their children in his opinion.

3. be good at

He is good at English, but he is better at computer.

She is good at imitating other people's way of talking.

4. according to

According to some doctors, only 1 out of 20 patients who had lung cancer could survive.

According to the text, aggression in boys is caused by mothers.

5. on the average

On the average, girls score higher on tests that measure vocabulary, spelling, and memory.

We made 65 miles an hour on the average.

6. be determined by

People's abilities are not determined by sex.

The rise and fall of the prices is determined by supply and demand.

7. be headed by

One of the scientific research teams was headed by Mr. Watson.

This company is headed by John's twin brother.

8. be ready to

He is always ready to help people in need.

She is not ready to take on that kind of responsibility.

9. take notes

He is amazed to see that students take notes on what he says in class.

He decided to take notes of the development of the political events.

10. lean against/on

She felt weak, so leaned against the wall.

He leaned the bike against a tree.

11. insist upon/on

He insisted on paying the meal.

Most companies insist upon having an interview before they accept an employee.

Unit16 (第47讲—第49讲)

Text A Heart Disease: Treat or Prevent?

本课主要词组

1. western adj. 西方的; 西部的

Westerner n. 西方人

1) The sun began to turn red on the western horizon. (太阳在西方地平线上开始变成红色。)

2) I've just had four years in Western Nigeria. (我刚在西尼日利亚呆了四年。)

3) The impact of western technology on that country was incredible. (西方技术对那个国家的影响是难以置信的。)

4) Many Westerners eat too much food rich in sugar and fat, they may die of heart illnesses at an early age. (许多西方人吃太多高糖、高脂的食品, 他们可能在年轻时就会死于心脏疾病。)

5) Westerners eat with forks and knives, while we Chinese eat with chopsticks. (西方人用刀叉吃饭, 而我们中国人用筷子吃饭。)

2. alarm n. 惊恐; 担心; 闹铃 v. frighten (使惊恐; 向...报警)

alarming adj. worrying, disquieting (使人惊恐的、令人担心的)

1) There is no cause for alarm. (不必恐慌。)

2) It is necessary that you install a burglar alarm. (你有必要装防盗警报器。)

3) They were alarmed to find the old lady dead. (他们发现老太太死了, 大惊失色。)

4) The world's forests are shrinking at an alarming rate. (世界森林正以惊人的速度减少。)

3. surgery n. 外科, 手术

surgical adj. 外科的; 外科手术的

surgeon 外科医生

1) The patient had suffered a heart attack while under going surgery. (在进行外科手术时, 那位病人心脏病发作。)

2) The doctor is doing a minor surgery on Mr. Wang's mouth. (医生正在给王先生的口部施行小手术。)

3) Some people can have their vision restored by a surgical operation. (有些人可以通过外科手术恢复视力。)

4) He works as a brain surgeon in a hospital. (他在一家医院做脑外科医生。)

4. technology n. 技术, 工艺

technological adj. 技术的, 工艺的

1) Science has contributed much to modern technology. (科学对现代技术作出了很大贡献。)

2) The advances in science and technology are accelerating. (科学技术正在加速发展。)

3) Our belief in the power of modern technology won't change. (我们对现代技术威力的信念不会改变)

4) We need to acquire adequate modern scientific and technological knowledge to meet the challenge of the 21st century. (为了迎接二十一世纪的挑战, 我们需要掌握足够的现代科学及技术知识。)

5) They made another technological breakthrough in the field of petroleum recovering. (他们在石油开采方面又取得了技术突破。)

5. advance v. 前进; 取得进展 n. 前进, 进展, 预付

1) We have greatly advanced in our understanding of the human brain. (在对人脑的认识方面我们已取得重大进展。)

2) The university took every opportunity to advance its prestige. (那所大学抓住每一个机会提高自己的声誉。)

3) The date of the meeting was advanced by two weeks. (会议的日期提前了两周。)

4) Einstein advanced the theory of relativity. (爱因斯坦提出了相对论的理论。)

5) As autumn advanced, the old lady became worse. (秋深了, 老妇人的病情变得更加糟糕。)

6) Their team has advanced to the semifinals. (他们队已进入半决赛。)

7) These young workers have advanced greatly in skill. (这些青工的技术已有很大提高。)

8) Material advance and spiritual enrichment should both be emphasized. (物质进步和精神充实都应强调。)

9) Remarkable advances have been made recently in medicine. (近来医学方面取得了令人瞩目的进步。)

10) He arrived half an hour in advance. (他早到了半小时。)

6. enable v. 使能够, 使可能

这个动词的用法是在其宾语后接不定式: enable sb to do sth

1) Their help enabled the children to get home safe and sound. (他们的帮助使孩子们能安然无恙地到家。)

2) Planes enable people to travel long distances in a short time.
(飞机能使人们在短时间内做长途旅行。)

3) His early training enabled him to face everything with confidence.
(他的早期训练使他能自信地面对一切。)

请注意区别 unable 和 enable. unable 是一个形容词, 通常用 be unable to do sth. 意思是“不能够做某事。”

He was unable to give us a definite answer. (他不能给我们一个明确答复。)

7. benefit n. 益处 v. 有益于; 得益

beneficial adj. useful 有益的

1) Internet has brought innumerable benefits to people. (互联网给人们带来了无数的益处。)

2) The changes are to our benefit. (这些改变对我们有利。)

3) For the benefit of those who were not here last time, I'll go over what I said first. (为了那些上次没来的人, 我将先重复我说过话。)

4) This policy will benefit working families. (这一政策将使职工家庭得到好处。)

5) Neither of them will benefit from the insurance company. (他们俩谁也不会从保险公司得到好处。)

6) Sunshine and rain are beneficial to the growth of the plants.
(阳光和雨水有益于这些植物的生长。)

7) Fresh air is beneficial to your health. (新鲜空气有益你的健康。)

8. disadvantage n. 不利地位, 不利条件; 缺点

disadvantaged 处于不利地位的; 贫困的

advantage 有利条件; 优点, 好处

1) It put us under a serious disadvantage. (这使我们处于极为不利的地位。)

2) The disadvantage of this plan was that it needed more fund. (这个计划的缺点是它需要更多的资金。)

3) Those pupils who were inattentive in class would be at a disadvantage. (那些上课不专心的小学生将会处于不利地位。)

4) It was to our disadvantage to refuse this proposal. (拒绝这个建议对我们不利。)

5) These disadvantaged families need immediate help. (这些贫困家庭急需帮助。)

6) The new system has a lot of advantages over the old one. (新系统与旧系统相比有许多优点。)

7) It might be to your advantage to quit this job. (辞掉这份工作也许对你有利。)

8) His experience gives him the advantage over us. (他的经验使他比我们更有优势。)

9) They took advantage of her lack of business sense to cheat her. (他们利用她缺少商业意识来欺骗她。)

10) We must take advantage of this opportunity to practise our oral English. (我们必须利用这个良机练一练英语口语。)

9. resource n. 常用复数 资源, 财力; 应付的办法

1) The North-eastern area of China is rich in timber resources. (中国的东北地区木材资源丰富。)

2) Oil is Kuwait's most important resource. (石油是科威特最重要的资源。)

3) We don't have adequate human resources for this project. (我们没有足够的人力资源来完成这个项目。)

4) He spent all his resources on educating his only son. (他把所有的财力都花在了独生子的教育上了。)

5) He is a man of great resource. (他是个足智多谋的人。)

6) We are now at the end of our resources. (我们现在正是智穷才尽。)

10. prevent v. 阻止, 妨碍, 预防

prevention n. 预防, 妨碍

1) Nothing would prevent us from going to help them. (什么也阻止不了我们去帮助他们。)

2) The rain prevented us from having the match. (那场雨使我们不能举行比赛。)

3) This medicine will prevent you from catching cold. (这种药可以使你预防感冒。)

4) Keeping dry is a prevention against cold. (保持干燥可以预防感冒。)

5) Prevention is better than cure. (防病胜过医病。)

11. equip v. 配备, 装备, 赋予

equipment n. 装备, 设备

1) They are going to build a park equipped with a playground, ball fields and a museum.

(他们准备建造一个设有游戏场, 球场和博物馆的公园。)

2) Not all microscopes are equipped to do this. (不是所有的显微镜都能做这件事。)

3) He is equipped with a deep sense of justice. (他具有深切的正义感。)

4) This is an important piece of equipment. (这是一件重要设备。)

5) They exported a million dollars worth of electrical equipment. (他们出口了价值一百万美元的电气设备。)

12. emphasis n. 强调; 重点

emphasize v. 强调, 着重

1) The report placed particular emphasis on the need to improve agriculture. (报告特别强调必须改进农业生产。)

2) Much emphasis is being placed on learning those basic skills. (对基本技能的学习正在得以强调。)

3) He emphasized the importance of being honest. (他强调诚实的重要性。)

4) John emphasized a point I had made previously. (约翰强调了我此前提出的一个观点。)

13. stress n. 压力; 重音; 强调 v. 强调; 着重

1) Not all of us can cope with the stresses of modern life. (并非我们每一个人都能应付现代生活的紧张。)

2) Continued stress may result in mental illnesses. (持续的紧张可能导致精神疾病。)

3) My parents put great stress on good manners. (我父母很强调要有好的行为举止。)

4) The teacher said the stress should be on the second syllable. (老师说重音在第二个音节上。)

5) He stressed the need for better education. (他强调需要更好的教育。)

6) I ought to stress that this was only a trial balloon. (我应该强调这只是个试飞方案。)

14. lack n. / v. 缺乏, 不足, 没有

lacking adj. 缺少的

1) He abandoned his research work for lack of fund. (由于缺乏资金, 他放弃了他的研究工作。)

2) There is a lack of protein in his diet. (他的饮食中蛋白质不足。)

3) If you lack anything, please let me know. (如果你缺少什么东西, 请告诉我。)

4) In any case, he doesn't lack for money. (总之, 他并不缺钱。)

5) Money was lacking for the plan. (此项计划缺钱。)

6) He is lacking in courage. (他勇气不足。)

请注意区别 short of 和 lack of. short 是形容词, 而 lack 是名词。

1) We are short of hands. (我们缺少人手。)

We lack nothing but encouragement. (我们只缺少鼓励。)

15. connect v. 连接

connection n. 连接, 关系

1) the bridge connects the island with / to the mainland. (这座桥连接着这个岛屿与大陆。)

2) Please connect me with Shanghai. (请给我接通上海。)

3) He doesn't know anything about the connection between the moon and the tides. (他对月球与潮汐的关系一无所知。)

4) He has no connection with the criminal case. (他与那件刑事案件无关。)

16. sufficient adj 足够的, 充分的

1) The food is sufficient to feed 10 people. (这些食物足够十个人吃。)

2) Japan has a sufficient reserve of oil. (日本有充足的石油储备。)

请注意区别 adequate, enough 和 sufficient. 三个词都有“足够的”意思。enough 为一般用语, 有时可与 adequate 互换。enough 常用来表示数量或程度, 不宜用于表示性质、质量; 而 adequate 既可用于描述数量或程度, 也可用于描述性质、质量。sufficient 与 enough 同义, 前者多用于书面语。

1) Do you have enough time?

2) His income is not adequate to his needs.

We haven't sufficient time to do the work.

Unit16 (第 47 讲—第 49 讲)

本课简介

心脏病在西方国家已成了健康的头号杀手, 仅在英国, 每天就有约 400 人死于心脏病。于是人们投入大量的人力、物力施行心脏手术。心脏手术无疑使无数患者受益, 但是过分强调对心脏病进行手术治疗则带来了三个弊端。其一是对心脏病的预防不加重视; 其二是医疗费用攀升; 其三是由于有现成的设备和技术, 医生们往往会给不需要动手术的病人做手术。近期的医学研究强调, 人们必须对引发心脏病的因素, 如压力、抽烟、缺少体育运动等加以重视。生活方式与心脏病之间是有联系的, 因此, 人们意识到自己必须为自身的健康负责, 改变饮食习惯, 减轻生活压力, 减少抽烟, 多多运动都是预防心脏病的有效方式。预防心脏病比治疗心脏病更重要。

本课语言点

1. One of the greatest killers in the Western World is heart disease.

请注意主谓一致的问题

A: one of +复数名词做主语时, 后面的谓语用单数形式:

1) One of the longest rivers in the world is in China. (世界上最长的河流之一在中国。)

2) One of the most famous circuses in East Europe is coming to China. (东欧最有名的马戏团之一将来中国。)

3) One of the most expensive cars in the parking lot belongs to Mr. Watson. (停车场里最昂贵的汽车之一是华生先生的。)

B: one of +复数名词+定语从句时, 定语从句一般被看作修饰复数名词, 因此从句中的谓语要用复数形式。例如:

1) This is one of the best films that have released this year. (这是今年发行的最佳影片之一。)

2) Mr. Wang is one of those people who are hard to deal with. (王先生属于那种很难打交道的人。)

3) He is one of those persons who always think they are right. (他属于那些总认为自己正确的人。)

2. The death rate from the disease has been increasing at an alarming speed for the past thirty years.

本句中的时态是现在完成进行时, 由 has (have) been 加现在分词构成, 主要表现以前这一段时间里一直在进行的一个动作, 这个动作也可能仍然在进行, 如:

1) What book have you been reading recently? (你最近在看什么书?)

2) How have you been getting on with your work? (工作进行得怎么样?)

3) All these years they have been contributing articles to our newspaper. (这些年来他们一直为我们报纸写稿。)

at an alarming speed 的意思是“以惊人的速度”

1) We are driving at the speed of 60 miles an hour. (我们正以每小时 60 英里的速度行驶。)

2) He is running at top speed. (他正以最快速度奔跑。)

3) Tom is working at it at full speed. (汤姆正在拼命地干。)

4) He found the small town changing at an astonishing speed. (他发现那个小城正以惊人的速度变化着。)

3. Today in Britain, for example, about four hundred people a day die of heart disease.

在英语中 die of 和 die from 都表示“死于”，这两者之间的区别在于：

die of 通常指因疾病、情感而死。如：

1) The lady died of grief after the death of her husband. (丈夫去世后，这位女士也因哀伤而死。)

2) In that country many children died of malnutrition. (在那个国家，许多孩子死于营养不良。)

3) I'm dying of boredom. (我烦死了。)

4) Many sheep died of starvation in the thick snow. (许多绵羊在厚厚的积雪中饿死。)

die from 通常指死于意外的原因及不正常的原因。如：

1) My grandfather died from a heart attack. (我爷爷死于心脏病。)

2) She died from a traffic accident. (她死于一场交通事故。)

3) He is said to have died from working too hard till late every night. (据说他因每晚熬夜而劳累致死。)

4) The workman died from the explosion. (那位工人因发生爆炸而死。)

4. Western health-care systems are spending huge sums of money on the surgical treatment of the disease.

首先我们看一下，spend...on 和 spend ... in 的区别。它们共同的意思是“把...花费在...上”。

当 spend 的宾语是金钱时，spend on 后面接名词，spend in 后面接动名词，in 有时可省略。

当 spend 的宾语是时间时，spend on 和 spend in 后都可接名词或动名词，接名词时意思相同；接动名词时 spend on 的含意是“把时间花在…上”，spend in 的含意是“在…上花了时间”。如：

1) He spends nearly one third of his monthly income (in) buying books. (他把每月收入的三分之一用来买书。)

2) She spent a great deal of money on the new car. (她花了许多钱买这辆新车。)

3) He doesn't spend much time on his homework. (他花在做作业上的时间不多。)

4) She spent three hours (in) watching TV. (她看电视耗掉了三个小时。)

我们再来看一下 cost, spend, pay, take 的区别。

spend 和 pay 的主语只能是人；cost 的主语是物。take 在接时间主语也可以是人。take 和 cost 还可以用动词不定式或动词不定式短语作真实主语，而 it 作形式主语。

pay 的搭配范围较窄，多接金钱；cost 的搭配范围很宽，除了金钱和时间外还可以接劳力、精力、财富、健康甚至生命等。

spend 可接动名词，而 cost, pay, take 只接动词不定式。

spend, take, pay 可用于被动结构；而 cost 不能用于被动结构。

1) That bike cost me 350 yuan. (那辆自行车花了我 350 元。)

2) The work cost me a lot of time and effort. (这项工作花了我大量的时间和精力。)

3) Careless driving cost him his life. (粗心驾车使他丧了命。)

4) I paid him 200yuan for this painting. (我付他 200 元买了这幅画。)

5) They refused to pay us the money. (他们拒绝给我们付钱。)

6) They spend all his earnings. (他挣多少花多少。)

7) They spend a lot of money on advertising. (他们花大笔的钱做广告。)

8) Two hours a day were spent in practising. (每天花两个小时进行训练。)

9) The work took us a week to finish. (我们花了一星期的时间完成这项工作。)

10) It takes him an hour to finish his homework every day. (他每天要用一小时完成作业。)

5. This emphasis on treatment is clearly associated with the technological advances that have taken place in the past 10 to 15 years.

在 emphasis 的后面通常接介词 on, 常用于搭配使用的动词有 place, put, lay 等, 如:

He places (puts, lays) great emphasis on education. (他特别强调教育的重要。)

associate with 意思是“使…联系在一起”, “交往”。

1) We naturally associate the name of Darwin with the doctrine of evolution. (我们很自然地把达尔文的名字和进化论联系在一起。)

2) They were closely associated with each other during the war. (战争期间, 他们之间关系密切。)

3) Rain fall is associated with humidity. (下雨与湿度有关。)

4) They prefer to associate with young people. (他们更喜欢与年轻人交往。)

6. ...modern technology has enabled doctors to develop new surgical techniques and procedures.

请注意本句中的 enable 是动词, 其用法是 enable sb. to do sth. 在词汇部分我们已有详细讲解, 再看两个例句:

1) His patience enabled him to make the child tell him the truth. (他的耐心使他能让那孩子对他说实话。)

2) His efficiency enabled him to finish the work a head of schedule. (他的高效率使他提前完成这项工作。)

7. ...it causes the costs of general hospital care to rise.

本句中 cause 用作动词, cause sb. to do sth. (使某人做某事), cause sth. to happen (使某事发生), 如:

1) What caused you to change your mind? (什么使你改变了主意?)

2) What caused the boat to turn over? (是什么致使翻船?)

1) His laziness caused him to fall behind others. (他的懒惰使他落在了别人后面。)

句中的 cost 不是动词, 而是个名词, 意思是“费用、开销”。

1) The price is high because production costs are very great. (价格昂贵, 因为生产成本极大。)

2) There is no way to reduce the living cost. (没有办法降低生活费用。)

8. After hospitals buy the expensive equipment that is necessary for modern heart surgery, they must try to recover the money they have spent.

本句中的 equipment 是不可数名词, 不能在后面加 s. equipment 后面的谓语动词也用单数形式。

1) The modern equipment enables them to double their production. (现代化的设备使他们能把产量翻倍。)

2) They decided to buy some new equipment. (他们决定购买新设备。)

3) Advanced equipment is necessary for this work. (干这个活需要先进的设备。)

还请注意, recover 在本句中的意思是 get back (回收)。

1) We must try to recover lost time. (我们必须设法弥补失去的时间。)

2) They recovered increased costs through higher prices. (他们通过提高价格来补偿上涨的成本。)

9. In the past, people tended to think that it was sufficient for good health to have a good doctor who could be relied on to know exactly what to do when they became ill.

That 引导的是一个宾语从句。在这个宾语从句中, it 做形式主语, 真正的主语是 to have a good doctor. Who 引导的是一个定语从句, 修饰 doctor. what to do 做 know 的宾语。这句话的意思是, “过去, 人们往往认为有个可以信赖

的好医生就足以使他们有好身体，因为这个医生知道在他们生病时究竟该做什么。”

本课主要词组

1. at an alarming speed
2. die of
3. spend money on
4. emphasis on
5. associate with
6. take place
7. enable sb. to do sth.
8. increase in
9. benefit from
10. point out
11. cause...to...
12. be encouraged to do sth.
13. not at all
14. pay attention to
15. as a result
16. rely on
17. take responsibility for
18. succeed in
19. take up
20. be aware of
21. instead of

22. decrease in

Text B Dieting Your Way to Health

短语表达

1. consider doing sth.

He is considering changing his present job.

Have you ever considered moving to the suburb?

2. go on a diet

She decided to go on a diet to keep her weight down.

The doctor suggested that he should go on a diet to lose some weight.

3. sometime

I remember meeting him sometime two years ago.

I believe we will meet again sometime in the future.

4. regardless of

He went to see the old lady every week regardless of wind or rain.

These pineapples are sold for the same price regardless of their size.

5. have...in common

The twin brothers had no interests in common.

6. do harm to

Excessive drinking and smoking will do harm to your health.

His lies will surely do harm to his integrity.

7. slow down

It is dangerous for you to drive so fast. Please slow down.

I have to persuade my father to slow down a bit. He has been too busy recently.

8. convert to

The food we eat is converted into energy.

After Einstein finished using the tube of shaving cream, he reverted to using plain water.

9. lose interest in

If you don't encourage him he will soon lose interest in this project.

He said he had long lost interest in playing video games.

10. go on

He was not aware of what was going on around him.

It is so noisy outside. What is going on?

11. resistance to

The doctor did not expect he would have resistance to this antibiotic.

This child's resistance to illness is too low.

12. be essential

English is essential for his diplomatic work.

Regular exercise is essential for his recovery.

13. have difficulty doing sth.

He had difficulty making himself understood.

The young man had difficulty in reading these technical drawings.

14. suffer from

Some people suffer from heart illness at an early age.

He is suffering from breath difficulty.

15. take the place of

Who is going to take the place of Miss Li when she is away?

Artificial sweeteners are recommended to take the place of sugar and other natural sweeteners.

16. lead to

His explanation led to great confusion.

17. result in

The workers' strike resulted in the management yielding to their demand.

His lack of business sense resulted in his bankruptcy.

18. provide sb. with sth.

They will be provided with all the daily necessities.

Nature provides the wild animals with the necessary safeguards.

19. substitute for

There is no substitute for good food and exercise.

He substituted for the worker who was ill.

Unit17 (第 50 讲—第 52 讲)

Text A Panic and Its Effects

本课主要单词

1. panic vi. 恐慌, 惊慌 n. 恐慌, 惊慌

panic-stricken adj. 惊慌失措的

1) The crowd panicked at the ringing of the siren. (听到警报器响, 人群惊慌失措。)

2) Don't panic, Sit still keep calm. (不要惊慌, 安静地坐着保持冷静。)

3) The little boy panicked when thinking about the punishment he might get from his master. (想到主人可能会给他的惩罚, 那个小男孩惊恐不安。)

4) We didn't want to start a panic on the stock exchange. (我们不想引起证券交易恐慌。)

5) The panic-stricken mother is looking for her child. (那位惊恐万状的母亲在寻找她的孩子。)

6) The panic-stricken crowd rushed to the emergency exit. (惊恐万状的人群朝紧急出口跑去。)

(请注意,当panic用做动词时,其过去式是panicked,进行式是panicking。)

2. severe adj. serious (严重的); strict (严厉的); 艰难的

1) He felt a severe pain in his left leg. (他感到左腿一阵剧痛。)

2) They had a severe shortage of food. (他们的食品严重短缺。)

3) He is very severe with his children. (他对孩子们很严厉。)

4) He had a severe look on his face. (他脸上神色严肃。)

5) A severe competition is waiting for them. (激烈的竞争在等待着他们。)

6) Severe weather conditions hindered the rescue. (风雨交加的天气妨碍了营救。)

3. accompany vt. 陪伴; 伴随; 为...伴奏

1) She asked me to accompany her to the supermarket. (她让我陪她去超市。)

2) He was accompanied to the party by a friend. (他由朋友陪同去参加聚会。)

3) She came out of the house accompanied by her husband. (她在丈夫的陪同下走出了那座房屋。)

4) A high fever often accompanies a mild infection. (轻微的炎症常常伴有高烧。)

4. shortness n. (长度、距离或持续的时间)短; 缺乏, 不足

1) The shortness of the trip relieved his anxiety. (行程的短暂减轻了他的焦虑。)

2) Shortness of breath is one of the symptoms of a heart attack.
(气急是心脏病的症状之一。)

short adj. 短的；近的；不足的

1) He has his hair cut short. (他剪短了头发。)

2) The bus stop is a short walk from our school. (汽车站离我们学校不远，走一会儿就到。)

3) Water is short in this area. (这个地区缺水。)

4) We are short of hands, will you come to help us? (我们缺少人手，你能来帮我们吗?)

5) They were running short of food. (他们的食品快吃完了。)

5. nearby adj. adv. 附近的；在附近

1) He was sent to the nearby hospital by his fellow workers. (他被同事送进了附近的医院。)

2) She threw the key into the nearby bushes. (她把钥匙扔进了附近的灌木丛。)

3) There is a supermarket nearby. (附近有一家超市。)

4) The car stopped nearby. (汽车在附近停下。)

6. diagnose v. 诊断；调查分析原因；判断

dia-是一个前缀，通常表示“通过；在两者之间”的意思。如

diagram (图表，图样)；dialogue (对话)

1) The doctor diagnosed the illness as flu. (医生诊断这病为流行性感冒。)

2) The expert is diagnosing the pupil's reading difficulties. (专家正在找寻这个学生阅读困难的原因。)

3) It is necessary to diagnose the cause of the economic and political decline. (有必要对经济和政治衰退的原因进行分析。)

diagnosis n. 诊断

1) He is sure his diagnosis will be confirmed. (他肯定自己的诊断会得以证实。)

2) The boy's fever led to a diagnosis of pneumonia. (那男孩的发烧被诊断为肺炎所致。)

7. moreover adv. 而且, 此外

1) I don't want to go swimming and, moreover, it is not warm enough. (我不想去游泳, 再说天气也不够暖和。)

2) The proposal was not well thought out; moreover, it was impractical. (这个建议本身就考虑得不周全, 再说也不实际。)

8. conduct v. 处理, 管理; 指挥; 传导 n. 举止, 行为

1) They are conducting a survey of the region. (他们正对那一地区进行调查。)

2) He is conducting the Boston Symphony Orchestra. (他正在指挥波士顿交响乐队。)

3) Copper conducts electricity. (铜导电。)

4) His conduct at the dinner party was disgraceful. (他在晚宴上的举止很丢人。)

5) The government's conduct of the affair was satisfactory. (政府对这件事的处理是令人满意的。)

9. disclose v. reveal (使显露; 揭露, 泄露)

1) The surgeon took off his cap and surgical mask, disclosing a young and smart face. (外科医生除去手术帽和口罩, 露出了一张年轻帅气的脸。)

2) Make sure that he won't disclose the information to anybody. (确保他不会把消息泄露给任何人。)

3) He reluctantly disclosed his views about this issue. (他很不情愿地透露了自己对这一议题的看法。)

10. recurrent adj. happening many times (一再发生的; 复发的)

recur v. happen again (再发生, 再现; 回归)

re-是一个前缀，意思是 again（再次），如：recall（回忆），renew（更新）；restore（恢复）；revisit（重游）。

cur 是个词根，意思是 run（流，跑），如：excursion（远足），occur（发生），concurrent（同时的，一致的）

-ent 是一个形容词后缀，如：ardent（热情的），obedient（服从的），prudent（谨慎的）

1) We should pay attention to this recurrent spelling mistake.（我们应该注意这个经常发生的拼写错误。）

2) The recurrent dream really disturbed him.（那个一再出现的梦的确令他不安。）

3) If this cheating recurs, you will be expelled from school.（如果这样的作弊行为再发生，你将被开除出校。）

4) His illness is likely to recur.（他的病可能复发。）

5) Let's recur to what you mentioned just now.（让我们回到你刚才提到的话题上。）

11. symptom n. 征候，征兆

1) Fever is a symptom of illness.（发烧是患病的一种症状。）

2) Most infections are contagious before any symptoms are noticed.（许多传染病在发现症状之前都已具有传染性。）

3) The common symptom in these patients was poor appetite.（这些病人的共同症状是胃口不好。）

12. bear v. 忍受；负担；结（果实），生（孩子）

1) It was painful of course but I bore it.（这当然很痛苦，但我忍受住了。）

2) It would be unjust for him to bear full responsibility for this accident.（让他为这起事故负全部责任是不公正的。）

3) She had borne him a daughter.（她为他生了个女儿。）

4) Some plants only bear fruit once every 25 years.（有些植物每25年才结一次果。）

请注意 bear, endure, stand, tolerate, put up with 的区别。这几个词或词组的共同意思是“忍受”或“容忍”。

bear 和 stand 主要指对饥寒、疼痛、不幸、损失、困难等的忍受和承受；endure 主要指对重大灾祸和困难的长时间地忍受；tolerate 主要指容忍和自己的愿望相反的事；put up with 指某些不愉快的或有轻微伤害的事情。

bear 多用于强调忍受的能力，不太强调其态度；endure 则强调默默地、无怨言地忍受，但不屈服；stand 强调自我约束、不屈不挠；tolerate 强调宽恕和耐力。

bear 是个普通用语，而 stand, put up with 多用于口语中，endure 比较正式，语气较强。

1) I can't bear / stand black tea. (我喝不惯红茶。)

2) The pain was almost more than he could bear. (疼痛几乎使他不能忍受。)

3) She had endured great pain for several years. (她已忍受了几年极大的痛苦。)

4) I cannot put up with your behavior any longer. (我再也不能忍受你的行为了。)

5) The school cannot tolerate cheating on exams. (学校不容许作弊。)

13. victim n. 牺牲品, 受害者

1) He was a victim of the second world war. (他是第二次世界大战的受害者。)

2) They are trying to give some help to those flood victims. (他们正试图给水灾难民提供帮助。)

3) After about two weeks, the victim's hair started to fall out. (大约两周后, 受害人开始掉头发。)

14. uneasy adj. 心神不安的, 担心的, 忧虑的

1) He is uneasy about his future. (他为自己的前途担忧。)

2) She looked uneasy but promised to follow his advice. (她看上去很不安, 但答应听他的劝告。)

3) She had an uneasy feeling that she was unlikely to get the job.
(她有一种不安的感觉, 觉得自己不可能得到那份工作。)

4) Beneath his unease I sensed a nice nature. (在他拘谨的外表下,
我感到他有一颗善良的心。)

5) They worried a lot about the social unease. (他们对社会的不安定
感到焦虑。)

15. claim v. 声称, 主张; 对...提出要求, 索取 n. 主张; 断
言

1) One organization has claimed responsibility for the bombing. (已
有一个组织声称这次爆炸是他们干的。)

2) She claimed to have told the truth. (她声称她说的是实话。)

3) He claimed that he had nothing to do with them. (他声称自己与他
们毫无关系。)

4) No one came to claim on this box. (没人来认领这个盒子。)

5) An old man claimed the watch. (一位老人认领了那块手表。)

6) The matter claims our attention. (这事需要我们予以注意。)

7) They have put forward a claim for compensation. (他们已经提出索
赔。)

8) Having made such a bold claim, she finds it hard to admit she was
wrong. (作出了如此大胆的断言, 她发现要承认自己错了很难。)

9) His claim to the property was denied. (他对财产的所有权被否决了。)

16. multiplicity n. 多种多样, 多样性

1) We are all amazed at the multiplicity of the nature. (大自然的
多样性令我们大家惊奇。)

2) They found a multiplicity of errors in the article. (他们在文章
中发现了许多错误。)

3) How could he cope with a multiplicity of duties. (他怎能应付这
繁多的职责?)

multiple adj. 多个的, 多种的; 许多的

1) He got a multiple entry visa. (他签到了多次入境签证。)

2) They have made multiple achievements in the past five years. (在过去的五年中, 他们取得了种种成就。)

17. endanger v. 危害

请注意这个词是由动词前缀 en-加名词 danger 构成的, 英语中, 这一类词很多, 如 encourage (鼓励), enlist (入伍; 协助), enrage (激怒), entrust (委托) 等等。

1) His health is endangered by overwork. (他的健康因劳累过度而受到损害。)

2) They claimed that the herbicides would not endanger human life. (他们声称这些除草剂不会危及人的生命。)

18. disrupt v. 使破裂; 扰乱

1) The war disrupted the economy. (战争扰乱了经济。)

2) Traffic was disrupted by the snow storm. (交通因暴风雪而中断。)

3) Their misunderstanding disrupted the partnership. (他们之间的误解使他们散伙。)

disruption n. 破裂, 混乱

1) The whole factory was in disruption. (整个工厂一片混乱。)

2) The incident led to the disruption of the family. (那件事导致了家庭的破裂。)

Unit17 (第50讲—第52讲)

19. eventually adv. 终于, 最终

eventual adj. 最后的, 结果的

1) He eventually realized that he was wrong. (他终于意识到自己错了。)

2) They eventually took over the company. (他们终于接管了那家公司。)

3) His mistake led to his eventual dismissal. (他的错误致使他最终被解雇。)

4) He is sure about his eventual success. (他肯定自己最终会成功。)

20. confirm v. 证实, 肯定; 批准, 确认

1) You need to confirm your reservations 48 hours in advance. (你需要提前 48 小时确定预订。)

2) The rumor is confirmed. (谣传被证实了。)

3) Her remarks confirmed me in my belief that the young man was innocent.

(她的话使我进一步认定那个年轻男子是清白的。)

4) The United Nations has confirmed the treaty. (联合国已批准了这项条约。)

本课简介

越来越多的美国人会在一生中一次或多次地经历惊吓症。惊吓症的症状与心脏病的症状极其相似, 于是得了惊吓症的人往往误认为自己得了心脏病。那么惊吓症与心脏病如何区别? 心脏病的症状只是气急和疼痛, 而惊吓症则会有如下的表现: 1) 对一些极寻常的情况惊恐不安; 2) 气急、胸痛。心跳加快, 突然发抖, 周围的人或物变得虚幻; 3) 恐惧死亡或疯狂; 4) 发病年龄在 20-30 岁; 5) 女性多于男性; 6) 症状多样化; 7) 大量饮酒和使用药物的人多发。惊吓症虽然不会对人的生命产生直接危害, 但是专家们建议最好向医生咨询, 如果确实患有惊吓症, 则需要心理和药物治疗。

本课主要语言点

1. ...suddenly had severe pains in her chest accompanied by shortness of breath.

哪个部位的疼痛, 通常用 pain in...来表示, 比如: a pain in the abdomen (腹部疼痛), a pain in the chest (胸部疼痛)。当然我们也可以用 abdomen pain, chest pain 来表达。而 a pain in the neck 则是指“令人讨厌或恼火的人或事”。

pain 是个常用词, 可以做名词用也可以做动词用。

1) No pains, no gains. (不劳则无获。)

2) Father went to great pains to stress the importance of independence. (父亲煞费苦心地强调独立性的重要性。)

3) The death of his daughter gave the old man much pain. (女儿的去世令那位老人极为悲痛。)

4) My left leg is paining. (我的左腿痛。)

5) It pains her to see him thinner from illness. (看到他因病日渐消瘦, 她心里很难过。)

be accompanied by 意为“由…伴随”; 如:

1) He burst into the room accompanied by his body guards. (他在保镖的伴随下闯进屋里。)

2) Pneumonia is often accompanied by fever and cough. (肺炎常常伴有发烧和咳嗽。)

2. Her husband immediately rushed Anne to a nearby hospital where her pains were diagnosed as having been caused by panic, and not a heart attack.

请注意“rush”在本句中的用法。在此作及物动词用。如:

1) He rushed the tourists round the sights. (他带着游客们匆匆参观了各处名胜。)

2) The ambulance rushed him to a hospital. (救护车火速送他进医院。)

3) Let me think about it and don't rush me. (让我把这件事想一下, 别催我。)

在大多数情况下 rush 作不及物动词和名词用。如:

1) The rain rushed against the house. (暴雨冲打着屋子。)

2) The reporters are rushing to the scene. (记者们正赶往现场。)

3) Blood rushed to his face when the young man offered to buy him a pudding. (当那位年轻人提出给他买个蛋糕时, 血涌上了他的脸。)

4) There is no rush. (不用急急忙忙的。)

5) She felt a sudden rush of dizziness. (她感到一阵眩晕。)

6) He went to America during the Californian gold rush. (他在加利福尼亚淘金热时去了美国。)

nearby 可以做形容词用，也可以做副词用，在本句中用作形容词，修饰其后的名词 hospital.

diagnose...as... 把...诊断为...，如：

1) His failure was diagnosed as being caused by carelessness. (他的失败被判定为由粗心所致。)

2) The doctor diagnosed her illness as diabetes. (医生诊断她的病是糖尿病。)

因为句子中的 as 是介词，在介词后要用动名词，又由于需用被动语态，所以出现了 having been caused by 的形式。

3. More and more Americans nowadays are having panic attacks like the one experienced by Anne Peters.

本句中的 like 是一个出现频率很高的词，在下列例句中，like 用作介词：

1) She is like a bird. (如像鸟儿一样。)

2) It was not like him to forget her birthday. (他才不会把她的生日忘记呢。)

3) I feel like sleeping. (我想睡觉。)

4) It looks like a clear day tomorrow. (明天看来会是晴天。)

5) He acts like a grown up person. (他的举止行动像成人。)

experienced by Anne Peters 在句子中做定语，修饰 the one .

1) I don't like the one chosen by him. (我不喜欢他选择的那一个。)

2) The camera bought by Xiao Li is stolen. (小李买的那个相机被偷了。)

4. The symptoms of panic attacks bear such remarkable similarity to those of heart attacks that many victims believe that they are indeed having a heart attack.

通常我们用 so...that... 表示“如此……以致于……”。本句中的 such，是因为 so 只能用来修饰形容词和副词，而名词（名词短语）则要用 such 来修饰，如：

1) He ran so fast that no one could catch up with him. (他跑得这样快，没人能赶上他。)

2) This book is so interesting that he doesn't want to put it down.
(这本书太有意思了, 他都不想把书放下。)

3) It was such a sunny day that he wanted to go out to enjoy the warm sunshine.
(天气如此晴朗, 他想出去享受这温暖的阳光。)

在形容词 similar 的后面通常用介词 to, 使用名词 similarity 时, 其后也用 to. 如:

1) My problems are similar to yours. (我的问题与你的类似。)

2) The two cats are similar to each other in appearance and size.
(这两只猫的模样和大小相仿。)

3) Liverpool has a certain similarity to Marseilles. (利物浦和马赛有某种相像。)

句子中的 those 代指 symptoms.

5. A person seized by a panic attack may show all or as few as four of these symptoms.

请注意本句中 seize 这个动词的词意及用法。

1) 抓住; 抓住(时机等), 利用

The police seized him by the collar. (警察抓住了他的衣领。)

Seizing the bowl, he ran off through the door. (他抓起碗冲出门去。)

He seized the chance to study abroad. (他抓住了那次去国外学习的机会。)

2) 逮捕

He was seized outside the city. (他在市郊被捕获。)

The escaped prisoner was seized on Sunday. (逃犯于周日被抓获。)

3) (常用被动语态) (疾病) 侵袭; (情绪) 支配

The old man was seized by a stroke. (那位老人中风了。)

She was seized with jealousy. (她妒火中烧。)

Panic seized the people in the cave. (洞里的人们惊慌失措。)

“seize” 也可用不及物动词，如：

1) He would seize on (upon) any excuse to justify himself. (他会利用一切借口为自己辩解。)

2) He was determined to seize on (upon) the opportunity to leave his employer a good impression. (他决心抓住这个机会给他的雇主留下好印象。)

6. There has been a lot of explanations as to the causes of panic attacks.

本句中的 as to 意思是 about (关于)，如：

1) John has been given no directions as to what to write. (没人对约翰说明该写什么。)

2) I have no doubt as to his honesty. (对他的诚实，我毫无疑问。)

3) I was asked my opinion as to why he refused our help. (对他为什么拒绝我们的帮助，我被要求发表见解。)

7. It is reported that there are at least three signs that indicate a person is suffering from a panic attack rather than a heart attack.

It + be + -ed 分词 + that 从句……that 引导的是一个主语从句，it 做形式主语放在句首。如：

1) It is often stated that Shakespeare was born on April 23, 1564. (人们常说莎士比亚生于 1564 年 4 月 23 日。)

2) It is believed that he has told the truth. (人们相信他说了实话。)

3) It is known to all that light travels in straight lines. (众所周知，光以直线运行。)

rather than 在本句中的意思是“不是……而是……”，如：

1) He lay rather than sat in his armchair. (他躺在扶手椅里而不是坐在里面。)

2) The freckles over her face were an added attraction rather than otherwise. (她脸上的雀斑不但无损容貌反而令她更动人。)

8. Dr. Crocker's advice to any person who thinks he is suffering from a panic attack is to consult a doctor for a medical examination to rule out the possibilities of physical illness first.

to 在本句中用作介词, advice to sb. 意为“给某人的劝告”, 如:

1) My advice to you is that you should be more polite to other people. (我对你的劝告是你应该对别人更礼貌一些。)

2) The teacher's advice to me was to study harder. (老师劝我学习更努力。)

consult 在本句中的意思是“请教, 咨询”, 如:

1) He consulted the doctor about his illness. (他找那位医生看病。)

2) Your baby is losing weight, you should consult your doctor promptly. (你的孩子体重在下降, 你应该立即去向医生咨询。)

rule out 的意思是“排除”, 如:

1) Police have ruled out murder but are still holding several people for questioning. (警方排除他杀的可能, 但仍留了一些人审问。)

2) He ruled out the possibility that he could fight again. (他排除了再度出战的可能性。)

本课主要词组

1. be accompanied by
2. shortness of
3. rush sb. to (a place)
4. be caused by
5. suffer from
6. bear similarity to
7. most of all
8. be seized by
9. as to

10. rather than
11. be isolated from
12. rule out
13. at least
14. as yet
15. be likely to
16. all the same

Text B Sleepwalking——Fact or Fancy?

短语表达

1. search for

All his life he has been searching for the meaning of life.

The police are searching for the escaped prisoner in the wood.

2. in the middle

Don't disturb him, he is in the middle of a meeting.

He is standing in the middle of the room enraged.

3. border on

The American people's respect for President Lincoln borders on worship.

China borders on Mongolia in the north.

4. put...on record

Students' performance at school is usually put on record.

The criminal cases are all put on record.

5. wake up

He had a lot of difficulty waking up so early in the morning.

The noise outside woke him up.

6. take measures

Effective measures have to be taken to control pollution.

They have taken some measures to rid the boy of his bad habit.

7. outgrow

The boy will outgrow the jacket in a year.

I believe he will outgrow the habit when he is older.

Unit18 (第 53 讲—第 55 讲)

Text A Why Are Maps Drawn with North at the Top?

本课主要单词

1. feature n. 特征, 特色; 面貌, 相貌 vi. 是…的特色, 以…为特色
vi. 重要作用; 作为主要角色

1) The most important feature of our work is parental involvement.
(我们工作的最重要特色是父母参与。)

2) The island's chief feature is its beauty. (这个岛的主要特色是风景秀丽。)

3) He is very familiar with the geographical features of this district.
(他对这一地区的地理特征很熟悉。)

4) The boy was slightly taller than his father, with fine features.
(那个男孩比他父亲稍高, 长得眉清目秀。)

5) Round-the-clock service features this store. (日夜服务是这家商店的特色。)

6) The new type of car features high speed, small size and low cost.
(这种新型汽车以高速、小型和低费用为特色。)

7) Sea food features largely in the diet of these people. (海产在这些人的食物中占重要地位。)

8) He is featuring in a new movie. (他正在一部新片中担任主角。)

2. rough adj. 粗糙的；粗暴的；大致的

roughly adv. 粗糙地；大体上，大约

1) They journeyed for days over rough roads. (他们在崎岖的道路上旅行了数日。)

2) His rough manners annoyed everybody. (他粗鲁无礼的态度恼了每一个人。)

3) They lived a rough life in the mountain village. (他们在山村里过着简陋的生活。)

4) They had a rough crossing of the English Channel. (他们在狂风大浪中越过英吉利海峡。)

5) We should help them out of the rough situation. (我们应该帮助他们走出困境。)

6) The young man closed the door roughly. (那个年轻人粗暴地把门关上了。)

7) Roughly speaking, this year's profit increased by 15 percent. (粗略地说，今年的利润增加了15%。)

3. sketch n. 草图；梗概；素描

v. 绘(…的)略图；简述

1) He drew a rough sketch showing the position of the entrance. (他粗略地画了张草图，说明入口处的位置。)

2) They only gave us a sketch of the whole event. (他们只向我们简略地介绍了整个事件。)

3) The first part is a brief sketch of the school's early history. (第一部分是该校早期历史的概述。)

4) He sketched a boy's head on the sketchpad. (他在速写簿上画出了男孩头像素描。)

5) Mr. Smith sketched excuses to his guest and left the room hurriedly. (史密斯先生向客人草草致歉然后匆忙离开房间。)

4. Localize v. 使局部化；使具地方性；集中

1) It is unlikely to localize this disease. (把这种疾病控制在局部地区是不可能的。)

2) They failed to localize the effect of the disturbance. (他们没能使动乱的影响局部化。)

3) Anger localized on the new policy. (民愤集中在这项新政策上。)

请注意 localize 是由形容词 local 加动词后缀-ize 构成的。英语中, 这样词很多。比如: modernize (现代化), civilize (使文明化), socialize (社会化), publicize (公开化) 等等。

5. footing n. 立足处; 稳固的地位, 基础

1) It is difficult to get a footing on the steep roof. (要在那很陡的屋顶上找到立脚处很困难。)

2) He lost his footing and fell into the ditch. (他一失足摔进了沟里。)

3) The water was so deep that she couldn't gain her footing. (河水太深, 她立不住足。)

4) They are on a friendly footing with their neighbors. (他们同邻居们和睦相处。)

5) In today's China, women and men are on equal footing. (在今天的中国, 男女平等。)

6. Forefront n. 最前线, 最主要的位置

1) The company was brought to the forefront of public attention. (那家公司成为公众注意的重点。)

2) He brought the country to the forefront of world politics. (他把那个国家推向了世界政治的最前沿。)

请注意 fore- 是一个前缀, 意思是在前面; 预先。如: forearm (前臂), forehead (前额), foresee (预知), foretell (预言), forecast (预报) 等等。

7. Attempt v. 企图、试图

n. 企图、试图

1) I didn't attempt the last question in the exam. (我没有试图去做试卷的最后一题。)

2) He attempted to keep his parents in the dark about what had happened. (他试图使父母对所发生的事一无所知。)

3) George had succeeded on his fourth attempt. (乔治要游过湖有困难,但他在第四次尝试时终获成功。)

4) He made no attempt to solve the problem. (他没有试图解决问题。)

8. Flatten v. 把……弄平; 变平

1) He flattened the paper cups. (他把纸杯压平了。)

2) The hurricane flattened the forest. (飓风夷平了森林。)

3) Her questions completely flattened me. (他的问题把我完全击垮了。)

请注意 flatten 是由形容词 flat 加动词后缀 -en 构成的。-en 是英语中十分常用的动词后缀, 可以用在形容词后面也可以用 在名词后面。如: broaden (加宽), weaken (削弱), sharpen (使锋利), frighten (使……害怕), lengthen (加长), heighten (加高) 等等。

9. reference n. 提及; 参考; 证明书 (或人), 推荐信 (或人)

1) There is on further reference to him in her diary. (她在日记中没有进一步提到他。)

2) Keep this dictionary on your desk for easy reference. (把这本词典放在你书桌上, 以备随时查阅。)

3) My professor gave me a good reference. (我的教授给我写了一封德才兼优的推荐信。)

请注意 reference 是由动词 refer 加名词后缀 -ence 构成的。-ence 也是常见的名词后缀, 如: difference (区别), conference (会议), preference (偏爱), transference (转移) 等等。

10. calculate v. 计算; 估计; 认为; 想要

calculation n. 计算; 估计

1) I calculated that we would arrive at 6. (我估计我们六点钟到。)

2) The number of votes will be calculated in the late afternoon. (选票将在傍晚时计数。)

3) You have to calculate the advantages and disadvantages before making a decision. (在作出决定前你得估量事情的利弊。)

4) She calculates to go next month. (她想下个月去。)

5) He made an error in his calculation. (他在计算中出了差错。)

6) By his calculation, we will be there in an hour. (据他估计,我们一小时后到那儿。)

11. unaware adj. 未认识到的, 不知道的

我们已经学过 aware 这个词的用法, unaware 是 aware 的反义词, 用法与 aware 差不多。

1) She seemed unaware of what was happening around her. (她似乎没有意识到周围正在发生的一切。)

2) I was unaware that I had hurt him. (我没有意识到我伤害了他。)

3) He was unaware of the serious consequence. (他没有认识到后果的严重性。)

12. orientate=orient v. 使适应; 给……定向

orientation n. 定向; 方位; 熟悉; 情况介绍

1) You should produce things orientated to people's needs. (你应该生产适应人们需要的东西。)

2) He oriented himself by finding a familiar landscape. (他找了一处熟悉的景色来确定自己所处的方位。)

3) The discussion helped me orient myself to the new language. (讨论帮助我适应新的语言。)

4) It took him a long time to orient himself. (他花了很长时间熟悉环境。)

5) The winding trail caused them to lose their orientation. (弯弯曲曲的小径使他们迷失方向。)

6) College freshmen receive two days of orientation. (大学新生用两天时间听取学校情况介绍。)

oriented adj. 以……为目的的; 重视……的

export-oriented industries (外向型工业)

an education-oriented family (一个重视教育的家庭)

test-oriented teaching and learning (以应试为目的的教学)

13. Immovable adj. 不可移动的; 坚定不移的

这个词的词根是 move, -able 是形容词后缀; im-是反义词前缀, 通常在 m, p 开首的单词前。如: impassable (无法通过的), importable (可进口的), immedicable (无法医治的) 等等。

1) Father was immovable in his opinions. (父亲的意志坚定不移。)

2) He didn't expect that he would face an immovable audience. (他没料到他将面对一群不动情的观众。)

3) What are you going to do with this immovable pillar? (这根移动不了的柱子你打算怎么处理?)

14. arrangement n. 安排; 布置; 整齐

arrange v. 安排; 布置

1) Have you made all the arrangements for the conference? (你为会议做好所有安排了吗?)

2) He wants to make sure that everything is in neat arrangement. (他想确保一切都整整齐齐。)

3) She didn't want to alter the arrangement of furniture in the room. (她不想改变房间里家具的位置。)

4) I will make arrangements for a car to meet you at the airport. (我将安排一辆汽车去机场接你。)

5) The librarian is arranging the books on the shelf. (图书管理员正在整理架子上的图书。)

6) Don't worry, I will arrange the dinner for you. (别急, 我为你们安排晚餐。)

7) They have arranged for us to visit the Confucius Temple tomorrow. (他们已安排我们明天游夫子庙。)

8) I have arranged for the goods to be delivered to your door. (我已为你安排好送货上门。)

15. Interfere v. 干涉; 妨碍, 干扰

1) We have no rights to interfere in the internal affairs of other countries. (我们无权干涉他国内政。)

2) Don't interfere in other people's business. (不要干预他人的事情。)

3) Misty weather interfered with the contact. (雾天妨碍了联络。)

4) He has done nothing that directly interfered with the actions of the others. (他没做任何直接妨碍他人行动的事。)

16. accordance n. 一致; 符合

1) Education is carried out in accordance with the government's policy. (教育在依据政府的政策实施。)

2) In accordance with your request I am sending her the letter express. (根据你的要求, 我准备给她发特快信。)

3) I am in accordance with him in this matter. (在这件事上, 我同他是一致的。)

17. reliance n. 信赖; 依靠

rely v. 依赖; 相信

1) She placed complete reliance on her husband's judgment. (她完全相信她丈夫的判断。)

2) Self-reliance is necessary if you want to achieve anything. (如果你想有所成就, 自力更生是很必要的。)

3) He is a man to be relied on. (他是一个可以信赖的人。)

4) You can always rely on him, he won't fail you. (你可以永远信任他, 他不会让你失望的。)

5) We can rely on our children to do such work. (这样的工作我们可以放心地让孩子们去做。)

18. rightful adj. 合法的; 正义的; 正当的

请注意区别 right 和 rightful. Right 强调同事实没有偏差, rightful 指事物符合道德或法律的约束。

1) He regained his rightful place on the English throne. (他恢复了应属于他的英国王位。)

2) The rightful heir should obtain his rightful inheritance. (合法的继承人应获得其合法的继承权。)

3) It is the right approach to the command of grammar. (这是掌握语法的正确途径。)

4) I believe what he said is right. (我相信他说的是对的。)

本课简介

今天，地图上上为北标示在我们的眼里极其自然。很难想像出会有一幅不以上为北的地图。但是当我们试图去了解地图绘制的历史时，我们会有超乎想像的发现。

世界上古老的地图绘于公元前 3800 年。几个世纪以后，是古希腊人开始用相对科学的方式来绘制地图，其最杰出的先驱是托勒密。古巴比伦人以扁平的圆盘状来展现地球，而托勒密则以球状来展现地球。鉴于当时人们的知识的状态，托勒密在绘制地图时也出了种种差错，但是他是标示地图的上方为北方的第一人。

到了中世纪，欧洲教会严重阻碍了科学的发展。因为耶路撒冷是基督教的圣地，于是地图的上方便改换为东方。直到十四世纪，由于贸易的发展，以及人们对指南针的日益加剧的依赖，北方终又成为地图的上方。

Unit18 (第 53 讲—第 55 讲)

本课主要句型

1. Now it is hard to visualize a map that does not feature north at the top, but this was not always so.

本句中 it 做形式主语 (formal subject), to visualize a map……。是真正的主语 (real subject)。用 it 做形式主语，主要是因为主语较长，谓语较短，于是不定式常放在谓语的后面。例如：

1) It is necessary to tell him the news as soon as possible. (尽快把这消息告诉他是很必要的。)

2) It took us 30 minutes to get there by bus. (坐公共汽车到那儿花了我们 30 分钟时间。)

3) It made us very angry to see him talk to the old man in such an impolite manner. (看到他以如此不礼貌的方式与那位老人谈话，我们非常气愤。)

4) How much did it cost you to send the parcel express? (速递这个包裹花了你多少钱?)

请翻译下列句子, 注意用做形式主语:

- 1) 掌握一门外语不是一件容易的事。
- 2) 能来参加这个晚宴是我们的荣幸。
- 3) 我们不帮助他们是错误的。
- 4) 他们拒绝采纳这个建议是不明智的。

上面的四个句子可以翻译为:

- 1) It is not easy to master a foreign language.
- 2) It is our honor to be present at this dinner party.
- 3) It was a mistake for us not to help them.
- 4) It is unwise of them to turn down the suggestion.

Visualize 是一个动词, 意思是 imagine (想像)。在词汇部分我们讲到过 -ize 是动词后缀。常用在形容词后面构成动词, 如: localize (局部化, 地方化), urbanize (城市化), nationalize (使国有化), finalize (最后定下来) visualize 这个动词, 我们在第四单元中已经学过, 请把下面两个句子译成英语, 注意使用 visualize:

- 1) 我难以想像等待着我的将会是什么。
- 2) 一整天, 他都在想像着将在教堂举行的婚礼。

这两句话可以译为:

- 1) I cannot visualize what is waiting for me.
- 2) He has been visualizing the wedding ceremony to be held at the church for the whole day.

……this was not always so 中的 so 是个代词, 意思是“如此, 这样”, 如:

- 1) --I think you made the wrong decision.

--Is that so? (是这样吗?)

2) It is not necessary to find out why it is so. (去了解为什么如此是没有必要的。)

3) I believe so. (我相信是这样。)

2. The oldest known map in the accepted sense of the word was drawn about 3, 800BC, and represents the river Euphrates flowing through northern Mesopotamia, Iraq.

本句中的 known 是过去分词做形容词用,意思是“已知的”,在某些语境中,known 意为“著名的”。如:

1) This is the most dangerous substance known to man. (这是人类已知的最危险的物质。)

2) It has become a well known holiday resort. (这儿已成为著名的度假胜地。)

in the...sense of the word 意思是“就这个词的...意义上而言”,如:

1) It is a miracle in the true sense of the word. (这是真正的奇迹。)

2) That is an adventure in every sense of the word. (那才叫冒险。)

sense 是个常用词,请看下面的句子,注意 sense 的词意。

1) He has a great sense of humor. (他很有幽默感。)

2) There is some common sense in what he says. (他所说的话有些道理。)

3) What's the sense of doing that since it is already late? (既然已经晚了,做那件事还有什么意义呢?)

4) She came to her senses after a blood transfusion. (输血之后,他苏醒过来。)

5) In a sense what he said is true. (在某种意义上说,他说的话是正确的。)

6) Her explanation doesn't make any sense. (她的解释讲不通。)

7) I cannot make sense of what has written. (她写的东西我弄不懂。)

3. This and others that followed it, were little more than rough sketches of localized features; it was not until many centuries later

that the ancient Greeks placed the science of map-making on a sound-footing.

本句中的前一个 it 是代指上句中的 the oldest known map. Little more than 的意思是 almost no more than (只不过是)。请注意下列句子中的 little 的意思:

- 1) He is little better than a bookworm. (他简直跟书呆子差不多。)
- 2) That is little short of open scorn. (那简直就是公然藐视。)

It was not until...that...。是一个常见的强调句型，意思是“直到...才”。如:

- 1) It was not until the cat emerged from behind the bushes that I noticed it. (直到猫从灌木后面出来，我才注意到它。)
- 2) It was not until he called me that I realized there was a meeting in the afternoon. (直到他给我打电话我才想起下午有个会。)
- 3) It was not until several weeks later that the stolen car was found. (几个星期以后那辆失窃的汽车才被找到。)

请翻译下列句子，注意使用上述句型。

- 1) 直到 20 世纪 60 年代人类才实现登上月球的梦想。
- 2) 直到昨天他才被告知真相。
- 3) 直到妈妈来幼儿园接他，那孩子才停止哭泣。

这三个句子可以翻译为:

- 1) It was not until the 1960s that man realized the dream of landing on the moon.
- 2) It was not until yesterday that he was told the truth.
- 3) It was not until mother came to the kindergarten to collect him that the boy stopped crying.

place sth. on a sound footing 意思是“把...置于坚实的基础上”。

4. The last great scientist of the classical period, he was the first to draw a map that was based on all available knowledge, rather than guess or imagination.

The last great scientist of the classical period, 在本句中做同位语, 对主语 he 作进一步的补充说明。

Be based on 意思是“以……为基础”。

Guess 在句中做名词用, 意思是“推测, 猜想”。

Rather than 在本句中的意思相当于 instead of “而不是”。

1) I have used some simple words rather than the difficult ones.
(我用了一些简单词汇而不是难词。)

2) He bought two books rather than one. (他买了两本书而不是一本。)

3) Rather than go back on his word, he kept his promise. (他没有食言, 而是言而有信。)

5. Given the state of knowledge of those times, he got things wrong, ……

在第十五单元中, 我们学过 given 这个介词, 意思是“考虑到”, 在本句中 given 仍是这个意思, 请再看两个例句:

1) Given the poor working condition, you cannot expect the workers to be very efficient. (考虑到工作条件差, 你不能指望工人们的效率很高。)

2) Given the bad weather, we have to change our plan. (基于天气不好, 我们得改变计划。)

Times 在本句中的意思是“时代”, 如:

1) The times are different, women are now equal to man. (时代不同了, 现在男女平等了。)

2) In modern times, the development of science and technology is accelerating. (近代科学技术在加速发展。)

3) In the difficult times, many people died of hunger. (在那限难时世, 许多人因饥饿而死。)

6. ……since Ptolemy had calculated wrongly the size of the Atlantic and was unaware that the Pacific Ocean existed.

本句中的 since 引导的是一个原因状语从句, 如:

1) Since so many people are absent, we'd better put off the meeting.
(既然如此多的人缺席, 我们最好将此会延期。)

2) I won't blame you since you know nothing about it. (既然你对此一无所知, 我就不会怪你。)

Unaware 与 aware 一样是形容词, 其用法也与 aware 相同, be unaware of..., be unaware that...

1) I was unaware of his presence. (我没注意到他在场。)

2) He was unaware that he had been followed. (他不知道他被跟踪了。)

7. The reason for this was that he decided to orientate the map in the direction of the pole star since Polaris was the immovable guiding light in which the voyagers of the era placed their trust.

本句中, that 引导的是一个表语从句。表语从句的结构为:

主语+连系动词+表语从句。表语从句也可用 where, why, how 引导。如:

1) The reason for his absence was that he was ill. (他缺席的原因是他病了。)

2) That was why I hated it. (这就是我不喜欢这个的原因。)

3) That is how he cheated people. (他就是用这种方式骗人的。)

Which 所引导的是一个定语从句修饰 guiding light 限定性定语从句如果修饰“物”, 关系代词 that 和 which 都可用, 但在介词的后面只能用 which, 在口语中一般把介词放到从句后部去, 这时则可以用 that. 如:

1) This is the question about which we had a discussion last night.
(这就是我们昨晚讨论的问题。)

This is the question that we had a discussion about last night.

2) This is the fact on which we base our opinion. (我们的观点就是建立在这个事实之上的。)

This is the fact that we base our opinion on.

Trust 在句中做名词用, place (put) trust in sb/sth 信任某人(某事)。

1) I don't have any trust in him. (我对他一点也不信任。)

2) Have some trust in the future everything will be OK. (对未来有点信心吧, 一切都会好起来。)

3) The old lady placed great trust in her grandson. (那位老太太对她孙子非常信任。)

8. North at the top remained the accepted arrangement until the early Middle Ages, when the church began to interfere seriously with the advance of science.

本句中 when 引导一个由逗号把前面句子隔开的句子, 其意思相当于 at the time. 如:

1) The party has been put off until next week, when we can get better prepared. (晚会被推迟到下周, 那时我们能准备得更好些。)

2) We will wait here until 6, when the manager can spare us a few minutes. (我们在这儿等到 6 点, 那时经理就能给我们几分钟了。)

Interfere with 意思是“妨碍”, 如:

1) Bad dietary habits often interfere with health. (不良的饮食习惯常常妨碍健康。)

2) The interests of the two countries do not interfere with each other. (这两国相互间没有利害冲突。)

9. Once again, north assumed its rightful place at the top of maps.

在第十五单元的 Text B 中, 我们已经学过 assume 这个词

It has long been assumed that aggression is caused by male hormones. (长期以来, 人们认定好斗是由男性荷尔蒙引起的。)

在本句中 assume 的意思是 acquire (获得, 取得)

请注意下列例句中 assume 的意思:

1) I assume the misunderstanding will be cleared up. (我认定这误会会消除。)

2) He assumed the report to be unreliable. (他猜那报告不可靠。)

3) Farmers will have a good harvest, assuming that the weather is favorable. (假如风调雨顺, 农民将会有好收成。)

4) Who will assume the costs of running a school? (谁来负担开设一所学校的费用?)

5) He assumed a leading position last May. (去年五月, 他担任领导职务。)

6) Hitler assumed power in 1933. (希特勒于 1933 年夺得政权。)

7) He assumed full control of the company. (他完全控制了这家公司。)

本课主要词组

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. in the sense of | 2. more than |
| 3. be based on | 4. rather than |
| 5. attempt to do sth | 6. in the form of |
| 7. in search of | 8. at the top |
| 9. in the direction of | 10. place trust in |
| 11. interfere with | 12. in accordance with |
| 13. from...point of view | 14. reliance on |

Text B You Have a Choice

短语表达

1. side by side

They are sitting side by side.

We walked side by side along the river.

2. be seated

Please be seated, I will fix you a cup of coffee.

The hostess was seated with the guests when I hurried in.

3. ahead of

The boy is running ahead of his classmates.

I believe we can finish the work ahead of time.

4. be certain of

I cannot be certain of the time of their arrival.

Can you be certain of the truth of his utterance?

5. bring about

The new policy is sure to bring about a lot of changes.

What Father said has brought about a profound change in his personality.

6. account for

This excuse cannot account for your absence.

Her explanation doesn't account for the failure.

7. regardless of

All of you will be given a chance regardless of your age and sex.

Regardless of which method you choose, the result will be the same.

8. make a difference

Whether he comes or not will not make any difference.

I hope my participation will make a difference.

9. lead to

Excessive smoking may lead to lung cancer.

The misunderstanding led to a bad quarrel.

10. pull out of

The train pulled out of the station at 10: 00.

When do you think the car will pull out of the garage?

11. for sure

I don't know for sure who will be in charge of this department.

He couldn't tell for sure what was in the distance.

12. apply to

It is hard to apply the rule to real work.

It is necessary that the theory be applied to practice.

13. deal with

He is hard to deal with.

I have no idea how to deal with this situation.

Unit19 (第 56 讲—第 58 讲)

Text A Animals at Risk: Who Cares?

本课主要单词

1. Species n. (单复数同形) 种, 类

1) There are more than 250 species of shark in the world. (世界上有 250 多种鲨鱼。)

2) Darwin wrote "The Origin of Species." (达尔文写了《物种起源》。)

3) She feels a species of nervousness. (她有一种紧张的感觉。)

2. Extinct adj. dead, wiped out, no longer existing (火熄灭了; 灭亡了的; 灭绝了的)

extinction n.

1) Please make sure that the fire is extinct before you leave. (在你离开前, 请确保炉火已灭。)

2) All hope was extinct. (所有的希望都落空了。)

3) This species will be extinct in a few decades. (几十年后这个物种将会灭绝。)

4) Pandas are in danger of extinction. (大熊猫正面临灭绝的危险。)

5) The sudden extinction of lights in the room frightened the children.
(室内灯光突然熄灭把孩子们吓坏了。)

请指出下面句子中的错误:

The total extinction of this species is inevitable.

句子中的 total 应去掉, 因为 extinction 已包含“所有”的意思, 再用 total 就多余了。

3. Pace n. 步速; 速度; 节奏; 步 v. 踱步; 用步量

1) The tree is ten paces from the house. (树与房屋相距十步。)

2) He quickened his pace when he found he was lagging behind. (发现自己落了后他便加快了步伐。)

3) They had to slow down the pace of new product development because of lack of fund. (由于缺少资金他们不得不放慢新产品开发的速度。)

4) The pace he set was too fast for the others. (他定的步速对其他人来说太快了。)

5) He is trying hard to keep pace with his classmates. (他正努力跟上他的同学。)

6) Many people complain of the rapid pace of modern life. (许多人抱怨现代生活节奏太快。)

7) He paced slowly around the room. (他慢悠地在房间里踱着步。)

8) He paced out the distance between the two trees. (他用步子测出两棵树之间的距离。)

At a snail's pace (非常缓慢地)

At one's own pace (以轻松自在的速度)

Set the pace (定步速, 起带头作用)

Pace car (赛车开始时在跑道上领驶一圈但本身不参赛的领驱车)

Pacemaker (领跑人; 带头人; 起搏器)

4. Compete v. 竞争, 比赛

competition n. 竞争, 比赛

competitive adj. 竞争的

1) He would compete with three others for a trip to Korea…… (他将和另三个人竞争以得到去韩国旅游的机会。)

2) I am going to compete in two items——100 meter dash and broad jump. (我将参加两个项目的比赛: 100 米短跑和跳远。)

3) Young people should be prepared for the fierce competition in the future job market. (年轻人应为今后就业市场的激烈竞争做好准备。)

4) There is a lot of competition for this job. (有许多人争夺这工作。)

5) He is no competition for Mike. (他不是迈克的对手。)

6) He doesn't like competitive sports. (他不喜欢竞技性体育项目。)

7) How can we adapt ourselves to the highly competitive society? (我们怎样才能适应这个高度竞争的社会?)

8) He holds that women are not as competitive as men. (他认为女性不像男性那样有竞争力。)

5. Likelihood n. 可能性; 有希望的事

likely adj. 有可能的; 可信的; 恰当的

1) Is there any likelihood of his coming? (他有可能来吗?)

2) There is every likelihood that the performance will be a success. (演出极有可能获得成功。)

3) In all likelihood it will be a sunny day to morrow. (十之八九, 明天是个大晴天。)

4) It is likely that they will agree with us. (他有可能会同我们的意见。)

5) He is not likely to be elected. (他不可能当选。)

6) Her story doesn't sound likely. (她的说法不太可信。)

7) They are looking out for a likely place to build the school. (他们正在找寻建这所学校的合适地点。)

6. Clearance n. 清除, 清理; 余地

clear v. 清除; 越过; 不触及地通过

-ance 是一个名词后缀, 用在动词后面可构成名词。如:

appearance (出现, 外表), endurance (忍受), utterance (发言, 发声), attendance (出席, 侍候) 等等。

1) The clearance of the old furniture made the room more spacious.
(清理了旧家俱, 屋里更宽敞了。)

2) He was responsible for the clearance of the theatre when the fire broke out.
(着火时, 由他负责出清剧院的观众。)

3) The bridge has a clearance of three metres above water.
(该桥桥下净空有 3 米。)

4) Clearance sale (清仓削价销售)

Take-off clearance (起飞许可)

Foreign exchange clearance (国际汇兑清算)

Clearance order (清拆命令)

5) He is clearing the table.
(他正在收拾桌子。)

6) The athlete cleared the bar easily.
(那位运动员轻松越过横杆。)

7) The truck cleared the tunnel.
(卡车通过了隧道。)

7. Vegetation n. (总称) 植物, 植被

vegetate. v. (植物) 生长

vegetable n. 蔬菜的; 植物的

1) He was amazed by the colorful vegetation of the tropical forest.
(热带森林中奇异多彩的植物令他惊奇。)

2) It is essential that the vegetation of this area should be preserved.
(保护这一地区的植被是很必要的。)

3) He had some green vegetables for dinner.
(他晚餐吃了些蔬菜。)

4) The vegetables in the garden vegetate vigorously. (园子里的植物在茁壮成长。)

8. Ignore v. 不顾, 不理, 忽视

ignorance n. 无知

ignorant adj. 无知的

1) He was fined for ignoring a red light. (他因为闯红灯而被罚款。)

2) The teacher ignored the question raised by one of the students. (那位老师对学生提出的问题没加理会。)

3) Some species become extinct because of people's ignorance. (有些物种由于人们的无知而灭绝。)

4) Ignorance of this law is no excuse if you break the law. (不懂法不能作为违法的借口。)

5) They demanded to know why they had been kept in ignorance of the truth. (他们要求知道不让他们了解事情的真相的原因。)

6) He was kept ignorant of the fact that his son failed the exam. (他对儿子考试不及格这件事一无所知。)

7) I am ignorant about /of what has happened. (对所发生的事情我全然不知。)

9. Threat n. 威胁; 凶兆

threaten v. 威胁

1) The survival of civilization is under threat. (人类文明的生存在受到威胁。)

2) This might be a threat to national security. (这可能对国家安全构成威胁。)

3) The boy threatened that he would leave home if his parents beat again. (那男孩威胁说如果父母再揍他, 他就离家出走。)

4) They were threatened with starvation when flood drowned their village. (洪水淹没他们村子时他们受到了饥饿的威胁。)

10. Ornament n. 装饰; 装饰品

v. 装饰, 美化

1) They bought a lot of ornaments and hung them on the Christmas tree.
(他们买了许多装饰品并把它们挂在圣诞树上。)

2) She wouldn't buy it as it is more for ornament than for use. (她不原意买那个东西, 因为它主要供装饰而不实用。)

3) They ornament the hall with oil paintings. (他们用油画装点大厅。)

4) They found themselves entering a manificently ornamented house.
(他们发现自己进入了一座装饰华美的屋子。)

11. Tourist n. 旅游者, 观光者 adj. 游览的

tourism n. 旅游业

tour n. 旅行; 参观

v. 旅行; 参观

1) She showed a group of tourists round the museum. (如领着一群游客参观博物馆。)

2) The Great wall is one of the chief tourist attractions in Beijing.
(长城是北京的主要旅游点之一。)

3) Tourism is a big industry in this country. (旅游业在这个国家是一个庞大的行业。)

4) His dream is to make a round-the-world tour. (他的梦想是作环球旅行。)

5) We are going to tour north-west China this summer. (今夏我们打算游历中国西北地区。)

6) He toured music halls in Germany. (他在德国的音乐厅作巡回演出。)

12. Variation n. 变化

variable adj. 易变的

vary v. 变化

1) He always told us the same story with no variations. (他总是给我们讲那个没有任何变化的故事。)

2) Weather conditions may cause variations in blood pressure. (天气状况可能引起血压的变化。)

3) The variable weather gave us a lot of trouble. (多变的天气给我们带来不少麻烦。)

4) He is hard to get along with as he has a variable temper. (他的脾气反复无常很难相处。)

5) Opinions vary on this point. (对这一点看法各异。)

6) He doesn't want to vary his habit. (他不想改变自己的习惯。)

12. Trophy n. 战利品; 奖品

1) He was going to hang the horns of the antler on the wall as a trophy. (他将把鹿角挂在墙上作为纪念品。)

2) She got a gold trophy for badminton. (她获得了羽毛球比赛的金杯。)

13. Magnificent adj. 壮丽的, 宏伟的; 极美的

1) The king lived in this magnificent palace. (国王住在这座宏伟的宫殿里。)

2) The magnificent scenery dazzled the tourists. (壮丽的景色使游客的眼花缭乱。)

3) Their magnificent performance gripped the audience. (他们动人的表演牢牢地抓住了观众。)

14. Survive v. 幸存; 比活得长

survival n. 幸存

survivor n. 幸存者

1) Eight people survived the fire. (八人在大火中幸免于死。)

2) The old woman survived her husband by 10 years. (那位老妇人比她丈夫多活十年。)

3) Survival was unlikely since the river water was so deep and cold. (河水既深又冷清活无望。)

4) He was the only survivor of the massacre. (他是大屠杀的唯一幸存者。)

15. Seal n. 海豹; 印章 v. 封口

1) Many Canadian seals were killed to reduce the numbers to help the species to survive.

(大量的加拿大海豹被猎杀是为了减它们的数量使该物种幸存下来。)

2) The document bore an official seal. (这件上盖有官方大印。)

3) She sealed the envelope and put it in the postbox. (她封上信封后把信放入邮筒。)

16. By-product n. 副产品

by-是一个前缀, 表示“次要的”, “附带的”, 如: by-channel (支渠), by-effect (副作用), by-lane (小巷); by-line (副业), by-work (第二职业); by-road (小路) 等等。

17. Conservation n. 保存; 保护

conserve v. save, preserve (保存, 保护)

1) People are paying more and more attention to the conservation of wildlife. (人们越来越重视野生动物的保护。)

2) Conservation of water is of great importance. (节约用水非常重要。)

3) He leaned against the tree quietly to conserve strength. (他静静地靠在树上以节省体力。)

4) It is known to all that we should conserve natural resources. (众所周知, 我们应该保护自然资源。)

18. Reserve v. 保留; 预计 n. 保留; 储备物

1) These seats are reserved for special guests. (这些座位是保留给特别的客人的。)

2) We will reserve the plane ticket for you until tomorrow afternoon. (机票给你保留到明天下午。)

3) I reserve the right to respond later. (我保留稍后作出回应的权利。)

4) He reserved two tickets for tomorrows show. (他定了两张明天的演出票。)

5) A bright future is reserved for you. (光明的前程正等待着你。)

6) During the war, she always kept a reserve of tinned food in the house. (战争期间,她总是在家里储备听装食品。)

7) Many animals use their fat reserves in their body to pull through the winter. (许多动物用体内储备的脂肪熬过冬天。)

8) The bank's cash reserves couldn't meet the demand. (这家银行的现金储备满足不了需要。)

Unit19 (第 56 讲—第 58 讲)

19. Breed v. 繁殖; 饲养; 养育 n. 品种, 种类

1) Some animals will not breed when caged. (有些动物关在笼内就不产仔。)

2) He was bred to be a gentleman. (他被作为绅士养育成人。)

3) They are of the same breed. (他们是同一类人。)

4) They raise many breeds of dog. (他们养着许多不同种的狗。)

20. Provided conj. if (假如, 若是)

1) We will be there before 10, provided we don't waste time. (如果我们不浪费时间, 我们就在 10 点之前到那儿。)

2) We will go provided that the weather is fine. (假如天晴, 我们就去。)

3) Provided that no objection is raised, we will set back the program. (如果没人反对, 我们就把这个项目推迟。)

请注意: provided 不是过去分词, 而是连词, 作“假如, 只要”解, 在口语中常用 providing. Provided that 与 if 的不同在于: provided that 所表示的“如果”, 含有希望该条件实现的含义。

21. Determination n. 决心, 决定; 结论

determine v. 决定, 决定

1) He is a man of determination. (他是一个有决断力的人。)

2) This strengthened his determination not to give in. (这更坚定了他不屈服的决心。)

3) The doctor's determination was made after the blood test. (医生的结论是在验血之后作出的。)

4) We haven't determined a date for the meeting. (我们还没有确定会议日期。)

5) He determined to study harder. (他决心更努力地学习。)

6) They are determined to carry out the plan. (他们决心实施这一计划。)

22. Clash n. 冲突 v. 发生冲突

1) Thousands of demonstrators clashed with the police. (数千名示威者与警察发生了冲突。)

2) They wanted to visit both places, but the dates clashed. (他们两个地方都想去, 但日程有冲突。)

3) They got into a verbal clash because of a misunderstanding. (由于误解他们产生了口角。)

4) An armed clash is unavoidable. (武装冲突不可避免。)

请注意区别 crash, crush 和 clash.

Crash 指因坠下或猛冲而砰地碰撞, 如 plane crash (坠机); crush 指压碎, 压坏, 如 crush a plot (粉碎阴谋); crush grapes (榨葡萄)

本课简介

当一个物种的死亡率高于出生率时, 久而久之这个物种就会灭绝。自生命产生的数百万年间, 已有多个物种灭绝。无法适应环境变化的生物, 难以与适应性更好、更强壮的生物相抗衡的生物, 其最后的命运都将是消亡。在过去的几十年中, 人为地猎杀动物或是改变其生息的自然环境已使得某些物种灭绝。如此事便不胜枚举。亚马逊地区自然环境的改变、植被的毁坏将使多个物种灭绝。盲目无度地猎杀动物使得北美的水牛几近灭绝。

越来越多的人开始关注野生动植物的保护。方法之一是将濒临灭绝的物种移进动物园和公园, 使它们有可能繁衍足够多的后代将来能重返自然。方法之二是建立野生动物保护区, 使动物在自然环境中得到照顾。

本课语言点

1. An animal species becomes extinct when it fails to produce enough young in each generation to keep pace with the death—rate.

本句中 become 是连系动词，extinct 是形容词，extinct 通常指动、植物的种灭绝，不再存在。句子中的 it 代指 (the) animal species.

fail to do sth. 意思是“没能做到…”如：

1) He failed to realize his dream of flying round the world. (他没能实现飞行世界的梦想。)

2) I failed to persuade him to give up smoking. (我没能劝说他把烟戒掉。)

3) Don't fail to live up to what your parents expect of you. (别辜负父母对你的期望。)

4) Don't fail to wake me up. (不要忘记叫醒我。)

Keep pace with 是一个常用词组，意思是“跟上”，如：

1) He was too old to keep pace with the modern ideas of life. (他年纪大了，跟不上现代生活观念。)

2) Earnings have not kept pace with inflation. (收入还没有与通货膨胀的速度保持同步。)

2. We can tell from fossil evidence in rocks that many living species become extinct over the million of years since life began.

本句中的 tell 不是“告诉”的意思，而是“断定”或“辨别”的意思。如：

1) Can you tell her from her twin sister? (你能分得出她和她的孪生姐妹吗?)

2) Can you tell which is right? (你能断定哪一人是对的吗?)

that 在句中引导宾主从句，做 tell 的宾语。

1) He had had a bad cold over Christmas. (他在圣诞节期间得了重伤风。)

2) They read a lot of books over the vacation. (假期里他们看了不少书。)

3. …… extinction is the fate of any animal that has specialized too far to change when its environment changes, or has to compete with a better-adapted and more powerful animal.

that 在句中引导定语从句，修饰 animal.

specialize 通常指“专门研究，专门从事”，如：

- 1) He specializes in medicine. (他专攻医科。)
- 2) This shop specializes in cooking utensils. (这家商店专门经销饮具。)

在本课文中 specialize 的意思是“专化，以特殊方式演化。”

Animals and plants are specialized to fit their surroundings. (动植物是按照特殊方式演化以适应各自的环境的。)

too…to…的意思是“太…以致于不能…”如：

- 1) I was too disappointed to try again. (我太失望，不想再尝试。)
- 2) He is too young to take care of himself. (他太年幼，照顾不了自己。)

compete with 意思是“与…竞争”，也可用 compete against.

1) He didn't want to compete with others for this position. (他不想与别人竞争这个职位。)

2) Sometimes animals have to compete against each other for the chance to survive. (有时，动物为了生存不能相互竞争。)

better adapted 意思是“适应得更好的”。better 是副词 well 的比较级形式，adapted 是过去分词做形容词用。这类表达形式在英语中十分常见，如：well-known, poorly-dressed, better-prepared 等等。

4. A number of examples can be given of the way in which natural environment are being rapidly changed……

a number of 意思是“许多”，如：

1) A number of proposals had been put forward at the meeting. (会上提出了许多建议。)

2) A number of students have passed the exam. (已有许多学生通过了考试。)

of 在本句中的意思是关于, 相当于 about. 如:

1) They were not told of this new policy. (关于此项政策, 他们没有被告知。)

2) They wanted to know every detail of what had happened. (对于已发生的事, 他们想知道每一个细节。)

5. There is every likelihood that many species of animals will be made extinct because of these and similar clearances of natural vegetation.

Likelihood 是一个名词, 意思是“可能”, 相当于 possibility, that 在本句中引导同位语从句, 对 likelihood 作进一步的补充说明。如: There is no doubt that he is a reliable person. (毫无疑问, 他是一个可信赖的人。)

Clearance 在本句中的意思是“(植被)砍伐殆尽; 清除。”

Clearances of vegetation will lead to the loss of water and soil. (砍伐植被会引起水土流失。)

6. The North American buffalo is a case of the near-extinction of a species through hunting.

a case of 在本句中的意思是“一个例子,” 相当于“an example of” 如:

1) This is a case of students cheating on exams. (这就是学生作弊的一个例子。)

2) It is a typical case of misunderstanding. (这就是误解的典解例子。)

在第九单元中我们已经学过 case 这个词, 请注意掌握与 case 有关的几个短语:

in any case (无论如何, 总之)

in case (假如; 以免)

in the case of (就...来说, 至于...)

in this case (既然是这样)

through 在句中的意思是“由于, 因为”, 相当于 because.

1) The mistakes were made through carelessness. (这些错误是由于粗心大意造成的。)

2) Many people are hard of hearing through old age. (许多人因年老而听觉不灵。)

7. But even when the danger is widely publicized, the financial rewards for the hunters may be so great that they choose to ignore the threat to the species.

publicize 是个动词,意思是“宣传”,在第十七单元中我们已学过这个词, -ize 是一个动词后缀,通常用在形容词的后面构成动词。

financial rewards 意思是“赏金”。reward 在本句中作名词,有时也可作动词用,如:

1) He offered a reward of 1000 yuan for the finder of his pet dog. (他给拾得他的宠物狗的人酬谢 1000 元。)

2) His efforts were rewarded by success. (他的努力获得了成功。)

choose 后面接不定式,表示“选定,愿意”,如:

1) He chose to stay there for another week. (他决意在那儿再住一周。)

2) I chose to say nothing about it. (我决意对那件事闭口不谈。)

在名词 threat 后面用介词 to,表示“对…的威胁”。如:

The clearance of vegetation will be a great threat to the wildlife. (把植被砍伐殆尽对野生动物将是极大的威胁。)

8. And animals are sometimes killed out of a wish to reduce numbers to help the species to survive.

out of 在本句中以及前一个几句子中的意思是“出于”,如:

1) He was silent out of embarrassment. (他由于窘迫而沉默。)

2) She opened the mail out of curiosity. (她出于好奇打开了邮件。)

句子中前一个动词不定式 to reduce number...在句子中作定语,修饰名词 wish. 如:

1) They failed in their attempt to land on the island. (他们在岛上登陆的企图失败了。)

2) I have no confidence in my ability to fulfil the task. (我对自己完成这项任务的能力没有信心。)

句子中的第二个动词不定式 to help the species to survive 做目的状语, 相当于 so as to 或 in order to help the species…。如:

1) He worked harder (so as) to catch up with the others. (他更努力地学习以赶上别人。)

2) To achieve the aim, we must learn from others. (为了实现这个目标, 我们必须向他人学习。)

9. The killing of the Canadian seals is claimed to be for this purpose, and the use of their skins for furs is only a by-product.

be claimed to 在本句中的意思是“据说”。如:

He is claimed to have inherited a lot of money. (据说他继承了一大笔钱。)

for this purpose 意思是“为这个目的”。如:

1) They decided to have a talk for military purpose. (为了军事目的, 他们决定进行一次会谈。)

2) For this purpose, I gave him all the necessary materials. (为了这个目的, 我把所需的材料都给了他。)

请注意掌握与 purpose 有关的一些短语:

on purpose (为了; 故意地)

to the purpose (中肯的; 合适的)

10. There is always the chance that enough off-spring will be born to return them one day to their natural environment—provided it still exists, and that hunters don't kill them again!

本句中的第一个 that 引导的是一个同位语从句, 对名词 chance 做进一步解释。

Provided 在句中做介词用, 相当于 if. 如:

1) I will give you the money provided you tell me the truth. (如果你说实话, 我会给你钱。)

2) He will come to the party provided he has time. (如果有时间他会来参加聚会。)

在词汇部分我们提到过，口语中常用 providing 替代 provided.

11. But the parks are large, the wardens few and the determination of hunters very great.

本句中，形容词 few 和 great 的前面省去了 be 动词 (few 前省去了 are, great 前省去了 is)，作者是要告诉读者，公园太大，管理人太少，猎人们的决心太过坚定，因而野生动物的保护问题仍然难得解决。

12. The hunters were armed with modern weapons and several people were killed.

arm 在本句中用作动词，意思是“武装，装备”，be armed with 意思是“以…装备起来的”。

1) They believed they would win as they were armed with modern weapons. (他们坚信自己会赢，因为他们有现代化的武器装备。)

2) Armed with secretarial skills she will find a job easily. (具备了秘书的技能，她会很容易地找到一份工作。)

13. ... and tourism can add to the income of countries.

add to 的意思是“增加”，如：

1) The newly built squares add to the beauty of this city. (新建的广场增加了这座城市的美观。)

2) Your company adds to the enjoyment of our visit. (有你的陪同，我们这次访问更加愉快了。)

3) I hope my arrival would not add to your difficulties. (希望我的到来不能增添你们的困难。)

本课主要词组

1. keep pace with
2. compete with
3. because of
4. at such a rate

5. at surprising speed

6. a case of

7. choose to

8. lead to

9. such as

10. out of existence

11. out of fear

12. be claimed to

13. for this purpose

14. be concerned about

15. under threat of

16. be armed with

17. add to

18. look after

19. in a different form

Text B The Killer Smogs

短语表达

1. be filled with

Her eyes were filled with tears when she told us the story.

The room is filled with boxes of all sizes.

2. wash away

The rich soil was washed away as there were no trees and grass to hold it.

It took her quite a while to wash away the stains on her coat.

3. be caused by

Lung cancer might be caused by excessive smoking.

The accident was caused by the driver's carelessness.

4. be known for

He is known for his wide scope of knowledge.

Scotland is known for its beautiful countryside.

5. combine with

It is necessary to combine theory with practice.

See what will happen if you combine hydrogen with oxygen.

6. prevent from

Bad weather prevented them from going camping.

The terrible noise prevented me from getting a good sleep.

7. pile up

Pile up the books on the table, please.

Don't wait until problems pile up.

8. due to

The train was late due to heavy fog.

Our achievements are due to their help.

9. add to

His explanation added to her annoyance.

More happiness will be added to people's life if you are generous enough to give praise.

Unit20 (第59讲—第61讲)

Text A You Can't DO It Because It Hurts Nobody

本课主要单词

1. tough adj. 强壮的；粗暴的；老的；艰苦的

1) The tough mountaineer succeeded in getting to the top of the mountain.

（那位强壮的登山运动员成功地登上了山顶。）

2) Camels are tough and hardy creatures. （骆驼是能吃苦耐劳的动物。）

3) Those tough law-breaking youngsters should be dealt with seriously. （应该严肃对待那些无法无天的青少年。）

4) She complained about the tough steak. （她抱怨牛排太老。）

5) They had a tough time during the war. （战争期间她们苦熬度日。）

6) He'll be tough on you if you bother him. （如果你麻烦他，他会对你不客气。）

7) It was tough to get a satisfactory job. （找一份令人满意的工作很不容易。）

2. crime n. 罪；罪行

criminal n. 罪犯 adj. 犯罪的；刑事的

1) He committed a crime against the security of the state. （他犯了危害国家安全罪。）

2) It is a crime to waste so much food. （浪费那么多食物是一种罪过。）

3) The president is determined to bring down the crime rate. （总统下决心使犯罪率下降。）

4) The wanted criminal had no place to hide. （被通缉的罪犯无处可藏。）

5) The man was found to have a criminal record. （那人被发现有犯罪记录。）

6) The criminal police are working on a major case. （刑警队在着手一起大案。）

3. drunk adj. 醉的

1) He was so drunk that he could not walk. (他醉得路都走不起来了。)

2) He was charged with drunk driving. (他被指控酒后驾车。)

3) The young man was drunk with success. (那个年青人因为成功而喝醉了。)

4. custom n. 习惯; 风俗

customs n. 海关

customary adj. 习惯上的

1) It is her custom to go for a walk every morning. (她惯常每天早上去散步。)

2) They didn't know much about the customs of the country they were going to visit. (对他们将要访问的那个国家的风俗习惯他们了解得不多。)

3) It won't take you long to pass the customs. (通过海关检查不会花你们太多时间。)

4) It is customary to exchange gifts at Christmas. (圣诞节时人们互赠礼物是一种习俗。)

5. admit v. 承认; 准许进入

admission n. 承认; 准许进入

1) He admitted his guilt to the police. (他向警方承认犯罪。)

2) The boy admitted to his teacher that he was wrong. (那男孩向老师承认自己错了。)

3) There were no windows to admit air. (没有窗子可使空气流入。)

4) David was admitted into the school basketball team. (大卫被纳为篮球队的队员。)

5) None of them admitted to cheating on exams. (他们都不承认考试作弊。)

6) She admitted to having a strong like for light beer. (她承认自己很喜欢淡啤酒。)

7) His admission that he had committed the theft proved John's innocence. (他承认偷窃, 从而证明了约翰的清白。)

8) He was refused admission into the club. (他未获准加入俱乐部。)

9) Admission to the park is free. (公园免费进入。)

请注意下面几组词, 找出其构词的规律:

admit / admission emit / emission

transmit / transmission submit / submission

6. tape n. 磁带 v. 用带子捆扎; 用胶布封住; 把...录于

1) The teacher asked us to listen to English tapes when we had time. (老师让我们有空时听英语磁带。)

2) She spent a whole morning taping the presents. (她花了一个上午的时间捆扎礼物。)

3) As there was nobody at home, he taped a note to the door. (因为家中无人, 他使用胶布把一张字条粘贴在门上。)

4) The robber taped the watchman's mouth. (抢劫犯用胶布封住守门人的嘴。)

5) He taped the conversation secretly. (他偷偷把谈话用磁带录了下来。)

7. jail n. 监狱

1) He was put into jail for armed robbery. (他因武装抢劫被送进了监狱。)

2) The young man escaped from jail. (那个年轻人逃出了监狱。)

3) He was sentenced to two weeks in jail. (他被判监禁两周。)

8. fatal adj. 致命的; 重大的

fatality n. 死亡者; 死亡事故

1) He received a fatal wound in the battle. (他在战斗中受了致命伤。)

2) The fatal eruption of the volcano caused unimaginable losses. (火山毁灭性的喷发造成了难以想像的损失。)

3) Mutual trust is fatal to friendship. (相互信任对于友谊来说不可或缺。)

4) The accident caused several fatalities. (事故造成数人死亡。)

5) They are trying to reduce the fatality of heart disease. (他们正努力降低心脏病的致命性。)

9. threaten v. 威胁

在上一单元中，我们学习了名词 threat，-en 是个动词后缀，加在名词或形容词的后面可以构成动词，如：

1) 加在名词后面：heighten, lengthen, hasten

2) 加在形容词后面：shorten, brighten, quicken

10. tolerate v. 忍受；宽恕

tolerant adj. 容忍的

tolerance n. 忍受；宽容；忍耐力

1) I cannot tolerate his dishonesty. (我不能容忍他的不诚实。)

2) We will not tolerate their distorting the fact. (我们不会容忍他们歪曲事实。)

3) He is tolerant of different opinions. (他能容忍不同意见。)

4) These plants are tolerant of extreme heat. (这些植物能耐酷热。)

5) My tolerance of your impoliteness is limited. (我对你的无礼的忍耐是有限的。)

11. limit n. 限制 v. 限制

limited adj. 有限的

1) She had reached the limit of her patience. (她已到了忍无可忍的地步。)

2) He was fined for exceeding the speed limit. (他因超过车速限制而被罚款。)

3) Try to limit your talk to 5 minutes. (请尽量把话在五分钟内说完。)

4) He limited himself to 10 cigarettes a day. (他限定自己一天抽10支烟。)

5) We must make good use of the limited resources. (我们必须好好利用有限的资源。)

6) Time is limited, we have to stop here today. (时间有限,我们今天只能讲到这儿。)

off limits 禁止进入

within limits 适度的; 在一定范围内

without limit 无限制地

12. celebrate v. 庆祝

celebration n. 庆祝

1) We'll go to celebrate grandma's 70th birthday this weekend. (这个周末我们去庆祝祖母70岁生日。)

2) They are singing and dancing to celebrate their victory. (他们唱歌、跳舞庆祝胜利。)

3) The birthday celebration will be held at home. (生日庆典将在家举行。)

4) The celebration of Chinese New Year used to include a display of fireworks. (过去中国新年庆典包括放焰火。)

13. anonymous adj. 匿名的

an 是一个前缀, 用在元音字母或辅音 h 前, 表示“非”, “没有”, “缺乏”,

如: anarchy (无政府), anonym (匿名者)。

onym 是个词根, 意思是 name (名字), 如 antonym (反义词), synonym (同义词)

-ous 是一个形容词后缀，如 dangerous, famous

1) He was greatly disturbed by the anonymous letter. (匿名信令他极度不安。)

2) The author wishes to remain anonymous. (作者不希望披露姓名。)

14. cheat v. 欺骗; 作弊 n. 骗子

1) The old lady told the policeman that she had been cheated of all her savings. (那位老太太告诉警察她被人骗取了她所有的积蓄。)

2) He was cheated into believing that he was an adopted son. (他被骗得相信自己是个养子。)

3) He said that many high school students cheated on exams. (他说许多中学生考试作弊。)

4) The singer was said to have cheated on income taxes. (据说那位歌手在所得税上弄虚作假。)

5) These drinks I've bought are a cheat, they taste so strange. (我买的这些饮料间冒牌货，味道很怪。)

6) How could you be friends with these cheats? (你怎么能与骗子为友呢?)

15. abstract a. 抽象的 n. 摘要 v. 提取; 摘录...的要点

1) He couldn't understand this abstract idea. (他不能理解这个抽象概念。)

2) An abstract of this paper is needed. (需要有这篇论文的摘要。)

3) He is abstracting a story for a book review. (他正在为一篇书评撰写故事梗概。)

4) They are trying to abstract iron from ore. (他们正试图从矿石中提取铁。)

16. rob v. 抢劫; 非法剥夺

1) He was robbed twice in the downtown area. (他在闹市区两次被抢。)

2) A jewelry store was robbed last night. (昨晚一家珠宝店遭抢劫。)

3) She was robbed of her purse on the bus. (在公共汽车上, 她的钱包被抢。)

4) The pain robbed him of sleep. (疼痛使他不能入睡。)

5) The child was robbed of an opportunity to see his mother. (那孩子被剥夺了一次见母亲的机会。)

17. fraud n. 欺骗; 骗局

1) He obtained the money by fraud. (他骗得了那笔钱。)

2) His explanation was nothing but a fraud. (他的解释完全是骗人的鬼话。)

3) What he did was a fraud on the customers. (他的所为是对顾客的一种欺骗行为。)

18. swindle v. 诈骗 n. 诈骗行为

1) He tried to swindle the insurance company. (他欺骗诈骗保险公司。)

2) Some old people are easily swindled. (有些老人很容易受骗。)

3) The boy swindled the old man out of his money. (那个男孩骗取了老先生的钱财。)

4) The big bank swindle involved a lot of people. (许多人与这起诈骗银行的大案有牵连。)

19. honesty n. 诚实; 坦率

在第十四单元中我们学过副词 honestly. honest 是个形容词。-y 是名词后缀, 加在动词或形容词后面可以构成名词。

如: delivery, discovery, recovery, flattery, modesty, jealousy.

如果我们在 honest, honesty 前面加上前缀 dis-则可以构成反义词。

1) His honesty wins him a lot of friends. (他的诚实赢得了许多朋友。)

2) In all honesty I'm at my wit's end. (说实话, 我现在是智穷计尽。)

3) He is honest to his friends (他对朋友很真诚。)

4) Nobody wanted to have anything to do with this dishonest chap.
(谁都不想与这个不诚实的家伙打交道。)

5) His dishonesty gave his parents a shock. (他的不诚实令他的父母大为吃惊。)

Unit20 (第 59 讲—第 61 讲)

20. probably adv. 很可能, 大概, 或许

probable adj. 有可能

probability n. 可能性

1) He will probably refuse your help. (他很可能会拒绝你的帮助。)

2) Their team will probably win the game. (他们队或许会赢得这场比赛。)

3) It's probable that they will come earlier. (他们可能会早点来。)

4) Overloading was the probable cause of the accident. (超载是事故的可能起因。)

5) There is no probability that he will succeed. (他不可能成功。)

6) There is every probability that she will make a fuss over the matter.
(她很可能对此事大惊小怪。)

本课简介

在本篇课文中作者告诉我们并不只是粗野之人才犯罪,生活中看似无大碍的事情往往有违法律。现实生活是复杂的,不可能像在电影中一样,简单地把人分为好人和坏人。如同疾病可以轻至感冒重至癌症一样,犯罪行为也是有程度的轻重的。人们会对某些违法行为持宽容态度,这也许是因为人们想借此来为自己的某些违法行为开脱。另外,报刊、电视上的暴力使得人们对犯罪司空见惯。在许多情况下,人们不忍去伤害一个具体的人,而对某个不甚具体的群体或个体加以伤害却并不在意。人们对于违法行为的种种错误认识必须得以纠正。严法酷刑、警方的严加防范也许都不能使人完全免于犯罪,变得诚实,每一个人都应从自己做起,使我们的社会成为一个文明的法制社会。

本课语言点

1. Who do you think breaks the law in our society?

本句中 do you think 是个插入语，插入语用于问句中在英语中也是十分常见的，如：

1) What performance do you think they will put on? (你认为他们会表演什么节目?)

2) When do you suppose they will see us? (你认为他们什么时候会见我们?)

3) Where do you suggest we should go during the holiday? (你建议我们假期去哪儿?)

4) How long did he say he would spend on that book? (他说他要在那本书上花多长时间?)

5) What do you suggest he should do to make up for the loss? (为了弥补损失，你建议他该做些什么?)

2. Has anyone you know ever driven drunk?

本句中的 drunk 是个过去分词，在句子中做状语，修饰谓语动词 driven，说明动作发生的情况。这类用法也十分常见，如：

1) He turned away disappointed. (他失望地走开了。)

2) They went home exhausted. (他们回到家里已筋疲力尽了。)

3) We joined in the discussion unprepared. (我们毫无准备地加入了讨论。)

Ever 是个常用词，在使用该词时，常有人犯各种错误。我们来看一下 ever 的主要用法。

1) 表示将来或过去的任何时间。用于否定句、疑问句、条件句中：

Have you ever been to Paris? (你去过巴黎吗?)

Nothing ever makes him happier. (从没有什么事会使他更开心。)

If you are ever in China, please let me know. (如果你什么时候在中国，请让我知道。)

2) 用于表示比较的从句中：

It is raining harder than ever. (雨越下越大了。)

This is the highest mountain I have ever climbed. (这是我所爬过的最高的山。)

The last I ever met him was in Nanjing. (我最后一次遇见他是在南京。)

3) 用于特殊疑问句中, 表示“究竟”, “到底”, “用任何方式”等:

How can I ever thank you? (我究竟怎样才能感谢你?)

Who ever can it be? (那究竟会是谁呢?)

Why ever did you say so? (你究竟为什么这样说?)

4) 表示“总是”: “不断地”: “永远”:

He is ever ready to help others. (他总是乐于助人。)

The little boy is ever making the same mistakes. (那个小男孩总是犯同样的错误。)

Everybody was amazed at her ever youthful face. (每一个人都为她永远年轻的容貌感到惊奇。)

3. Won't some of your friends admit that they have stolen an item from a store?

请注意本句中的动词 admit 的用法。admit 做及物动词用时, 表示“承认”, “确认”, “接纳”。Admit 做不及物动词用时, 表示“通往”: “承认”

1) He admitted threatening Larry. (他承认恐吓了拉里。)

2) The young man was admitted to Harvard. (那位年轻人被哈佛录取了。)

3) This door admits to the backyard. (这扇门通向后院。)

4) He admitted to having broken the vase. (他承认打碎了花瓶。)

5) The shop assistant admitted that she had taken the money. (店员承认是她拿了钱。)

4. in case you did not know, all of these acts are against the law.
本句话的意思是“如果你以前不知道, 所有这些行为都是违法的。”

in case 用于引导条件状语从句和目的状语从句，在从句中，动词可以用虚拟语气，形式为 should+动词原形，也可以不用虚拟语气，而用动词的一般现在时或一般过去时，如：

1) Please remind me of it in case I (should) forget. (万一我忘了，请提醒我。)

2) You had better leave the key at home in case I (should) think of coming back. (你最好把钥匙留在家里以免我想回来。)

5. In the same way that diseases range from the common cold to fatal forms of cancer, crimes vary in degree.

本句中的 range from 和 vary 在前面的课文中都已出现过，再看几个例句。

1) The participants range in age from 14 to 65. (参加者的年龄从14岁到65岁不等。)

2) The flavour of food varies from place to place. (食品的风味各地都不同。)

Crimes vary in degree in the same way that...that 引导的是一个同位语从句对 way 作进一步的说明。in the same way 意思是“以同样的方式”。

1) We would do it in the same way that you did last time. (我们将用你上次所用的同样方法来做这件事。)

2) The teacher talked to the boy in the same way that his teacher had talked to him years ago. (那位老师用多年前他的老师与他交谈的方式同那个男孩谈话。)

6. In addition to breaking the law themselves, people tolerate various levels of crime.

in addition to 意思是“除...之外(还)...”，to 是介词，在其后要用名词或动名词。

1) In addition to bread, I bought you some milk. (除了面包，我还给你买了些牛奶。)

2) In addition to holding a full-time job, he tutored some primary school children. (除了一份全日制的工作，他还辅导几个小学的孩子。)

tolerate 是个及物动词，意思是 put up with (忍受、宽恕)；accept (允许)

1) They tolerate the existence of opinions contrary to their own. (他们允许相反观点的存在。)

2) I cannot imagine how he tolerated the isolation. (我不能想象他是如何忍受这份孤独的。)

7. We become used to seeing blood on the news on television. Become 是一个连系动词, used to 与连系动词或 be 动词连用, 意思是“习惯”, used to 单独用时, 意思是“过去, 曾经”。

1) He is getting used to living in the south. (他正在习惯南方的生活。)

2) I have become used to getting up early in the morning. (我已习惯早起。)

1) He used to work for the government. (他曾为政府做事。)

2) They used to live in the same city. (他们曾在同一座城市生活过。)

请注意 be used to 中的 to 是个介词, 后面要用名词或动名词, used to 中的 to 是个不定式符号, 后面用动词原形。

8. When it comes to respecting the rights of a mass of anonymous individuals, we might not be so responsible.

When it comes to 相当于 so far as...is concerned 意思是“就...而言”, “说到...时”。To 是个介词, 后面用名词或动名词。

1) He is not good at math, but when it comes to English, he is the best. (他的数学不好, 要说到英语他是最好的。)

2) When it comes to giving due respect to the old people, she feels a bit uneasy. (说到给老人应有的尊敬, 她有些不自在。)

请注意 mass 与 mess 的区别。Mass 的意思是“团, 块; 群; 大量”; mess 的意思是“混乱; 一团糟”。

1) The floating masses office would prove to be a threat to the ships. (大块大块的浮冰对船只将是个威胁。)

2) They have collected a great mass of data. (他们已收集了大量资料。)

3) The room is a mess. (这房间又脏又乱。)

4) They made a mess of the job. (他们把事情搞得一团糟。)

9. While most people would not steal a wallet containing \$50, they may not mind cheating on taxes, because cheating on taxes does not hurt any one person.

本句中的 while 意思是 although (虽然, 尽管), 如:

1) While he is respected, he is not well-liked. (尽管他受人尊敬, 但并不被人喜欢。)

2) While I admit his good points, I can see his shortcomings. (尽管我承认他的优点我还是看到他的缺点的。)

在动词 mind 的后面要用动名词、名词短语或从句:

1) Mind the wet paint! (当心, 油漆未干。)

2) Mind your own business! (别管闲事!)

3) Would you mind my smoking? (我抽烟你介意吗?)

4) I don't mind tell him all I know. (我不介意把我知道的都告诉他。)

5) Mind that you don't forget the meeting. (注意别忘了开会。)

10. Perhaps this is why someone who robs a few dollars by force from a corner store will often end up with a longer jail term than a fraud artist who swindles thousands of dollars...

by force 意思是“凭借暴力, 强迫地”, 如:

1) Several youngsters robbed the bank by force. (几个年轻人以暴力抢劫银行。)

2) The boy was robbed of his money by force. (那个男孩的钱被强抢了。)

end up 的意思是“结束, 告终”, 如:

1) You will end up in prison if you go on stealing. (如果你继续偷下去, 你最终会进监狱的。)

2) Wasteful people usually end up in debt. (挥霍浪费者最后往往负债。)

3) We ended up taking a taxi there. (我们最终乘出租车去了那儿。)

4) The party ended up with a chorus. (晚会最后以合唱结束。)

5) If we go on in this way, we shall end up with millions and millions of unemployed. (如果我们继续这样下去, 结果会有数百万人失业。)

term 在本句中的意思是“期限”, 如:

serve one's term of service (服规定年限的兵役)

get a term of ten years in prison (被判十年徒刑)

during one's term of office (任职期间)

11. The police would never be able to keep an eye on everyone, and people would still find ways to bend new laws.

keep an eye on 意思是“照看; 密切注意”, 如:

1) Can you keep an eye on the baby while I go shopping? (我去购物时你能帮我照看一下孩子吗?)

2) Parents won't be able to keep an eye on the children all the time. (父母不可能时时注意孩子们。)

bend 在本句中的意思是“任意歪曲, 篡改”, 如:

1) They tried in vain to bend the rules of the game. (他们篡改比赛规则的企图没有成功。)

2) He took advantage of his power to bend the law to suit his own purposes. (他利用权力篡改法律以适合自己的目的。)

本课主要词组

1. think of

2. be aware

3. go through

4. in case

5. divide into

6. in the same way

7. range from

8. in addition to

9. be tolerant of

10. become used to

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 11. care about | 12. prevent from |
| 13. when it comes to | 14. by force |
| 15. end up | 16. keep an eye on |

Text B Marriage in iran and America: a study in contrasts

短语表达

I. Phrases and expressions

1. compare with

Compared with the products of their factory, ours are superior in quality.

Compared with many other women in her days, she was really lucky.

2. for the purpose of

He cheated on the exam for the purpose of getting a high score.

He told a lie for the purpose of avoiding a possible punishment.

3. a number of

A number of local residents have moved to a new residential area.

A number of miners who had been trapped were saved.

4. be willing to

He was willing to lend us a helping hand when we were in need.

The man was not willing to admit that he was wrong.

5. be married to

She was married to a handsome young man from Germany.

The girl stood up and said she was willing to be married to the poor artist.

6. be involved in

No one wanted to be involved in this matter.

Mr. Li didn't expect that his son could be involved in this robbery.

7. respond to

How did the audience respond to your speech?

He responded to his wife's complaints by turning a deaf ear to her.

8. be allowed to

He is allowed to read in prison.

The boy is not allowed to play video games.

Unit21 (第 62 讲—第 64 讲)

Text A the language of uncertainty

本课主要单词

1. dominate v. rule, control (统治, 支配, 控制)

domination n. 统治、支配、控制

1) He felt ill at ease living in a white-dominated society. (他觉得生活在一个白人统治的社会里很不自在。)

2) His opinion dominated the other members of the committee. (他的看法对委员会的其他成员起了决定性影响。)

3) This issue dominated the discussion. (这个议题在讨论中占了首要地位。)

4) Agriculture has lost its dominance in many countries. (农业在许多国家已失去了优势。)

5) The domination of Europe over the rest of the world has long since declined. (欧洲对世界其他地区的支配作用早已衰弱。)

2. judgment n. 判决; 看法; 判断

judge v. 审判; 判断; 认为

n. 法官; 裁判员

1) He hoped the judgment would be in his favor. (他希望判决对他有利。)

2) He sometimes couldn't live with himself if he made a mistake in judgment. (如果判断失误, 他有时不能容忍自己。)

3) In my judgment, we should do it right now. (依我看, 我们应该马上做这件事。)

4) He was brought to the judge, accused of stealing. (他被指控行窃而带到法官面前受审。)

5) Mr. Li is going to be a judge of a beauty contest. (李先生将做选美比赛的裁判员。)

6) The young man was judged innocent. (那个年轻人被判无罪。)

7) We cannot judge whether it is right or wrong. (我们不能判断这是对还是错。)

8) I judge she knew what she was doing. (依我看, 她当时知道她在干什么。)

3. editorial n. 社论 adj. 编辑的

editor n. 编辑

edit v. 编辑; 校订; 修改

1) This issue carries a weighty editorial on education. (这期登了一篇有关教育的很有分量的社论。)

2) The editorial policies haven't changed a bit over the years. (这些年来编辑方针没有丝毫改变。)

3) He was made assistant editor on the paper. (他被任为那报纸的助理编辑。)

4) The chief editor was on a business trip. (主编出差了。)

5) Scholars often edit Shakespeare's plays. (学者们常校订莎士比亚的剧本。)

6) He is carefully editing his speech. (他正在仔细修改自己的讲稿。)

4. wage n. 工资, 报酬

v. 进行, 开展

wage (s) 通常指付给从事体力劳动或技术工作的人们的报酬，也可以指按星期付给从事该类工作的人们的工资。

1) They stopped working to press for better wages and working conditions. (他们停止工作，要求更高的报酬和更好的工作条件。)

2) His wages are 200 dollars a week. (他的工资是200美元一周。)

3) They waged a campaign against cheating on exams. (他们开展了反对考试作弊的运动。)

4) Germany waged a war against Poland. (德国对波兰开战。)

5. probability n. 可能性；概率

probable adj. 可能的

在前一单元中，我们学习了副词 probably，同时也讲了名词 probability 和形容词 probable 的用法。再看几个例句：

1) The probability of an earthquake disturbed everybody. (地震的可能使每一个人不安。)

2) In all probability, they could perform many different musical instruments. (他们很可能会演奏许多种不同的乐器。)

3) Every event has a particular probability of occurring. (每个事件都有其特定的发生率。)

4) This is the most probable interpretation of the situation. (这是对形势的最可能的解释。)

5) Xiao Wang is the probable winner. (小王是颇有希望得胜的人。)

6) It is probable that he forgot. (他或许是忘记了。)

6. verbal adj. 言辞的；口头的；动词的

1) This job calls for excellent verbal talent. (这份工作需要极好的口才。)

2) The difference is merely verbal. (差别仅仅在于措辞。)

3) “en” and “-ize” are common verbal endings. (“en” 和 “-ize” 是常见的动词词尾。)

verbal instructions (文字说明) a verbal protest (口头抗议)

a verbal agreement (口头协议)

7. imprecision n. 不精确, 不正确 imprecise adj. 不精确的; 不正确的

im-是一个前缀, 通常加在以“m”、“p”、或“b”为首的形容词、副词和名词前, 构成反义词。如: immature (不成熟的), immodest (不谦虚的), immoral (不道德的); impossible (不可能的), impolite (不礼貌的), impatience (不耐烦); imbalance (不平衡) 等等。

-ion 是一个名词后缀, 我们已经多次碰到过, 如 protection (保护), extension (延伸)。

1) The imprecision of the ordinary words led to many misunderstandings. (日常用词意义的含混引起了许多误解。)

2) The imprecision of the ruler gave him a lot of trouble. (尺子的不精确给他带来了很大麻烦。)

3) My ideas about it were imprecise. (我对这个问题的看法不准确。)

4) The terms he used were imprecise. (他用的术语不确切。)

8. denote v. indicate, show (指示; 代表; 是...的标记)

1) Dark clouds denote rain. (乌云是下雨的预兆。)

2) Red flares denote danger. (红色火焰是危险的标记。)

3) My identity was denoted by a plastic label on my wrist. (我手腕上的塑料标签表明了我的身份。)

9. subjective adj. 主观的

subject n. 主观; 题目; 学科; 臣民; 主语 adj. 受支配的; 易受...的

1) It is only my subjective impression. (这仅是我的主观印象。)

2) How can you fully believe his subjective judgement? (你怎能完全相信他的主观判断?)

3) What's the subject for today's debate? (今天辩论的题目是什么?)

4) I am taking four subjects this semester. (本学期我选四门课。)

5) He is a British subject. (他是英国臣民。)

6) India is no longer subject to British rule. (印度不再受英国统治了。)

7) This area is subject to seasonal winds. (这个地区常遭受季风的袭击。)

10. potentially adv. 可能地, 潜在地

potential adj. 潜在的, 可能的 n. 潜力, 可能性

1) Electricity is potentially dangerous. (电是潜力的危险。)

2) The dispute has scared away potential investors. (这场争论吓跑了可能的投资者。)

3) The hole in the road is a potential danger. (路上的那个坑是个潜在的危险。)

4) The system gives everyone a chance to tap one's potential to the full. (这种体制给了每个人充分发挥潜能的机会。)

11. prediction n. 预言; 预报

predict v. 预言, 预报

pre-是一个前缀, 表示 before, 如: prehistoric (史前的), preschool (学前)。

dict 是个词根, 意思是 to say, 如: contradict (矛盾; 否定), dictator (独裁者; 口授者)

1) Have you listened to the weather prediction for the day? (你听了当天的天气预报了吗?)

2) They made prediction about possible price increase. (他们对物价上涨的可能性进行预测。)

3) The weather scientists predicted a light rain and temperature drop. (气象专家们预测有小雨, 气温将下降。)

4) I cannot predict what will happen. (我无法预料将会发生什么事情。)

12. signify v. 表示…的意思；表明；意味着

signification n. 意义；表示

我们讲到过-fy 是个动词后缀，意思是 make，如 identify, beautify, purify 等等。

sign 是词根，意思是 mark，如：signature（签字，记号），design（设计，意图）

1) “MD” signifies “Doctor of Medicine”。（“MD”意为“医学博士”。）

2) He signifies consent with a smile.（他微笑表示同意。）

3) The clouds signified the coming storm.（乌云预示着即将有暴风雨。）

4) Signification relies largely upon words and gestures.（表示意思主要靠言词和示意动作。）

13. secondly adv. 第二，其次

1) He was first of all a dishonest chap, secondly he was irresponsible.（首先他是个不诚实的家伙，其次他没有责任心。）

2) I don't like this pair of shoes. Firstly the color is awful; secondly it is too expensive.（我不喜欢这双鞋。首先颜色很糟糕，其次价格太贵。）

14. assign v. 分配；指派；指定；布置

assignment n. 任务；作业；分配

1) They assigned me a small room.（他们分给我一个小房间。）

2) I was assigned to the mountain village.（我被派到那个山村工作。）

3) Have you assigned a day for the meeting?（你们指定了开会日期吗？）

4) He finished all the homework assignments in two hours.（他用两小时完成了全部的家庭作业。）

5) My first major assignment as a reporter was to cover a large scale riot.（我做记者的首次重要任务是采访一个大规模暴动。）

15. marked adj. 明显的；显著的

1) The patient showed a marked improvement. (病人的病情显著好转。)

2) A marked police car sped past just now. (刚才一辆有标记的警车急驶而过。)

3) The boy showed marked improvements in spelling and reading. (那个男孩在拼写和阅读方面有了显著提高。)

16. widen v. 加宽，放宽扩大

我们在前面讲到过-en 可以做动词后缀，用在名词或形容词后面构成动词，如：lengthen, heighten, shorten, brighten 等等。

1) The river widens where it meets the sea. (那条河在入海口处变宽了。)

2) The road finally widened and we didn't have to worry about traffic blocks any more. (那条路终于拓宽了，我们不用再担心交通堵塞了。)

3) The misunderstanding widened the gulf between the two sides. (误解加深了双方的隔阂。)

4) His arguments widened my ideas. (他的论点开阔了我的思路。)

5) He stared at me, his eyes widening. (他逼视着我，眼睛睁得大大的。)

17. consistent adj. 坚持的，一贯的，与…符合

consistency n. 一致，连贯，坚持

1) The professor had a consistent attitude towards all his students. (这位教授对他所有的学生一视同仁。)

2) His deeds are not consistent with his words. (他们言行不一致。)

3) The manager's statement was consistent with the fact. (经理的说法与事实相符。)

4) There is no consistency between the movie and the book. (电影和书的情节不符。)

5) Her rude behavior is not in consistency with her usual polite nature. (她的粗鲁行为和她平时斯文的性情不相符合。)

Unit21 (第 62 讲—第 64 讲)

18. systematically adv. 有系统地; 有计划地

systematic adj. 有系统的, 有条理的

1) They did everything systematically. (他们有条不紊地做了一切。)

2) Do you have a systematic plan for the project? (对于这项工程你们有系统计划吗?)

3) These skills are developed in a systematic way. (这些技能是有计划地发展的。)

本课简介

本文作者指出生活中有许多不确定的事物, 这种种的不确定支配着我们的语言。我们的日常话语中很多 probably, many, soon, great, little 一类词。不确定的语言主要有三类。一是如 probably, possibly, surely 一类词, 代表了一种主观的可能, 是可定量的。二是如 many, often, soon 一类词, 这类词虽可定量, 但他们表示的是一个知之不确的数量。三是如 fat, rich, drunk 一类词, 这类词不可能转化为任何可接受的数目, 因为不同的人赋予它们不同的价值观。

在特定的上下文中, 这些词是有什么意义? 与使用者的年龄有何关联? 作者告诉我们三个实验结果。一, 数量取决于所涉及的事物; 二, 所涉及的事物总量的大小会影响到一种说法被赋予的数值。三, 年龄的影响极为明显。

本课主要语言点

1. Uncertainty spreads through our lives so thoroughly that it dominates our language.

动词 spread 的过去式和过去分词与动词原形是一样的。本句中的 spread 意思是 becomes known or shared by more and more people (散布), 如:

1) News of the air crash spread quickly. (飞机坠毁的消息很快传播开了。)

2) He is making a lecture tour to spread his political influence. (他在作巡回演讲以扩大自己的政治影响。)

3) People seem to love spreading gossip. (人们似乎爱传闲话。)

spread 这个词还可以做名词用, 再请看几个例子, 注意 spread 的意思和词类:

1) A scene of property spreads out before us. (一幅欣欣向荣的景象展现在我们面前。)

2) The spread of education benefits many girls. (教育的普及使许多女孩得益。)

3) He was spreading peanut butter on bread. (他正往面包上涂花生酱。)

4) Many people died as a result of the spread of fire. (火势蔓延致使多人丧生。)

5) You may consider spreading the work load. (你可以考虑把工作分摊一下。)

lives 是 life 的复数形式。life 做可数名词用时，意思是“生命”，“一生，寿命”，如：

1) He nearly lost his life. (他几乎送了命。)

2) Fourteen children lost their lives in the fire. (十四个孩子在火中丧生。)

3) People spend their lives worrying about wealth and health. (人们一生都在为金钱和健康担忧。)

2. Our everyday speech is made up in large part of words...

in part 意为“在某种程度上；部分地”；in large part 则表示“很大部分”，如：

1) Some forms of mental illness are caused in part by lack of communication. (有些形式的精神疾病部分是由于缺少交流引起的。)

2) The driver should in large part be responsible for the accident. (司机应为这起事故负大部分责任。)

Be made up of 意思是“由...组成”，如：

1) The medical team is made up of 4 doctors and 2 nurses. (那个医疗队由 4 名医生和 2 名护士组成。)

2) His class is made up of 50 students. (他的班级由 50 名学生组成。)

3. Atomic war is likely to destroy forever the nation that wages it.

在前面我们已多次碰到 be likely to, 我们提到过 be likely 的主语可以是 it, 也可以是其他名词, 如:

1) It is likely that he will be here in 30 minutes. (他过 30 分钟可能会到这儿。)

2) The disease is likely to spread. (这种疾病可能会传播。)

It is likely that the disease will spread.

forever 是副词, 意思是 for good, completely (永远地), 如:

They will vanish forever into the twilight. (他们将永远消失在黄昏里。)

forever 与进行时态连用, 表示“老是, 不断”, 如:

1) She is forever asking to borrow something. (她没完没了地向人借东西。)

2) The teacher was forever spotting trivial errors in their calculations. (老师总是在他们的计算中发现错误。)

that wages it 是定语从句, 修饰 nation. Wage 在本句中用作动词, 意思是 start (发起, 开展), 如: They waged a campaign against nuclear tests. (他们开展了反核试验运动。)

4. Lacking any standard for estimating the probability, we are left with the judgment of the editorial writer.

句中的 lack 是一个及物动词, 意思是“缺乏”, lack 也可用作不及物动词和名词, 请看下面的例句, 注意 lack 的用法。

1) He wasn't a stern man, in spite of his lack of humor. (尽管他缺少幽默感, 但他不是一个苛刻的人。)

2) Lack of funding is making our job more difficult. (资金短缺使我们的工作更加困难。)

3) There was no lack of hands. (人手并不缺。)

4) He is lacking in responsibility. (他不够负责。)

5) Your statement lacks detail. (你的叙述不够详尽具体。)

leave sth. with sb. 意思是“把...留给某人”, 如:

1) Leave your telephone number with the secretary. (把你的电话号码留给秘书。)

2) He left his bicycle with his brother when he went on holiday. (他去度假时, 把自行车放在他弟弟那儿。)

5. Indeed, it has a value just because it allows us to express judgments when a precise quantitative statement is out of the question.

allow sb. to do sth. 意思是“允许某人做某事”, 如:

1) They were allowed to stay there longer. (他们被允许在那儿时间呆长点。)

2) He allowed me to take two books. (他允许我拿两本书。)

请注意区别 out of the question 和 out of question:

out of the question 意为“不可能的”, “办不到的”。如:

1) I haven't finished my homework yet, going shopping now is out of the question. (我还没做完作业, 现在去购物是不可能的。)

2) Going swimming at this time of the year is out of the question. (一年中这个时候游泳是不可能的。)

out of question 意为“毫无疑问”。如:

1) Getting some help from her is out of question. (得到她的帮助不成问题。)

2) It is out of question to get the job. (得到那份工作没问题。)

6. ...which are also quantifiable but denote not so much a condition of certainty as a quantity imprecisely known;

not so much...as...意思是“与其说...不如说...”。如:

1) He is not so much a reporter as a writer. (与其说他是一个记者, 还不如说他是作家。)

2) His achievement was made not so much because of luck as because of hard work. (他取得的成就与其说是由于运气, 不如说是由于努力。)

7. ...which can not be reduced to any accepted number because they are given different values by different people.

reduce 的意思是 make sth. smaller in size or amount or less in degree (减少, 减轻), 如:

1) They have promised to reduce the cost. (他们已经答应降低成本。)

2) The workforce would have to be reduced by 50%. (劳动力将减少百分之五十。)

reduce sb. to a particular state 指处于(某种状态); 使艰难(处境), 用被动语态时, 表示“迫使”。如:

1) He was reduced to begging in the old days. (在旧社会他被逼得讨饭。)

2) The old lady was reduced to despair. (老太太陷入了绝望。)

在课文中的这个句子里, be reduced to 意思是“使化为, 使变为”, 如:

1) This kind of analysis reduce the problem to its simplest form. (这种分析方法使问题变得最为简单。)

2) He had always wanted to reduce his thoughts to writing. (他一直想把自己的思想变成文字。)

8. We have been trying to pin down by experiments what people mean by these expressions in specific contexts, ...

pin 作名词用时指“别针, 大头针”, 如 a safety pin (安全别针); 作动词用时指“别住”: “使不能行动”, pin down 的意思是“准确说明”, “牵制”。如:

1) He pinned a badge on his jacket. (他外套上别了一枚徽章。)

2) She pinned the papers together before giving them to the manager. (把文件给经理前, 她用针把它们别好。)

3) They pinned him down to a promise. (他们迫使他履行诺言。)

4) We are trying to pin down his speech. (我们正努力准确说明他的讲话。)

两个 by 在句中都是介词, 表示“靠, 用, 通过”, 如:

1) What do you mean by that? (你这样讲是什么意思?)

2) He put the young man in an awkward situation by asking him some personal questions. (他通过问一些私人问题使那个年轻人陷入尴尬。)

9. ...we find that the number depends of course on the items involved.

...the size of the population of items influences the value assigned to an expression.

上面两句中的过去分词 involved 和 assigned 其前都省去了 that (which) are (is), 做定语修饰 items 和 value.

本课主要短语

1. be made up of
2. in part
3. be likely to
4. be left with
5. allow sb. to do sth.
6. out of the question
7. not so much...as...
8. be reduced to
9. pin down
10. compare with
11. be certain to
12. in place of

Text B it never rains but it pours!

谚语

1. There is no smoke without fire.
2. Don't wash your dirty linen in the public.
3. It's no use crying over spilt milk.

4. Make the best out of a bad job.
5. It never rains but it pours.
6. Every dog is allowed one bite.
7. One man's meat is another man's poison.
8. Let sleeping dogs lie.
9. He who rides a tiger is afraid to dismount.
10. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
11. There is no such thing as a free lunch.

短语表达

1. relevance to / be relevant to

What he said had no relevance to the present question.

They could not forward any relevant proof.

2. believe in

I believe him but I don't believe in him.

He believes in Christianity.

3. pass on to

Would you please pass this message on to Xiao Li?

Thank you for passing the news on to me.

4. in the form of

He showed his appreciation to her in the form of a letter of thanks.

They gave the children a lot of help in the form of books.

5. a reminder of

This proverb can be used as a reminder of the correct way to behave.

This picture is a reminder of my past.

6. in times of

They are said to be more intelligent in times of difficulties.

This could be a comfort in times of trouble.

7. be native to

Rice is believed to be native to China.

This saying is native to the American Indians.

8. go wrong

When anything goes wrong with his car he will hasten to his auto repairman.

I don't know what has gone wrong with my computer.

9. be based on

His comments are based on facts.

This film is based on the life story of a general.

10. date back to

This invention can be dated back to the Han Dynasty.

This old law dated back to the 17th century.

11. pay compensation to

The insurance company would pay compensation to the victims.

The supermarket refused to pay any compensation to the customer.

12. be harmful to

Excessive smoking is harmful to your health.

TV violence is harmful to children.

13. come into contact with

China came into more contact with the outside world in the late 1980s.

We learned more as we came into contact with them.

14. borrow from

He borrowed a lot of money from his friends.

Some of the English words are borrowed from other languages.

15. start on

He started on his journey last week.

You have to get well prepared if you want to start on a dangerous enterprise.

16. in return

They gave you so much help, what are you going to do in return?

I didn't expect any favor from you in return.

17. be reluctant to

He is reluctant to make any comment on this issue.

The boy was reluctant to tell his father the truth.

Unit22 (第 65 讲—第 67 讲)

Text A current attitudes toward physical fitness

本课主要单词

1. fitness n. 适当, 合理; 健康

fit v. (使) 适合; 与...相称; 合身; 容纳 adj. 合适的; 正当的; 健康的; 合格的

1) He does morning exercises every day to improve his fitness. (他每天做早操以增加体质。)

2) He tried every means to make me believe the fitness of his decision. (他尽一切可能使我相信他的决定的合理性。)

3) I am going to help you choose the fridge that fits your needs. (我将帮你挑选适合你需要的冰箱。)

4) Try on this jacket and see if it fits you. (试试这件茄克, 看看是否合身。)

5) This shelter can only fit a family of three. (这个防空洞只能容纳一家三口。)

6) The water in this river is not fit to drink. (这条河里的水不适合饮用。)

7) She is fit for the job. (她能胜任这项工作。)

8) The old man looks fit. (那位老人看上去身体很好。)

2. misuse v. (n.) 误用, 滥用; 虐待

mis-是一个常用的前缀, 意思是 badly or wrongly. 如 misunderstand (误解), misdirect (指错方向), misfortune (不幸), misspelling (拼写错误)

1) He misused a word in his report, which caused much confusion. (他在报告里用错了一个字, 引起了莫大的混乱。)

2) He misused his servants. (他苛待仆人。)

3) You can see for yourself how he misused his powers. (你可以亲眼去看他是如何滥用权力的。)

3. assure v. 使确信, 使放心; 向...保证

assurance n. 保证; 信心

1) He assured me that there was nothing really wrong with my car. (他向我保证我的车实际上并没有什么问题。)

2) I can assure you of his sincerity. (他的真诚我可以向你保证。)

3) She was assured a well-paid job after graduation. (有人保证她毕业后有一份待遇优厚的工作。)

4) The hunter killed the snake and the child's life was assured. (猎人打死了蛇, 孩子的生命保证了。)

5) He assured his property with this company. (他向这家公司保了财产险。)

6) Her assurance that she would help gave me encouragement. (她会帮忙的保证给了我鼓励。)

7) He continued his experiment with assurance. (他充满信心地继续他的试验。)

8) There is an assurance company round the corner. (不远处有一家保险公司。)

4. career n. 生涯; 职业; (事业的) 成功

1) His career as a journalist was about to begin. (他的记者生涯即将开始。)

2) His political career ended after he left the white House. (离开白宫后, 他的政治生涯就告结束了。)

3) She decided to make teaching her career. (她决定以教书为业。)

4) He has a career before him. (他前程远大。)

5. priority n. 优先, 重点; …优先考虑的事

prior adj. 在先的; 居先的; 优先的

1) They insist that the right to live should take priority over all other considerations. (他们坚持认为, 生存权利应放在其他一切因素之上。)

2) Security is a top priority. (安全是应予最优先考虑的事。)

3) We should place priority on the interest of the public. (我们应优先考虑公众的利益。)

4) She quitted her job without prior discussion with her parent. (她未经事先与父母商讨就辞了职。)

5) A week prior to the meeting, he made a phone call to me. (在见面前的一个星期, 他给我打了个电话。)

6. pro adv. 从正面 prep. 赞成 n. 赞成的意见, 赞成者

con adv. 从反面 prep. 反对 n. 反对的意见; 反对者

1) Much has been written on the subject pro and con. (有关这个问题已有很多论著, 有正面的, 也有反面的。)

2) The pros and cons of mixed schooling are now under discussion. (男女同校的利弊问题正在讨论之中。)

3) Are you pro or con nuclear disarmament? (你是赞成还是反对核裁军?)

7. Involvement n. 卷入, 牵连; 复杂情况

involve v. 使卷入, 牵涉; 包含

1) He didn't have any direct involvement in this affair. (他未直接卷入这个事件中。)

2) His parents warned him to avoid involvement with the street-loafers. (他父母告诫他不要与街头的游手好闲者牵连在一起。)

3) My personal involvement with him and his family is deep. (我个人和他以及他的家庭瓜葛很深。)

4) He was involved in stealing. (他卷进了偷盗事件中。)

5) The investigation involves a lot innocent people. (这次调查牵扯到许多无辜者。)

6) Swimming involves long hours of training. (游泳必须进行数小时的训练。)

8. pursuit n. 追踪, 追求, 乐趣

1) I don't know what they are in pursuit of. (我不知道他们在追求什么)

2) In the pursuit of their goal, they got a lot of help from friends. (他追求目标的过程中, 他们得到了朋友的大力帮助。)

3) They are now engaged in scientific pursuit. (他们在从事科学研究。)

4) Stamp-collecting is one of his favorite pursuits. (他的爱好之一是集邮。)

9. limitation n. 限制, 局限, 缺陷

1) All railways have weight and height limitations, because of tunnels, bridges and so on. (由于隧道、桥梁等原因, 所有铁道皆有载重及车厢高度限制。)

2) As the old saying goes, a wise man knows his own limitations. (正如古谚语所说, 明智的人有自知之明。)

3) With all its advantages, the computer is by no means without its limitations. (尽管计算机有许多优点, 但绝非没有局限性。)

10. time-consuming adj. 耗费时间的

n+v-ing 构成的复合形容词十分常见。如 labor-saving (省力的), energy-consuming (耗费能源的)

1) Doing housework and taking care of little children can be very time-consuming. (料理家务照看孩子非常耗费时间。)

2) Before you take up this project, you must be fully aware that it is really time-consuming. (在你着手这个项目前, 你必须充分意识到这的确很浪费时间。)

11. recreation n. 娱乐活动, 消遣

1) His only recreations are playing chess and working in the garden. (他唯一的消遣活动是下棋和养花种草。)

2) He always told us that he was too busy for recreation. (他总是对我们说他太忙, 没空消遣。)

12. schedule n. 日程表 v. 安排, 排定

1) He looked at the schedule of postal charges trying to find out how much he would have to pay. (他看着邮费价目表, 想弄清楚得付多少钱。)

2) They wanted to plan a tight schedule of travel. (他们想安排一个紧凑的旅行日程。)

3) The organizer of the conference came to tell them the schedule for the following days. (会议组织者来告诉他们随后几天的日程安排。)

4) The train arrived two behind schedule. (火车误点两小时。)

5) They finished their work ahead of schedule. (他们提前完成了任务。)

6) The Wilson's are scheduling a visit to China. (威尔逊一家正在安排来中国游览。)

7) He is scheduled to arrived tomorrow. (他定于明天到达。)

13. facility n. 设备, 设施; 便利, 容易; 技巧

1) They decided to spend more on educational facilities. (他们决定加大在教育设备上的投入。)

2) The kitchen is equipped with all the necessary modern facilities. (厨房里装有所有必备的现代化设备。)

3) The experts are satisfied with the airport facilities. (专家们对机场设施很满意。)

4) This tool can be used with greater facility than that one. (这个工具使用起来比那个工具方便。)

5) He has great facility in learning languages. (他很有学习语言的技能。)

14. commitment n. 承担的责任或义务, 承诺, 信奉

1) He seemed to lack the commitment to pursue a difficult task the very end. (他似乎缺少一种将困难工作做到最后的献身精神。)

2) I cannot give you any commitment for more leave and better pay. (我不能允诺你更多休假、更高报酬。)

3) We cannot expect him to carry out his campaign commitments. (我们不能指望他履行竞选诺言。)

4) The No.1 domestic commitment of the next Administration is to control inflation. (下届政府对国内承担的首要义务是控制通货膨胀。)

15. scope n. (活动, 影响能力的) 范围

1) He is looking for a job that will give him greater scope for initiative. (他在寻找一个能使他充分发挥积极性的工作。)

2) Such subjects are not within the scope of my mind. (这些问题不在本书论及的范围之内。)

3) What you talked about was beyond the scope of my mind. (你所谈的超出了我的理解范围。)

4) I'd like to have more scope for putting my ideas into practice. (我希望能有更多的机会实施我的新主意。)

16. comment n. 评论, 评注

v. 评论

1) He refused to make any comment on the rumor that he had bribed the officials. (他拒绝对他贿赂官员的传言发表任何评论。)

2) Do you have any comment on this article? (你对这篇文章有什么意见?)

3) The spokesman commented on the recent development of national economy. (发言人对近来国有经济的形势发表了意见。)

4) If you comment on his work favorably, he will be very happy. (如果你对他的工作予以好评, 他会非常高兴。)

17. maintain v. 维持, 保持; 维修, 保养, 扶养; 断言

1) Maintaining law and order is of top priority. (维持法律和秩序是头等大事。)

2) Everyone should contribute to maintaining world peace. (每个人都应为维护世界和平作出贡献。)

3) To get there before dark, you have to maintain a high speed of 80 miles an hour. (你得保持每小时 80 英里的高速才能在天黑之前到那儿。)

4) Their work is to maintain railway lines. (他们的工作是养护铁路。)

5) He found it so hard to maintain a family of five. (他感到要负担一个五口之家很困难。)

6) He maintained that such things should never be done again. (他强调这种事情不应再发生了。)

18. approach v. 靠近; 处理(问题) n. 方法; 接近

1) The train is approaching the station. (火车在向车站靠近。)

2) His work is approaching perfection. (他的工作渐臻完美。)

3) He approached the problem with calm and caution. (他沉着而审慎地对持那个问题。)

4) Go home quickly, a storm is approaching. (快点回家, 暴风雨即将来临。)

5) Our approach drove away the wild animals. (我们一靠近就把野兽赶跑了。)

6) The best approach to this problem is to cut down cost and increase efficiency. (解决这个问题的最好方法是降低成本, 提高效率。)

Unit22 (第 65 讲—第 67 讲)

19. positive adj. 确定的; 积极地, 肯定地

positively adv. 确定地, 明确地; 积极地, 肯定地

1) He was frightened by the results of his blood test, for all tested items show positive reactions. (验血结果把他吓坏了, 每一个项目都显示阳性反应。)

2) I'm positive about it. (对这点我有绝对把握。)

3) They longed for a positive answer. (他们渴望得到肯定的答复。)

4) You should adopt a more positive attitude toward life. (对生活你应该采取更积极的态度。)

5) He never answered my questions positively. (他从不肯定地回答我的问题。)

20. aspect n. 方向; 外表

1) They considered the plan in all its aspects. (他们全面地考虑了这一计划。)

2) His face had a frightening aspect. (他的脸色很吓人。)

21. emerge v. 出现

1) The sun emerged from behind a cloud. (太阳从云朵后面出来了。)

2) Different ideas have emerged. (不同意见出现了。)

3) A modern industrial city is now emerging. (一个现代化的工业城市正在兴起。)

本课简介

人人都知道健康的重要, 但人们对于参加健身活动的态度如何呢? 本文作者通过许多具体的事例告诉我们, 人们对于参加健身活动有许多认识上的误区, 因而有必要重新审视自己在这问题上的态度和做法。

人们对于健康活动有哪些看法呢？一些学生认为，留出时间来健身是浪费时间，健身活动并不比学打桥牌对他更有用，学业和前程才是最重要的。还有人认为健身固然重要，但实在没有时间健身。也有人说自己已经够健康了，保持现状应该没有问题。另外有些人则抱怨没有运动设施，也无法从他人那儿得到什么帮助，或者觉得运动后的浑身汗味令他们不舒服。

以上种种皆是不愿意进行健身活动的人们的看法，那么对于那些愿意进行健身活动的人们来说，他们的认识和做法也并非没有问题。有人说，我跑步是因为宿舍里的每一个人都在晚上跑步。也有人说，我运动时每消耗 3500 卡热量就能减掉一磅体重，圣诞节前我只有十磅要减了。还有人说，这个周末天气凉爽，星期六看来是个好日子。另外，健身只是为了长寿也是常见的看法。

你的认识是否类似于上述某种观点？请记住健康虽不一定保证长寿，但能有助于你快乐地生活每一天。

本课主要语言点

1. Recently we were told by a student that setting aside time for improving his physical fitness would be a total misuse of his working hours.

that 引导的是一个宾语从句，在这个从句中，动名词短语 setting aside time...做主语，此类结构在英语中很常见。如：

1) He told me that getting up early in the morning was hard for him. (他告诉我早起对他来说很困难。)

2) The teacher said that cheating on exams was on the increase in many schools. (那位老师说在许多学校考试作弊现象在增长。)

3) My brother told me that setting up his own company would not be totally impossible. (我兄弟对我说建立他自己的公司并不是一件完全不可能的事。)

set aside 意思是 to reserve or keep sth. for a special use or purpose (留出、拨出)；set aside 也可表示 overturn (驳回、取消)，disregard (不顾)。如：

1) He decided to set aside 50 yuan every month so that he could buy a used bike. (他打算每个月留出 50 块钱以便能买辆二手自行车。)

2) His parents asked him to set aside 30 minutes every morning reading English. (他父母要求他每天早晨留出 30 分钟读英语。)

3) The government set aside thirteen per cent of the money for health and education. (政府拨出这笔钱地百分之十三用于健康和教育。)

4) The original verdict was eventually set aside by the Supreme Court. (原先地裁决最终被最高法庭驳回。)

5) We must set aside all formality and another try. (我们必须不拘形式再试一次。)

a / the misuse of sth.意思是 use sth. in an incorrect or improper manner (误用、滥用)。如:

The misuse of company assets brought about heavy losses. (滥用公司财产造成了严重损失。)

在词汇部分我们讲到 mis-是一个前缀, 常指 things being done badly or wrongly. 如: understand-misunderstand, print-misprint 等等。

2. He assured us that he would be no better served by a fitness program than by learning to play bridge.

本句中地 no 是一个副词, 用在副词比较级地前面, 表示“并不、毫不”。no 也可以在形容词比较级地前面。如: no more than, no less than, no longer than, no farther than 等等。

1) I could no more play piano than you. (我和你一样不会弹钢琴。)

2) This place is no better than slum. (这地方与贫民窟差不多。)

better 是副词 well 的比较级形式, served 是个过去分词, 可用作形容词, 如: better organized, better prepared, better managed 等等。

assure 是个及物动词, 意思是“使确信、使放心”, 主要用法是:

1) assure sb. of sth.

He assured me of the feasibility of the plan. (他使我确信这个计划是可行的。)

2) assure sb. that.....

I assured my mother that I would handle the problem. (我向母亲保证我能处理这个问题。)

请注意区别 assure, ensure, insure 和 secure 这四个动词。

assure 指以十分肯定的语气向别人保证某事一定发生，多用 assure sb. of / that 在结构中；ensure 意为确保某种行动或动因的结果一定会发生，后面可以跟 sth. 或 that 从句，但不能带双宾语；insure 意思是“给… 保险”；secure 的意思是 make safe（使安全）。

1) He assured me that Dr. Baker would come. (他向我保证贝克博士会来。)

2) To ensure the child's quick recovery, the doctor gave him three different medicines. (为了保证孩子尽快康复，医生给了他三种不同的药物。)

3) The house is insured against fire. (这房子保了火灾险。)

4) They tried their best to secure the bridge from further attack. (他们尽力保护桥梁免受进一步的攻击。)

3. College and his preparation for a career were his only priorities. 请注意区 prepare 和 prepare for 的区别。

prepare sb. or sth. 指 make them ready for an event or action that will happen in the future, 如：

We have to prepare our lessons carefully. (我们得仔细备课。)

prepare for an event or action 指 get oneself ready for it; make plans for it so that it and prepared when it happens, 如：

The children washed out hands and prepared for the meal. (孩子们洗好手准备吃饭。)

名词 preparation 通常用在短语 make preparations for 和 in preparation for 当中，如：

1) They were making preparations for the old man's funeral. (他们在为老人的葬礼做准备。)

2) We will have to collect new material in preparation for the experiment. (我们得收集新资料为实验作准备。)

priority 指 give priority to 和 take / has priority 当中。如：

1) This project has priority over all others. (这个项目比所有其他项目都更受重视。)

2) Education is given first priority in their family. (教育在他们家是予以最优先考虑的问题。)

4. This student has seen being physically fit as an end rather than the means we know it to be.

see sth. as 意思是“把…看作为”，我们以前学过不少类似的短语，如：regard…as, look upon…as, think of…as, view…as 等等。

being physically fit 意思是“身体健康”。

an end rather than the means 意思是“是一种目的而不是达到目的的方法”。rather than 意思是“而不是”。

1) He was seen as the most capable person in the company. (人们认为他是公司最能干的人。)

2) We saw her silence as consent. (我们把她的沉默看作为同意。)

3) To be physically fit is our greatest wish for grandfather. (身体健康是我们对爷爷的最大希望。)

4) You need to do more exercise if you want to be physically fit. (如果你想身体健康，就需要进行更多的锻炼。)

5) He came all the way to China for promoting friendship rather than for making money. (他千里迢迢来到中国不是为了赚钱，而是为了增进友谊。)

5. His opinion is one of the many feelings, pro or con, that people hold about their personal involvement in a physical fitness program.

pro 和 con 在本句中作形容词用，pro 的意思是 for (赞成)，con 的意思是 against (反对)。pro or con 在句子中作后置定语，修饰名词 feeling. 后置定语在英语中也很常见。如：

1) Countries, big or small, should be equal. (国家无论大小都是平等的。)

2) He studied in a room, clean and tidy. (他在干净整齐的房间里学习。)

(在上述例句中，两个成对的或反对的形容词，用 and 或 or 连接，共同修饰一个名词。这是形容词作后置定语的一种用法。)

1) The active involvement of thousands of people in the election campaign surprised him. (成千上万的人积极参与竞选活动令他惊奇。)

2) He avoids involvement in politics. (他避免卷入政治。)

6. Certainly some of these individuals may have physical limitations that make activity extremely difficult, and others are engaged in time-consuming activities that until finished do not permit opportunities for recreation.

that make activity extremely difficult 是一个定语从句，修饰 physical limitations.

Be engaged in sth. 意思是 be involved in sth. (使从事，使忙于)，如：

1) They were engaged in the study of soil conservation. (他们在从事土壤保持的研究。)

2) It is inappropriate for him to engage in this activity. (他从事这一活动是不合适的。)

7. ...I'll have no difficulty staying that way.

have (no) difficulty doing sth. (做某事有/无困难)，也可以用 have (no) trouble doing sth.。如：

1) He has no difficulty understanding the Chinese film. (看懂那部中国电影他没有困难。)

2) I had a lot of trouble getting back to sleep after I answered the phone call. (接过电话后，我无法再入睡。)

8. ...you may have made a commitment to a physical fitness program that might be rather narrow in scope.

make (a) commitment to 意思是 make a firm promise (作出承诺)，或者 involvement (投入)。

Narrow in scope 意思是范围很窄，很狭隘。我们接触过在形容词后面加介词 in 再加名词的机构，如 similar in appearance (外表相像)。

9. What could I achieve if I were really in top physical condition?

本句中用了虚拟语气，从句中用过去时 (be 动词用 were)，主句中用 could 或 should / would / might 加动词原形，表示的是与现在事实相反的假设，如：

1) If he were on time, we wouldn't have to wait for him. (如果他能准时，我们就不用等他了。)

2) If they had time now, they would come to see us. (如果他们现在有时间, 他们就来看我们了。)

in top physical condition 意思是“身体很健康”。如:

The old man is in top (very good, excellent...) physical condition though he is already 76. (老人虽已七十六岁, 但身体非常健康。)

10. In the final analysis, we think that although fitness will not guarantee that you will live longer, it can help you enjoy the years you do live.

in the final analysis 意思是 ultimately (归根结底), 如:

They realized in the final / last analysis that their job was to tell public the facts. (他们认识到他们的工作归根结底是把事实公诸于众。)

guarantee 的意思是保证, 担保, 后面可跟名词; to do 或 that 从句。如:

1) Wealth doesn't guarantee happiness. (财富不能保证快乐。)

2) They guaranteed to finish the work in two hours. (他们保证在两个小时内完成这项工作。)

3) I guarantee that they will win the game. (我保证他们会赢这场比赛)。

do 在句中起强调作用。

本课主要短语 (phrases and expressions)

1. set aside

2. a misuse of

3. no better than

4. prepare for / make preparations for

5. be physically fit

6. be seen as

7. rather than

8. pro or con

9. involvement in / be/become/get involved in
10. in pursuit of
11. be engaged in
12. have (no) difficulty doing sth.
13. get support from
14. make commitment to
15. narrow in scope
16. approach to
17. in top physical condition
18. be capable of
19. keep in mind
20. in the final analysis

Text B people and colors

短语表达

1. in general

In general, girls do better on test about vocabulary than boys.

In general, there are two different ideas about where to go.

2. remind sb. of sth.

The way he walks reminds me of his father.

The picture reminds me of the days I spent in the countryside.

3. associate with

People usually associate the underground with something evil.

They like to associate with people from all walks of life.

4. react to

I cannot imagine how the audience will react to his speech.

Young children react to the color of an object before they react to its shape.

Unit23 (第 68 讲—第 70 讲)

Text A non-verbal communication

本课主要单词

1. non-verbal adj. wordless, without involving the use of language (非词语的, 非语言的)

non-是一个常用前缀,通常加在形容词,名词或副词前,表示“非”,“无”,“不是”,“不重要的”,“无价值的”。如 nonbeliever (无信仰的人)

nonsmoker (不抽烟的人), nonstop (不停的,直达的), nonviolence (非暴力的),

nondegree (非学位的), nonbook (无真实价值的书)

1) Gesture is a form of non-verbal expression. (手势是一种非语言的表达方式。)

2) Professor Wang is going to give us a lecture on non-verbal communication. (王教授将给我们做关于非语言交际问题的讲座。)

3) You will have a better idea of it after you read the verbal instructions. (看了文字说明你就会对此有更深的了解。)

2. oral adj. 口头的

1) He gave us an oral report after inspecting the factory. (视察了那家工厂后,他给我们作了口头汇报。)

2) They will have an oral English test tomorrow afternoon. (明天下午他们将有一个英语口语试。)

3) He broke the oral thermometer and had to buy a new one. (他摔坏了口腔温度计,不得不去买个新的。)

3. approval n.

agreement to an idea, plan, decision, etc. (赞成,同意);

a formal statement that sth. is acceptable (认可批准)

-al 是一个名词后缀，用在动词后面构成名词，表示“动作”，“过程”。
如：

arrive——arrival deny——denial refuse——refusal

survive——survival try——trial withdraw——withdraw 等等

我们以前也学习过-al 做形容词后缀，如：brutal 的)，mortal (致命的)，racial (种族的)，social (社会的) 等等

1) He nodded his approval when we informed him of our plan. (当我们把计划告诉他时，他点头表示同意。)

2) His proposal won the approval of many people. (他的建议赢得了许多人的支持。)

3) My idea is unlikely to meet with the approval of my parents. (我的想法不可能得到我父母的认可。)

4) This project has the approval of the National Treasury. (这个项目得到了国家财政部的批准。)

5) She didn't conceal her disapproval of what we had done. (她毫不掩盖自己对我们所为的不赞成。)

6) The colonel looked at the soldier with disapproval. (上校以非难的目光看着那个士兵。)

7) His marriage was not approved by his family. (他的家人不赞同他的婚姻。)

8) My boss approved of my attending the conference. (老板同意我出席会议。)

本句中的 approve 作不及物动词用，后面接 of + (动) 名词，不接复合宾语。

4. frown n. v. 皱眉；不满

1) He gave me a frown of disapproval. (他向我做了个不赞成的表情。)

2) She frowned at her mother when she was asked to do some housework. (要她做点家务事时，她朝母亲皱眉头。)

3) Critics frowned on/upon the idea. (评论家对这种意见表示不赞同。)

5. reaction n. 反应; 对抗

在上一单元中, 我们学习了动词 react, reaction 是 react 的名词形式。无论用动词还是名词, 当表示“对…作出反应”时, 后面要用介词 to. 如:

1) How did he react to the news? (他对此消息如何反应?)

2) What was their reaction to your proposal? (他们对你的建议有何反应?)

3) I am not sure how he will react to such a straightforward answer. (我吃不准他会对如此直率的回答作出什么反应。)

4) What was the audience's reaction to his speech? (听众对他的发言有何反应?)

6. embarrass v. 使窘迫, 使为难; 麻烦, 妨碍

1) She was embarrassed by her husband's drunken behavior. (她丈夫的酒后举止使她难堪。)

2) It embarrasses me even to think about it. (我连想想这件事都觉得不好意思。)

3) We didn't want to embarrass him in any way. (我们一点也不想使他为难。)

4) We found him embarrassed with debts. (我们发现他已经负债累累。)

7. staff n. 全体职工、参谋部 v. 为…配备工作人员

1) The company has got a staff of more than 800. (这家公司有 800 多名职工。)

2) The editorial staff of a newspaper demanded pay increases. (一家报纸的全体编辑人员要求增加工资。)

3) He served as a chief of staff in the army. (他在部队做参谋长。)

4) The labs are staffed with two engineers. (实验室里配备了两名工程师。)

5) We must staff the center with men with a formal training. (我们必须为中心配备受过正规训练的人员。)

在第七单元中我们学过 stuff 这个词，并把 staff 和 stuff 做过比较，再看几个例句，注意 stuff 的意思和用法。

1) The secretary has to get all the stuff ready before the meeting starts. (会议开始前秘书得把所有的东西准备好。)

2) ——Do you want some jelly? (你想来点果子冻吗?)

——No, I hate the stuff. (不，我讨厌那东西。)

3) The buses are always stuffed with passengers during the rush hours. (上下班高峰时间，公共汽车上总是挤满了乘客。)

4) He really wanted to stuff his ears with cotton-wool when his mother rattled on. (母亲喋喋不休时，他真想用棉花把耳朵堵上。)

8. gesture n. 姿势，手势；(外交等方面的)姿态 v. 做手势

1) He gestured to me to sit down. (他示意我坐下。)

2) She gestured with her head towards the closed door. (她用头朝紧闭的门示意了一下。)

3) The old man gestured me to his study. (老人示意我去他的书房。)

4) He raised his hands in a gesture of despair. (他举起双手以示绝望。)

5) What he has done is just a political gesture to draw popular support. (他所做的只是争取民众支持的一种政治姿态。)

9. proximity n. 接近，亲近，近似

这个词用得很正式，意思相当于 closeness. 如：

1) Much of the town's attractiveness lies in its proximity to Niagara Falls. (这座城市吸引人的地方主要在于它离尼亚加拉瀑布很近。)

2) I have grown accustomed to the continual proximity of the animals. (我已习惯总有动物在我附近。)

3) be in close proximity to (非常接近于)

4) in the proximity of (在...附近)

5) proximity of blood (近亲)

6) proximity effect (邻近效应)

7) proximity talks (近距离间接会谈)

10. cultural adj. 文化的

在讲第三个单词 approval 时，我们提到-al 可以做名词后缀用，也可以做形容词后缀用。在 cultural 这个单词中-al 做形容词后缀用。

1) Cultural differences caused a lot of misunderstandings. (文化方面的差异造成了许多误解。)

2) These peoples have different cultural traditions. (这些民族有着不同的文化传统。)

3) This city is often referred to as a cultural desert. (这个城市常被称为文化沙漠。)

11. invasion n. 入侵，侵略

这个单词的动词形式是 invade. In 是个前缀，意思是 “into”，vade 是个词根，意思是 “to go”。

-sion 是个常用的名词后缀，加在动词后面构成名词。如：

decide——decision (决定) pervade——pervasion (弥漫)

evade——evasion (逃避)

1) Japan launched an invasion into China. (日本入侵中国。)

2) This is an evasion of individual privacy. (这是对个人隐私的干预。)

3) What you are doing now will undoubtedly invade the rights of others. (你现在的所为无疑将侵犯他人的权利。)

4) No one would allow his family privacy to be invaded. (谁也不会允许自己的家庭私生活受到侵扰。)

12. fiddle n. 小提琴 v. 拉提琴；不停拨弄；闲荡

在口语中人们常用 fiddle 来表示演奏民间音乐的小提琴。请看几个例句，注意 fiddle 的意思。

1) In his eyes father plays first fiddle in the family. (在他看来父亲在家里居首要地位。)

2) His face was as long as a fiddle when his request was refused. (他的要求遭到拒绝时他拉长了脸。)

3) Don't worry about him. He is as fit as a fiddle. (别为他担心, 他非常健康。)

再看 fiddle 做动词用时的意思:

1) He sat nervously fiddling with his spectacles. (他坐在那儿紧张地拨弄他的眼镜。)

2) He didn't like anyone to fiddle with his bicycle. (他不喜欢任何乱动他的自行车。)

3) Don't fiddle about, go and help your mum with the housework. (别再闲荡了, 去帮妈妈做家务。)

4) Father was angry because Tom fiddled away the whole day. (父亲很生气, 因为汤姆浪费了整整一天的时间。)

13. wriggle v. / n. 蠕动, 扭动, 蜿蜒

英语中以 wr 开首的单词, w 通常不发音, 如 write (写), wrap (包扎), wrestle (摔跤), wretched (痛苦的), wring (拧), wrinkle (皱纹), wrong (错误的)

1) The child wriggled out of his mother's arms. (那孩子扭动着挣脱了母亲的怀抱。)

2) A snake wriggled across the road. (一条蛇蜿蜒游过公路。)

3) He got through the hole with a wriggle. (他扭动着身子从洞口钻了出去。)

14. confess v. 承认; 坦白, 供认

1) He confessed his crime in the face of the evidence. (在证据面前, 他认罪了。)

2) He confessed hating his present job. (他承认他恨目前的工作。)

3) I have to confess that I didn't understand what she said. (我不得不承认我没听懂她说的话。)

4) He confessed to being a drug addict. (他承认自己有毒瘾。)

5) The student refused to confess to having cheated on the exam. (那个学生拒绝承认考试作弊。)

从以上的例句中我们可以看出 confess 可以作及物动词用,也可作不及物动词用。作及物动词用时, confess 的后面可以接名词、动名词和宾语从句等。作不及物动词用时, confess 的后面要接介词 to, 其用法同于 admit to sth/doing sth

15. intense adj. 强烈的, 紧张的; 热烈的

1) Because of the intense heat, I slept very little last night. (由于天气酷热, 我昨夜没怎么睡。)

2) The intense light dazzled my eyes. (强光使我目眩。)

3) He has intense interest in computer. (他对计算机有极大的兴趣。)

4) Diplomatic activity has been intense recently. (近来外交活动紧张频繁。)

16. brief adj. 简短的, 简洁的 v. 作简要的介绍, 汇报

1) He will go to England for a brief visit. (他将去英国进行短期访问。)

2) She only made a brief statement at the meeting. (她在会上只作了简短的陈述。)

3) They briefed the press about the recent happenings. (他们向报界通报最近发生的事情。)

4) They had been well briefed about the political situation. (对政治形势他们已被简要告知。)

17. volume n. 卷册, 书卷; 体积; 音量

1) The community has a library of 12, 000 volumes. (这个社区有一个藏书 12, 000 的图书馆。)

2) The passenger volume this May was not as big last May. (今天五月的客流量没有去年的大。)

3) Turn down the volume please. The baby is sleeping. (宝宝在睡觉, 请把音量调低。)

本课简介

谈到人与人之间的交流方式，人们会很自然地想到语言（口头语言或书面语言），而另一种人们在无意识之中常常运用的交流方式（非语言交际或称肢体语言）也正受到越来越多的关注和研究。

一般的欧洲人会对自己所赞同的东西以微笑和点头的方式表示赞许，对自己所不赞同的东西则皱眉和摇头。不用说一句话，人们就可以以此来表明自己的态度。肢体语言与文化是密切相关的，比如中国人的微笑不一定表示赞许，倒可能是出于不安。

肢体语言可被分为五类：1) 身体姿势和脸部表情 2) 目光交流 3) 肢体距离 4) 服装和外貌 5) 语言特性。关于第三点，不同的文化有不同的反映。在某些文化中，人们在交谈时紧挨在一起是很自然的事，而在其他中，如美国，这样做则是不甚妥当的。

有些信号对所有的人来说都很熟悉。比如一个正跟你交谈的人不停地摆弄铅笔或眼镜，这就表明他很紧张。一个用手捂着嘴巴讲话的人则缺少自信。如果你坐在椅子上扭动身体，悄悄看手表，用手掩着嘴巴打哈欠，这就表明你感到倦了。

某些信号可以人为地控制，但眼神不易控制。如果不是想表达心中挚爱，请别长时间地盯着别人的眼睛看，那样会令人尴尬。

本课语言点

1. That isn't a catch question.

catch 多用作动词，意思是“抓住；赶上；感染到；着（火）；领会”。如：

1) The thief was caught by the police on the scene. （小偷被警察当场抓住。）

2) He didn't catch the last train. （他没赶上末班火车。）

3) He caught a bad cold last week. （他上周得了重伤风。）

1) The building caught fire and many people were trapped in it. （大楼着了火，许多人被困在里面。）

2) Sorry, I didn't quite catch you. （对不起，我没听清你的话。）

在本课文的这个句子中，catch 用作名词，意思是 a hidden problem, difficulty, or obstacle in sth. （难人的问题，诡计）。如：

1) There is a catch in it. （这里面有蹊跷。）

2) Don't worry. There are no catch questions in the paper. (别担心, 试卷里没有怪题。)

3) He was taken surprise by the catch question. (那个怪题使他诧异。)

Unit23 (第 68 讲—第 70 讲)

2. It would almost certainly refer to means of communication that involve the use of words.

在第四单元中我们已经学过 refer to (提到, 涉及) 这个短语。再看几个例句。

1) In his speech he referred to the difficulties they had overcome. (在发言中, 他提到了他们所克服的困难。)

2) What he said at the meeting doesn't refer to you. (他在会上所说的不是指你。)

在第二单元和第二十二单元中, 我们已学过动词 involve 和名词 involvement, 再看下面的例句,

注意 involve 在本课文中的意思和用法。

1) If I were you, I wouldn't get myself involved in this problem. (如果我是你, 我不会让自己卷入这个问题中。)

2) She didn't want to be involved in trouble. (她不想卷入纠纷。)

以上两例句中, involve 都是“卷入, 陷入, 牵涉”的意思。

3) To accept the job would involve my living in London. (若接受这份工作, 我必须得住在伦敦。)

4) Building this road will involve the construction of some tunnels. (造这条路包括建造一些隧洞。)

在例句 3) 和 4) 中, involve 的意思是“必须包括某种结果”。在 involve 后面必须用名词或者动名词。

3. NVC for short.

这是一个省略句, 补充完整应该是 Non-verbal communication is called NVC for short.

(非语言交际被简称为/缩写为 NVC。)

for short 是个常用短语，意思是“简称；缩写”。如：

1) Unidentified flying object is called UFO for short. (不明飞行物被简称为 UFO)

2) People's Republic of China is often written as P. R. C. for short. (中华人民共和国常被缩写为 P. R. C.)

4. ...the average European will smile and nod approval.

在第三单元中我们已经学过 average 这个词。average 可以做形容词、名词和动词用。如：

1) The average driver thinks that accidents only happen to other people. (司机一般都认为事故只发生在其他人身上。)

2) We averaged 70 miles an hour. (我们平均每小时行 70 公里。)

3) His performance is above the average. (他的成绩在一般水平之上。)

在本课文的这个句子中，average 做形容词用，意思是“普通的”。

nod 可以用作及物动词、不及物动词和名词。如：

1) They nodded agreement. (他们点头表示同意。)

2) He nodded me a welcome when I went in. (我进去时，他向我点头表示欢迎。)

3) I nodded to him in greeting. (我向他点头打招呼。)

4) Father nodded in approval when he listened. (父亲听着时点头表示赞同。)

5) Homer sometimes nods. (智者千虑，必有一失。)

6) He didn't give our plan the nod. (他没有同意我们的计划。)

5. ...because body language is very much tied to culture...

本句中的 be tied to sth. 意思是 be related to, have to do with (与...有关)，如：

1) Many diseases are tied to smoking. (许多疾病与吸烟有关。)

2) The misunderstanding was tied to cultural differences. (这个误会与文化差异有关。)

be tied to 也可以表示 be restricted by (受…约束), 如:

1) She was tied to housework and wouldn't be able to come. (她被家务事束缚, 无法前来。)

2) If you have small children, you will be tied to your home. (如果你有小孩子, 你就会被束缚在家了。)

6. Quite a lot of work is now being done on the subject of NVC, which is obviously important, for instance, to managers, who have to deal every day with their staff, and have to understand what other people are feeling if they are to create good working conditions.

本句中, which 引导非限定性定语从句, 修饰 NVC; who 引导的也是非限定性定语从句, 修饰 managers; what 引导的是宾语从句, 做 understand 的宾语。

一般说来, 用 which 引导非限定性定语从句, 修饰表物的先行词; 用 who 引导的非限定性定语从句则修饰表人的先行词; 也可用关系副词 where 或 when 引导非限定性定语从句。非限定性定语从句常用逗号与主句分开, 而且引导从句的关系代词 which, that 和关系副词 where, when 不能省略。

1) I want to buy the house, which has a garden. (我想买那座房子, 它有一个花园。)

2) The students, who wanted to go out on a picnic, were disappointed when it rained. (学生们想出去野餐, 天下雨了大家都感到失望。)

3) The football match will be put off till next week, when we can get everything ready. (足球赛将推迟到下周, 那时我们能把一切准备就绪。)

4) The place, where we stayed, has changed so much. (那个地方我们住过, 那儿的变化很大。)

deal with 的意思是“对付, 打交道”。如:

1) He is not easy to deal with. (他不容易打交道。)

2) I don't know how to deal with this situation. (我不知道如何应付这种局面。)

7. I expect you understand all those, except perhaps “proximity”。
动词 expect 通常有如下用法:

1) expect + 宾语 (名词或代词)

I am expecting a letter. (我在等信。)

The teacher is expecting you. (老师在等你。)

2) expect + (宾语) + 动词不定式

I expect to be back next week. (我预计下周回来。)

I didn't expect him to come so early. (我没料到他会来得这么早。)

3) expect + that 从句

He didn't expect that the work could be so difficult. (他没料到这工作会如此艰难。)

They expected that the war would end soon. (他们期望战争早日结束。)

在本课文的句子中, expect 后面跟的是省略了 that 的宾语从句。

8. A person who holds a hand over his mouth when he is talking is signaling that he is lacking in confidence.

在第十六单元中我们学过 lack 这个词。lack 可以用作动词或名词, lacking 用作形容词。lack 和 lacking 用法如下:

1) lack 用作名词: (for) lack of (因) 缺乏

He showed a complete lack of confidence. (他显得毫无信心。)

The case was dismissed for lack of evidence. (因缺乏证据, 那个案子被驳回了。)

2) lack 用作及物动词: lack sth

Your article lacks concert example. (你的文章缺少具体的例子。)

She lacks patience in dealing with children. (与孩子打交道她缺少耐心。)

3) lacking 用作形容词: be lacking in sth.

Philip was not lacking in ability. (菲力普并不缺少能力。)

His reception of us was lacking in warmth. (他对我们的接待缺少热情。)

9. These are both pretty obvious signals.

通常 pretty 用作形容词，而在本句中 pretty 作副词用。如：

1) She was happy to live in the pretty valley. (住在美丽的山谷里她很开心。)

2) The pretty little girl brought much delight to her family. (那个漂亮的小姑娘给全家带来了莫大的快乐。)

3) I will be back pretty soon. (我不久就回来。)

4) She felt pretty tired. (她感到相当累。)

5) I am pretty certain the performance will be a success. (我相当有把握演出会成功。)

10. In fact, non-verbal communication car, as the saying goes, speak volumes.

as the saying goes 意思是“正如成语所说，俗话说”。在本句中，as the saying goes 做插入语。

speak volumes 意思是“很有意义；含义很深；充分说明”。如：

1) The one photograph speaks volumes. (这一张照片就很有意义。)

2) The look on her face spoke volumes. (她的脸色意味深长。)

3) Her silence spoke volumes for her attitude. (她的沉默清楚地表明了她的态度。)

本课主要词组

1. means of

2. involve sth/doing sth

3. refer to

4. agree with

5. communicate sth. to sb.

6. tie to / be tied to

7. in order to
8. be categorized into
9. be common to
10. fiddle with
11. be lacking in
12. start doing sth.
13. and so on
14. in fact
15. give off
16. look away
17. in embarrassment
18. for short
19. as the saying goes
20. speak volumes

Text B body talk

短语表达

1. talk a liking to

He couldn't understand why the boss suddenly took a liking to him.

2. chances are that...

Chances are that he will not be able to get the job.

3. anything... but

It is not anything you say but something you do that counts.

4. devote to

Father asked him to devote his attention to his study.

5. apart from

Apart from this consideration, there is no other reason why we should not go.

6. be involved in

He was not involved in the scandal.

7. tend to

He tends to get irritated if you press him for an answer.

8. be aware of

He is not aware of the mistake he has made.

9. according to

You have to do according to what he said.

10. complain of

The moment he got in, he began to complain of the weather.

11. let alone

He wouldn't hesitate to die for her, let alone give her some help.

12. be hostile to

No knows why he is so hostile to his brother.

13. impress sb. with sth.

He impressed us with his sincerity.

14. take note of

He didn't take note of the weather forecast and was caught in a heavy rain.

15. go on

I didn't know anything about what was going on outside.

Unit24 (第71讲—第73讲)

Text A saving the rainforests for future generations

本课主要单词

1. rainforest n. 热带雨林

这是一个由名词 rain 加名词 forest 构成的复合名词。用 rain 加名词构成的复合名词，英语中还有不少。如：rainbelt (雨带)，rainworm (蚯蚓)等等。

2. economic adj. 经济(上)的，经济学的

economic 是 economy 的形容词形式，economical 也是 economy 的形容词形式，请看下面的例句，注意区别 economic 和 economical.

1) economic: concerned with economics and with the organization of money industry, and trade of a country, region, or social group

economic growth (经济增长) economic prosperity (经济繁荣)

economic decline (经济衰退) economic reform (经济改革)

economic order (经济秩序) economic depression (经济萧条)

economic crisis (经济危机) economic doctrines (经济学说)

2) economical: cheap, careful, efficient

This car is economical to run. (开这辆车费用很省。)

The child is so economical that he saves all his pocket money. (那个孩子很节省，他把零花钱都积攒了起来。)

形容词 economic 和 economical 的副词形式都是 economically.

This region is unevenly developed economically. (这一地区的经济发展不平衡。)

It is necessary that we should learn to live economically. (我们学会节俭地生活是必要的。)

3. deforestation 砍伐森林

de-是前缀，意思是“除去，分离”。-ation是名词后缀。用de-做前缀的词在英文中也是比较常见的，如：defrost（去冰或霜），dehydrate（脱水），detach（分离，解开）等等。

The deforestation of rainforests will greatly upset ecological systems.（热带雨林植物的毁灭将对生态系统造成严重影响。）

The Amazon Basin is quickly becoming deforested.（亚马逊盆地的植被将被砍伐殆尽。）

4. consequence n. result, effect（结果，后果）

1) The young man would do what he likes regardless of the consequences.（那个年轻人将不顾后果去做他喜欢的事。）

2) They found themselves in a dilemma as a consequence of rapid changes in society.（由于社会的飞速发展他们发现自己处于进退两难的境地。）

3) He is a man of great consequence.（他是一个举足轻重的人。）

4) He will have to take the consequences if he doesn't apologize.（如果他不道歉，一切后果将由他承担。）

consequently adv. therefore, so, as a result（所以，因此）

The rain was heavy and consequently the football match was put off.（雨下得很大，因此足球赛被延期了。）

5. massive adj. extremely large（大而重的；大规模的，大量的）

1) The massive increase in oil prices put the taxi-drivers in a difficult situation.（燃油价格的大幅上升使出租车司机们面临困难。）

2) He saw massive changes in the village when he went there 20 years later.（20年后回到那个村子，他发现那儿的变化很大。）

3) A massive young man in police uniform came in.（一个身着警服身材魁梧的年轻人走了进来。）

6. upset v. mess up; turn over accidentally;（弄乱；打翻）；make sb. worried or unhappy（使苦恼）

adj. be unhappy or disappointed, distressed（心烦意乱的，心情不安的）

1) He upset a cup of coffee on the carpet. (他把一杯牛奶打翻在地毯上。)

2) Make sure that he stays where he is. If he comes, he will upset the whole atmosphere. (确保他呆在他该呆的地方。如果他来了会把整个气氛搅乱。)

3) The news upset him. (那消息使他心烦意乱。)

4) She was upset about the rumours. (她为那些谣言感到十分烦恼。)

5) He was upset to learn that his proposal was not discussed at the meeting. (他听说自己的建议没在会议上被讨论而感到沮丧。)

6) They were upset by the poverty they saw in that area. (他们为在那一地区看到的贫困现象而苦恼。)

注意: upset 作形容词用, 在句子中做表语时, 以及 upset 作动词用时, 应该读成 /ʌp' set / ; upset 作形容词用, 在句子中做定语时, 应读成 /' ʌpset /.

还应注意, upset 做动词用时, 其过去式, 过去分词与动词的原形相同。

7. ecosystem n. 生态系统

eco 是一个词根, 意思是“环境(的)”, “生态(的)”; “家庭(的)”, “经济(的)”。如: ecology (生态学), ecocide (生态灭绝), ecoclimate (生态气候); economy (经济), economic (经济学的, 经济上的)。

8. erosion n. 腐蚀, 侵害

erosion 是动词 erode 的名词形式。rod, ros 是词根, 意思是 gnaw (咬)。e- 是前缀, 相当于 ex-, 意思是 out. 以 rod 或 ros 作词根的词, 如: corrode (腐蚀; 侵蚀), emerge (出现), evaporize (蒸发), erase (擦去)

1) They decide to plant more trees to prevent soil erosion. (他们决定种更多的树以防土壤受侵蚀。)

2) They protested strongly against erosions of civil rights. (他们强烈抗议对公民权的侵害。)

9. drought n. 干旱季节, 旱灾

1) The land is in a state of drought. (土地干旱。)

2) In many parts of China, people are fighting drought. (在中国的许多地区, 人们在抗旱。)

请注意区别 drought 和 draught. drought 也用作名词, 意思是拉, 拖, 牵引;
①被拉的东西, 如: That drought was too much for the horse to pull. (那负荷太重了, 马拉不动。)

②鲜啤酒, 散装啤酒, 如: Give him a glass of draught, please. (请给他一杯散装啤酒。)
③一饮的量; 吸入, 如: He drank the wine in one draught. (他一口喝干了那酒。)

10. global adj. 球形的; 全球的, 世界的; 普遍的, 总的

global 是名词 globe 的形容词形式, -al 是形容词后缀, 常用在名词后面构成形容词。如 regional (局部的, 地区的), emotional (情感的), seasonal (季节的)。

1) The earth is a global mass. (地球是一个球形体。)

2) The global economic growth is on the decline this year. (今年总体经济增长呈下降趋势。)

3) A global picture of their progress can be obtained from these marks. (从这些分数中你可以得到他们进步的全貌。)

4) I'll try to give you a global idea of the situation. (我将尽力把形势的总体情况告诉你。)

5) He makes friends with people from every corner of the globe. (他与来自世界各地的人们交朋友。)

11. contribute vt. 贡献; 捐助; 投稿 vi. 起作用, 有助于; 捐献; 投稿

1) They contributed food and medicine to people in the flooded area. (他们向受淹地区的人们捐助食物和药品。)

2) He didn't contribute any idea to the discussion. (他在讨论中没有提出任何意见。)

3) She contributes articles to the newspaper weekly. (她每周为那家报纸撰稿。)

4) The two sisters contributed to their mother's support. (两姐妹合力赡养母亲。)

5) I'm sure your suggestion will contribute to solving the problem.
(我相信你的建议将有助于解决这个问题。)

6) They are determined to make contributions to public safety. (他们决心为公众安全作出贡献。)

请注意区别 contribute to (doing) sth. 和 devote to (doing) sth.。这两个短语都表示“为…贡献”，但表示“献身于某一事业或目标”时，要用 devote to (doing) sth.。而在 contribute 后面不接 one's life 或 oneself。如：

1) She devoted all her life to the welfare of women and children.
(她一生致力于妇女和儿童的福利事业。)

2) He devoted himself to teaching in the mountain village. (他致力于在那个山村教书。)

3) Air pollution contributes to respiratory diseases. (空气污染会引起呼吸道疾病。)

再注意区别 contribute 与 distribute.

contribute: ①give money in order to help someone

②help to make sth. successful

③influence sth.

distribute: ①give out, hand out (分发)

②share sth. among the members of a particular group (分布)

③supply sth. to sb. (销售商品于特定的市场; 运送货物给个别顾客)

1) The teacher distributed the papers to the students. (教师把试卷分发给学生。)

2) Fuel resources are unevenly distributed. (燃料资源分布不匀。)

3) They distributed their cars throughout the world. (他们的汽车销售往世界各地。)

12. greenhouse n. 暖房, 温室

green 表示“绿色”，也可作形容词用表示“缺乏经验的; 幼稚的; 青春的”等等。下面我们看看与 green 有关的一些复合词以及表达：

greenback (美钞) greenbelt (绿化地带) green-carder (绿卡持有者)

greenroom (剧场里的演员休息室) a green hand (生手)

the green years (青春年华) green-eyed monster (嫉妒)

greenhouse effect (温室效应) green revolution (绿色革命)

13. polar adj. 南极的, 北极的; 两种相反性质的

-ar 是形容词后缀, 如 popular (受欢迎的, 民众的), similar (类似的)

1) Most insects don't live in polar regions. (大多数昆虫在两极地区不存在。)

2) They are thinking about how to survive in a polar winter. (他们正在考虑如何在极地冬季生存。)

3) After reading his report you can see that he holds polar viewpoints. (读完他的报告你就能明白他的观点正好相反。)

14. recede vi. ①move further away into distance (远去)

②gradually become less clear (变模糊)

③withdraw (撤回)

1) The plane gradually out of sight. (飞机渐渐远去看不见了。)

2) The memory was receding and he couldn't remember anything. (记忆在变得模糊, 他什么也想不起来了。)

3) He receded from his promise. (他背弃了自己的诺言。)

4) The article receded from the newspaper. (这篇文章从报纸上撤下了。)

请注意区别 recede 和 secede.

secede vi. Withdraw formally from membership in a group, association, organization, etc.; to break off one's connection with others, as in a political or religious group (从宗教、政党、联盟等组织中退出, 脱离)

1) Nine States seceded from the Union government and established their own confederate government.

(九个州脱离联邦政府，成立了自己的邦联政府。)

2) They seceded from the EEC. (他们从欧洲经济共同体中退出。)

15. pharmaceutical adj. 药物的，药学的 n. 药品

请看下面几个单词，对记忆和理解 pharmaceutical 会有帮助。

pharmacy 药学 pharmaceuticals 制药学

pharmacology 药理学 pharmacist 药剂师

16. derive v. 由…得到；起源，由…派生

1) They derive enormous pleasure from reading. (他们从阅读中得到了极大的乐趣。)

2) He said he derived no real satisfaction from his work. (他说他从工作中得不到真正的满足。)

3) This word is derived from Latin. (这个单词从拉丁语派生而来。)

4) Electric power can be derived from the sun-warmed surface waters of the ocean. (电力可以从晒热的海洋水面获得。)

17. senseless adj. 无知觉的；愚蠢的，无意义的

1) He fell senseless to the ground. (他昏倒在地。)

2) It was a senseless thing to do so. (这样做毫无意义。)

3) He put forward some senseless proposals at the meeting. (他在会上提出了几个愚蠢的建议。)

18. overpopulated adj. 人口过密的

over-是一个前缀，意思是 too much (过度，太过)，如：overcrowd (过度，拥挤)，overdo (过度烹煮)，overeat (吃得过多)，overestimate (估计过高) 等等。

popul 是个词根，意思是 people (人)，如：populous (人口稠密的)，depopulation (人口减少)，populace (大众) 等等。

1) The city is noisy, overpopulated, and seriously polluted. (这座城市喧闹, 人口过多而且污染严重。)

2) Overpopulation has caused many problems. (人口过多已经造成了许多问题。)

19. cancel v. call off, give up (取消), delete (删除)

1) The performance will have to be cancelled because of an accident. (由于意外, 演出不得不取消。)

2) The flight was cancelled because of the snow-storm. (航班因暴风雪而取消。)

3) They won't be able to come tonight, I have to cancel the hotel reservations.

(他们今晚来不了了, 我得取消旅馆预定。)

4) Cancel the nasty words from your composition. (把你作文中的那些下流的词语删掉。)

20. owe n. 欠(债等), 应该向(某人)付出

1) He owed her 200 dollars. (他欠她 200 美元。)

2) He owed the landlady two months' rent. (他欠房东太太两个月的房租。)

3) She owed her success to hard work. (她把成功归因于辛勤工作。)

4) He owes his life to a kindhearted man. (多亏一位好心人他才活了下来。)

21. select v. 选择, 挑选, 选拔

1) They select books that are useful to them. (他们挑选那些对他们有用的书。)

2) You can select friends from your schoolmates. (你可以在同学中挑选朋友。)

3) They voted to select a new monitor. (他们投票挑选新班长。)

22. export v. 输出, 出口 n. 输出品; 输出, 出口

这个单词用作动词时，发音的重音在后面的第二个音节上，用作名词时，重音在第一个音节上。

ex-是前缀，表示 out，port 是词根，表示 carry.

1) They banned all exports of weapons. (他们禁止武器出口。)

2) They grow coffee, cotton and bananas for exports. (他们种植咖啡、棉花和香蕉出口。)

3) One third of exports from industrial nations go to the developing countries.

(工业国家三分之一的出口品进入发展中国家。)

4) Raw materials are exported at low prices. (原材料的出口价格低廉。)

本课简介

从巴西到印度尼西亚，热带雨林被砍伐、被焚烧，也许在 2050 年之前，它们就会从地球表面消失。最新的数据表明，仅去年一年，被毁的热带雨林面积就大于大不列颠群岛和爱尔兰群岛的面积之和。照此下去，后果严重。生态系统将遭严重破坏，土壤流失加剧，洪水泛滥，旱灾肆虐，全球气候将受影响，珍稀的动、植物也将可能消失。热带雨林的焚毁是引起温室效应的原因之一。温室效应导致极地的冰层回缩，因而平均气温升高，海平面上升。

热带雨林是一个具有无限潜力的医药百宝箱，2000 种热带雨林植物可能有助于抗癌，在当今的药品市场上，每 125 种从植物提取的药品中就有 15 种来自于热带雨林。除了植物，热带雨林所独有的珍稀鸟类和动物也在以每年一种的速度灭绝。

在如此严峻的事实面前，毁林事件仍旧频频发生。原因何在？热带雨林通常位于人口过多的贫穷国家，这些国家的政府无力阻止人们毁坏雨林。政府无钱帮助穷人，所以当穷人们以砍伐树木为生时，他们只能视而不见。另外，对于这些国家来说，珍贵的木材和其他资源是重要的外汇来源，他们急需外汇偿还外债、购买国外设备和其他物品。

如何解决这一问题？富裕的国家有责任帮助那些贫穷的国家取消外债、发展经济，并教育贫困国家的人们正确对待雨林，合理科学地利用雨林。富裕国家也可以减少使用木材产品。总之保护雨林已刻不容缓。

本课主要语言点

1. Rainforests are being cut and burned from Brazil to Indonesia at such a rate that they could well disappear from the earth's surface before the year 2050.

“are being cut and burned” 是现在进行时被动语态。如：

1) The problem is being discussed now. (这个问题现在正在讨论。)

2) The car is being repaired by Mr. Smith. (那辆车正由史密斯先生修理。)

“at such a rate that” (以这样的速度(砍伐、焚烧)以致于...)。我们曾讲过程度副词 such 和 so 的区别。一般来说, such 的后面接名词, 而 so 的后面接形容词或副词。如：

1) He spoke for such a long time that people began to feel bored. (他讲了那么长时间, 人们开始觉得厌烦了。)

2) He made such a rapid progress that both his teachers and his parents were happy. (他取得了飞快的进步, 他的老师和父母都觉得高兴。)

3) It was such a fine day that we decided to go for a walk. (天气这样好, 我们打算去散步。)

4) The work was so difficult that I couldn't finish it in 2 hours. (这项工作太难, 两小时内我完不成。)

5) She spoke so fast that I could catch her. (她讲话太快, 我没听懂他的意思。)

“they could well disappear” 他们很可能消失。well 在本句中的意思是“很可能的, 很”。如：

1) It might well turn out true. (这很可能会成为真的。)

2) It's well worth trying. (这很值得一试。)

3) He must be well over forty. (他很可能大大超过四十岁了。)

Unit24 (第71讲—第73讲)

2. They are being cleared for valuable timber and other resources to speed up the economic growth of the nations in which they are located.

本句中的 clear 用作动词, 意思是 remove (清除), 如：

1) Brazil's forests were being cleared at the rate of almost 7,000 square miles a year. (巴西的森林以每年近7,000平方英里的速度被清除。)

2) The children were helping me clear weeds from the garden. (孩子们在帮助我清除花园里的杂草。)

speed up 是个常用短语, 意思是 increase the speed

1) Tom speeded up and overtook his classmates. (汤姆加快了速度, 赶上他的同学们。)

注意 speed 用在词组动词中时, 其过去式和过去分词为 speeded, 其他情况下, 其过去式和过去分词为 sped.

2) Africa's population growth speeded up. (非洲的人口增长加速。)

3) Bad housing and poverty speed up the breakdown of family life. (恶劣的住房条件和贫困加快了家庭的破裂。)

表示“坐落于某地”时, locate 常用在被动语态中, be located. in which they are located 中的 they 指 rainforests, which 指 nations.

1) The factory is located in the suburb. (那家工厂坐落于郊区。)

2) The hospital is located in the center of the city. (医院坐落于市中心。)

3. According to many scientists, the burning of rainforests is also directly contributing to the so-called greenhouse effect.

contribute to 在本句中的意思是 help to bring about (促成, 造成)。如:

1) Your suggestion will contribute to solving the problem. (你的建议将有助于解决这个问题。)

2) Carelessness contributed to his errors. (粗心大意造成了他的错误。)

so-called 用作形容词, 意思是“所谓的”。如:

1) He was deceived by his so-called friend. (他被所谓的朋友骗了。)

2) The so-called Christian even showed no love to his own children. (这个所谓的基督徒连对自己的孩子都没有爱心。)

effect 在句中用作名词，意思是“效果，效应”，在第三单元中我们对名词 effect 和动词 affect 做过详细讲解，再看几个例句。

1) The sound effect of this movie is great. (这部电影的音响效果很棒。)

2) Excessive smoking will have a bad effect on your health. (吸烟过多将会给你的身体带来不良影响。)

3) Too much rainfall affected the harvest. (过多的雨水影响了收成。)

4) I hope what I have said won't affect your decision. (希望我的话不会影响你的决定。)

4. It is a medicine chest of unlimited potential.

chest 可以指胸腔或柜子、箱子，medicine chest 是“药箱”的意思。

potential 在句中用作名词，意思是“潜力”，potential 也可用作形容词，意思是“潜在的”。

1) They are determined to tap their potential to the full. (他们决心充分挖掘自己的潜力。)

2) The aim of this advertisement is to attract potential customers. (这则广告的目标是吸引潜在的顾客。)

3) You have to know more about the potential demand of the market. (你得对市场上可能达到的需求量有更多的了解。)

5. In today's pharmaceutical market 15 of the 125 drugs derived from plants were discovered in the rainforest. derived from plants 是现在分词短语做定语，相当于被动语态的定语从句。如：

1) The beer bought from the supermarket is very light. (在超市买的那啤酒口味很淡。)

2) The candy made from cactus tastes strange. (用仙人掌做的糖果味道很怪。)

15 of the 125 意思是 125 中的 15. 再如 two of the three (三个中的两个)

derive from 意思是 get from, obtain from, 如：

1) Much of his knowledge is derived from books. (他的许多知识得自书本。)

2) He derived his stories from his experiences in the countryside. (他的故事来自于他在农村的经历。)

6. Rare birds and animals that cannot be found anywhere else in the world have been disappearing at the rate of one a year since the turn of the century.

句中的 else 是形容词，常接在不定代词的后面，表示“其他的，别的”，如：

1) Is there anything else I can do for you? (我还能为你做些别的事吗?)

2) Did anybody else know this? (有其他人知道这件事吗?)

3) He didn't go anywhere else. (他没去其他地方。)

one a year 意思是“每年一种”。这种表达方式在英语中很常用，如：

1) Take the medicine three times a day. (每日三次服这种药。)

2) They met three times a week. (他们每周见三次。)

3) He finishes 5 books a month. (他一个月读完五本书。)

当时间状语用 since 引导时，句子中的时态常用完成时。如：

1) He has been living here since he came to Nanjing 5 years ago. (自从他五年前来到南京，他就一直住在这儿。)

2) They haven't seen each other since last May. (自去年五月起，他们一直没见过面。)

turn 在句中做名词，意思是“转折点”。since the turn of the century 意思是“自本世纪初(或上世纪末)。”

1) He hasn't written home since the turn of the year. (自去年底以来他还未给家里写过信。)

2) At the turn of the two centuries, they had many hearty wishes for their family. (在两个世纪交替之时，他们对家人有许多衷心的祝愿。)

7. In the face of all these facts, it seems senseless for countries to continue destroying their rainforests.

介词短语 in the face of 意思是“面对”。如：

1) They didn't give up in the face of adversity. (面对逆境，他们没有放弃。)

1) He kept his head in the face of flattery. (面对奉承，他保持镇静。)

it seems senseless for sb. to do sth. (对于某人来说做某事是愚蠢的)

it 是形式主语，动词不定式真正的主语。这种句式我们已多次碰到过。如：

1) It is important for us to get into contact with them as soon as possible. (我们尽快与他们取得联系是很重要的。)

2) It seems useless for you to argue further with him. (你再跟他争辩下去似乎是毫无意义的。)

在动词 continue 的后面既可以用动词不定式也可以用动名词，意思都是“不间断地做某事”。如：

1) It is necessary for us to continue to learn things in life. (我们在生活中不断学习是必要的。)

2) He continued doing his homework. (他继续做家庭作业。)

8. ...the government often have no choice but to turn a blind eye.

have no choice but to do sth. (别无选择，只能...)，如：

1) I had no choice but to take the last train to go home. (我别无选择，只能乘末班火车回家。)

2) They had no choice but to accept the term. (他们别无选择，只能接受这个条件。)

turn a blind eye (to sth.) (对...视而不见)，类似的表达还有 turn a deaf ear to sth.，如：

1) He turned a blind eye to the messy room (他对凌乱的房间视而不见。)

2) The manager turned a deaf ear to the customers' complaints about the poor service. (顾客报怨服务太差, 经理对此置若罔闻。)

9. ...which they badly need to pay off their foreign debts and purchase foreign equipment and other goods.

badly 在本句中用作副词, 意思是 extremely. 如:

1) I am badly in need of advice. (我急需建议。)

2) We need the money badly. (我们非常需要这笔钱。)

pay off 的意思是 pay all that is owed (清偿)。如:

1) It took him 6 years to pay off the debt. (他花了六年时间才还清那笔债。)

2) He won't be able to pay off a home all his life. (他一辈子也不能付清购买住房所下的钱。)

equipment 是不可数名词, 不可在其后加 s.

goods 是复数名词, 意思是“商品; 货物”。

10. ...how to select trees worth exporting and to cut only those trees down while leaving the rest, so that the basic make up of the forest would not be disturbed.

形容词 worth 后面通常接动名词或名词。如:

1) This book is worth reading. (这本书值得一读。)

2) The equipment is worth 10, 000 dollars. (这台设备值一万美元。)

请注意区别 worth, worthy 和 worthwhile:

1) be worth + n. = be worthy of + n.

This matter is worth consideration.

This matter is worthy of consideration.

2) be worth doing = be worthy of being done

to be done

This matter is worth considering.

This matter is worthy of being considered.

to be considered.

3) It is worthwhile doing sth.

to do sth.

It is worthwhile to consider the matter.

considering the matter.

make-up 在句中用作名词，意思是“组成，构造”。如：

1) He didn't know the make-up of the mineral. (他不知道这种矿物质的构成。)

2) The make-up of Chinese characters is hard for many foreigners. (对许多外国人来说汉字的构造很难。)

make-up 还可以表示“化妆”、“虚构”、“补考”。

11. Last but not least, ...

本句的意思是 the last point but not the least important one (最后一点，但并不是最不重要的点。)

本课主要短语及表达

1. at such a rate

2. speed up

3. be located

4. be allowed to

5. according to

6. contribute to

7. derive from

8. continue doing

9. in the face of
10. continue doing
11. stop sb. from doing sth.
12. cut down
13. turn a blind eye
14. pay off
15. regard...as
16. make a living
17. be worth doing
18. make...into...
19. on the spot
20. in addition to

Text B life in the tundra

短语表达

1. be known as

China is known as one of the four ancient civilizations.

She is known as a great singer.

2. adapt to

It is hard for him to adapt to the food and climate there.

He is well adapted to the harsh environment.

3. threat to

Heart diseases are major threats to life.

Darkness is a threat to him.

4. to some degree

I agree with you to some degree.

To some degree he hated his work.

5. as if by magic

His face turned green as if by magic.

The sun appeared after the rain as if by magic.

6. give birth to

Mrs. Brown gave birth to a baby girl last week.

The summer sun gives birth to many species of arctic plants.

7. in search of

The whole family was out in search of the lost pet dog.

All his life he has been in search of the meaning of life.

8. migrate to

Many birds migrate to the south in winter.

He migrated from Canada to the United States when he was 30.

9. in turn

We drove to the beach last week. The two of us took the wheel in turn.

Theory is based on practice and in turn serves practice.

10. result in

His carelessness resulted in the accident.

Deforestation will result in disastrous ecological changes.

Unit25 (第74讲—第76讲)

Text A American men don't cry

本课主要语言点

1. Weakness n. 软弱, 薄弱; 缺点, 弱点; 嗜好。

Weakness 是形容词 weak 的名词形式。-ness 这个名词后缀常用在形容词后面，构成名词。如：happiness, carelessness, sadness, uselessness 等等。

1) He was too weak to walk any further. (他没有力气再往前走了。)

2) She was born with weak eyesight. (她天生视力差。)

3) He is weak in maths. (他不擅长数学。)

4) Weak leaders won't be able to cope with this situation. (软弱无力的领导人无法应付这一局面。)

5) She recovered from her weakness after two week's rest. (经过两周的休息，她虚弱的身体得到了恢复。)

6) His recovered from pressure would give his opponent some chance. (他在压力之下的软弱会给他的对手带来机会。)

7) They saw a weakness in Robert's method. (他们在罗伯特的方法中看到了弱点。)

8) He has a weakness for money. (他爱钱如命。)

2. Childishness n. 幼稚

同上一个单词一样，-ness 这个名词后缀用在爱形容词后面，构成名词。

I was annoyed at the childishness of her remark. (她孩子气的话语令我恼火。)

请注意 childish 和 childlike 的异同之处：

“childish” is used to describe a person who behaves in an immature way, or to describe

something that is typical of a child. (childish 用来形容某个行为不成熟的人或用来形容某件事似孩子般的。)

“childlike” is used to describe a person who is like a child in appearance, character, or

behavior. (childlike 用来形容一个人的外貌、性格或举止像个孩子，天真，单纯。)

1) She is a nice person but a bit too childish. (她人不错，只是太幼稚了一点。)

2) She has a childish face. (她有张孩子气的脸。)

3) The young woman has a childlike figure. (那个年轻妇人有着孩子般的体型。)

4) It is childish to go into danger for nothing. (无谓地陷入危险是幼稚的行为。)

3. dependence n. 依靠, 依赖; 信赖; 隶属。

-ence 是常用的名词后缀, 如: absence, confidence, innocence 等等。如果我们把后缀-ence 变换成-ent, dependent 则是个形容词; 如果在 dependence 或 dependent 前面加上前缀 in-, 则表示相反意义, “独立”、“独立的”。

1) All living thing depend on sunlight, air and water. (一切生命依赖于阳光、空气和水。)

2) He doesn't want to live in dependence on his parents any longer. (他不想再依靠父母生活。)

3) The old man is very dependent on his son. (那位老人什么都依赖他儿子。)

4) India got its independence in 1946. (印度于 1946 年获得独立。)

5) He is independent of his parents. (他不依赖父母而自立。)

4. disapprove v. 不赞成。

我们在第二单元中学习过 approve, 在第二十三单元中学习过 approval. approve 是 disapprove 的反义词, approval 则是 disapproval 的反义词。

disapprove 和 approve 一样可以用作及物动词和不及物动词。用作不及物动词时, 在其后需加介词 of, 然后才可以接宾语。如:

1) He disapproved the arrangement for the wedding. (她不赞成婚事的安排。)

2) Her parents disapproved her marriage to Jimmy. (父母不同意她与吉米的婚事。)

3) The teacher disapproved of her students going camping. (老师不反对她的学生们去露营。)

4) He disapproved of my method. (他反对我的方法。)

5. discourage v. 使泄气，使沮丧；阻拦。

上个单词 disapprove 中的 dis-前缀表示“not”，discourage 中的前缀 dis-则表示“deprive of”。discourage 的反义词是 encourage. courage 是名词，意思是“勇气”。

1) He didn't have the courage to tell her the truth. (他没有勇气对她说实话。)

2) We have to face the difficulties with courage. (我们得勇敢地面对困难。)

3) Don't be discouraged by setbacks. (别因挫折而泄气。)

4) The heavy rain discouraged us from going out. (大雨使我们无法出去。)

5) Her husband encouraged her to complete her study. (她丈夫鼓励她完成学业。)

6) They felt encouraged by their achievements. (他们因自己取得的成就而感到鼓舞。)

7) He finished encouraged by their achievements. (尽管有许多令人灰心的挫折，他仍然完成了工作。)

8) What he said just now is discouraging. (他刚才说的话令人泄气。)

9) Children need more encouragement. (孩子需要更多的鼓励。)

10) The results are encouraging. (结果令人鼓舞。)

6. permissible adj. 容许的，准许的。

permissible 是 permission 的形容词形式，而 permission 是 permit 的名词形式。

1) Smoking is not obtain permitted in public places. (不允许在公共场所抽烟。)

2) Mother would not permit her to watch TV for too long. (妈妈不允许她看电视时间过长。)

3) He could not obtain permission from the authorities. (他无法获得官方的许可。)

4) You can't do it without permission. (没有得到许可, 你不能做这件事。)

5) It was permissible to ask a question. (提一个问题是准许的。)

6) In many cases, it is permissible for a child to cry. (在许多情况下, 孩子是准许哭的。)

7. excusable adj. 可原谅地, 可辩解的。

同上一个单词中的后缀-ible 一样, -able 也是一个常用的形容词后缀。如: desirable(值得要的), irritable(易怒的), reasonable(合理的), noticeable(明显的)。

excuse 可以做名词用, 意思是“借口, 理由”, 也可以一做动词的功能, 意思是“原谅, 宽恕”或“免除”。

1) You don't have to make any excuse. (你不用编任何借口。)

2) There is no excuse for not giving them a chance. (没有理由不给他们机会。)

3) Please excuse my carelessness. (请原谅我的粗心。)

4) I could never excuse him for being so rude. (我永远也不会原谅他如此无礼。)

5) She was excused from long hours' of practice. (她可以免除长时间的练习。)

6) This is an excusable mistake. (这是个可原谅的错误。)

7) In women, crying is excusable, but in men, crying is a mark of weakness. (女人哭是可以原谅的, 而男人哭则是软弱的标志。)

8. capacity n. 容量; 能力。

1) The theatre has a seating capacity of 3000. (这个剧院能容纳 3000 名观众。)

2) The theatre was filled to capacity. (剧院里座无虚席。)

3) The book is beyond the capacity of young readers. (这本书超出了少年读者的理解力。)

4) The storage vessel has a capacity of 10, 000 liters. (这个存储器的容积是1万升。)

5) It is necessary to develop students' capacity for reasoning. (培养学生的推理能力很有必要。)

9. incapacity n. 无能力, 不能。

1) He lived from hand to mouth because of his incapacity to work. (由于无力工作, 他勉强对付着过日子。)

2) Growing incapacity is coming with increasing age. (能力的丧失会随着年龄的增长而加剧。)

10. organism n. 生物体, 有机体。

1) These creatures are descended from simpler organisms. (这些生物源于更低等的生物体。)

2) Factories and cities are more complex organisms self-sufficient villages. (工厂和城市是比自给自足的村庄更复杂的机体。)

11. restore v. 使恢复, 使回复。

1) The old building was restored by the people of the city. (城里的老百姓修复了那座古建筑。)

2) The doctor restored him to health. (医生使他恢复了健康。)

3) The relations between the two countries were restored to normal. (两国之间的关系恢复正常了。)

4) The police restored a lost child to the parents. (警察把迷失的孩子交还其父母。)

5) He was restored to his post after he had been proved innocent. (被证明清白后, 他复了职。)

12. dynamic adj. 动力的, 动态的; 有生气的, 有力的。

1) He gradually became accustomed to living in this dynamic city. (他渐渐习惯生活在这座生气勃勃的城市里。)

2) A dynamic leadership is indispensable to the successful completion of this project. (这项工程的成功完成离不开强有力的领导。)

3) Words like “fly” and “run” are dynamic verbs. (像“飞”和“跑”这样的词是动态动词。)

13. stability n. 稳定, 稳定性; 坚定, 恒心。

stability 是 stable 的名词形式, 而 stabilize 则是动词。

1) The new administration had to try hard to regain a stable economy and a stable currency. (新政府努力恢复经济稳定和通货稳定。)

2) The stable political environment helped to bring about the economic prosperity. (政治环境的稳定有助于经济繁荣的产生。)

3) The world needs stable peace. (世界需要持久的和平。)

4) Internal arguments had threatened the stability of the government. (内部的争执已经威胁政府的稳定。)

5) The patient's condition began to stabilize. (病人的病情开始稳定。)

6) They are taking measures to stabilize prices. (他们正在采取措施稳定物价。)

14. interference n. 干涉, 干预; 妨碍。

在第十八单元中我们已经学过了动词 interfere, interference 是 interfere 的名词形式。

1) I couldn't hear the program because there was too much interference. (我听不清节目, 因为干扰太大。)

2) He wanted to do it on his own without any outside interference. (他想自己独立做那件事, 不受任何外界干扰。)

3) They didn't expect any interference from their parents. (他们没有料到会有来自父母的干预。)

4) No country has the right to interfere in another country's internal affairs. (任何国家都无权干涉别国内政。)

5) Misty weather interfered with the contact. (雾天妨碍联络。)

15. damage n. 损害, 损失; 赔偿金。 v. 损伤, 毁坏。

1) Fortunately, the damage to the boat was not too serious. (所幸的是船的损坏不太严重。)

2) I don't want to see the rumor do any damage to your reputation. (我不想看到这个谣传有害你的名誉。)

3) He got \$500 damages for the injury he suffered in the accident. (他因事故受伤而获得 500 美元赔偿金。)

4) The buildings were seriously damaged by the earthquake. (地震使房屋受到严重毁坏。)

5) Don't damage other people's interests. (不要损害他人利益。)

16. maintenance n. 维持, 保持; 维修; 维护; 抚养费。

在第二十二单元中, 我们已经学过了动词 maintain, maintenance 是 maintain 的名词形式。

1) He spent a lot on the maintenance of his car. (他在汽车维护上花了不少钱。)

2) Maintenance of order is no easy job at this time. (这时候要维持秩序可不是件容易的事。)

3) How much maintenance does he pay his ex-wife? (他付给前妻多少抚养费?)

4) He takes regular physical exercise to maintain health. (他定期进行体育锻炼以保持健康。)

5) They have maintained correspondence for 20 years. (他们保持通信联系已有 20 年。)

17. animated adj. 栩栩如生的; 生气勃勃的。

1) They are having an animated discussion. (他们正在进行热烈的讨论。)

2) The animated piece of sculpture attracted a lot of people. (栩栩如生的雕塑作品吸引了许多人。)

3) He felt very excited when walking in the animated city street. (走在繁忙的闹市大街上, 他感到很兴奋。)

18. shed v. 流出, 发出, 散发。

1) Roses shed their fragrance in the garden. (玫瑰的芳香散发在花园里。)

2) The trees have shed all their leaves in winter. (冬天, 树上的叶子全掉了。)

3) She couldn't help shedding tears when she heard the story. (听了那个故事, 她不禁流下了眼泪。)

19. lessen v. 减少, 减轻; 缩小, 贬低。

我们曾讲过-en 是一个常用的动词后缀, 可以用在形容词或名词后面构成动词, 如: shorten, broaden, brighten, worsen, lengthen, heighten 等等。

1) They are doing everything possible to lessen tensions between the two nations. (他们正在尽一切可能缓和两国之间的紧张局势。)

2) I don't know what I can do to lessen his pain. (我不知道我能做什么来减轻他的痛苦。)

3) He wanted to get the upper hand by lessening the achievements of his rivals. (他想用贬低对手成就的方式来占上风。)

20. defect n. 缺点, 欠缺。 vi. 逃跑, 背叛。

1) She has a hearing defect. (她有听觉缺陷。)

2) He was surprised to find that the TV set has a basic defect. (他发现那台电视机有个大毛病, 非常吃惊。)

3) He defected to the enemy. (他向敌方叛逃。)

21. intention n. 意图, 打算。

1) He hurt his friends feelings without intention. (他无意间伤害了朋友的感情。)

2) I had made it clear that I had no intention of spending the rest of my life in such a place. (我已明确表示我无意在此度过余生。)

3) He was motivated by good intentions. (他的动机是善意的。)

4) Mr. Brown had no intention to resign. (布朗先生不打算辞职。)

本课简介

哭往往被认为是软弱的表示，是女性的特征，是幼稚的行为，美国男人丝毫不愿意与这一切沾边，所以他们不哭。在人人追求快乐的国度里，哭可太没美国味了。女人生就柔弱、依赖，她们哭很自然，而男人，千万不能哭。对于小男孩，我们让他们铭记“小男子汉是从来不哭的，只有小女孩和好哭的孩子才哭。”

美国男人不哭是因为他们随着年龄的增长体内的某个生物钟使其哭的能力消耗殆尽了吗？不是，他们是被调教得想哭时也不哭了。自幼受这样的训练，于是他们就有了不会哭的能力。

作者认为这样做不可取，因为哭是人这种生物的一种自然功能，哭能使感情失衡的人恢复到均衡状态。对均衡状态的干扰将对人体有害。在感情失衡的情况下，哭一哭有助于保持健康。人类是自然界中唯一在哭泣时流泪的生物，把人调教得不会哭则会养活他的人性。美国父母的好意，如果造成了这种结果岂不可悲？

Unit25 (第74讲—第76讲)

本课主要语言点

1. American men don't cry because it is considered not characteristic of men to do so.

动词 consider 的用法如下：

① Consider + 宾语 + 宾补

They considered the attack a mistake. (他们认为这次进攻是错误。)

② Consider + 宾语 + 动词不定式

They considered themselves to be very lucking. (他们认为自己很幸运。)

③ Consider + 宾语 + as

They don't consider it as important. (他们认为那个不重要。)

④ Consider + 宾语 + 形容词

They consider it wise not to criticize him. (他们认为不批评他是明智的。)

⑤ Consider + 宾语

He had no time to consider the matter. (他没有时间考虑这个事情。)

⑥ Consider +V-ing

He is considering changing his job. (他在考虑换一份工作。)

“be considered not characteristic of ……,” consider 在此处的用法当归于④。be characteristic of 意思是 be typical of. 如:

1) Carelessness and impatience are characteristic of him. (粗心、无耐心是他的特点。)

2) Long winter and short spring are characteristic of the climate here. (冬天漫长, 春天短暂是这儿的气候特点。)

3) Crying is not the characteristic of man. (哭泣不是男子汉的特征。)

2. … no American male wants to be identified with anything in the least weak or feminine.

be identified with 意思是 be closely involved or associated with. 如:

1) Of the 34 candidates nearly a third were identified with big financial groups.

(在 34 名候选人当中, 近三分之一的人与大财团有紧密联系。)

2) He is closely identified with the former president. (他与前总统关系密切。)

in the least 用来强调否定, 意思是“丝毫, 一点儿。” 如:

1) I don't mind in the least. (我一点也不在意。)

2) She was not in the least Jealous. (她丝毫不嫉妒。)

3. In a land so devoted to the pursuit of happiness as ours, crying really is rather un-American.

本句中的 devoted 是个形容词, to 是介词, 通常用 be devoted to . devote 用作动词, 则可用 devote……to

1) The students are devoted to their studies. (学生们专心学习。)

2) He is devoted to the cause of peace. (他致力于和平事业。)

3) They have devoted all their time to helping the poor. (他们把所有的时间都用在帮助穷人上。)

4) She devoted herself to her pupil. (她把全部身心倾注在学生身上。)

the pursuit of 意思是“对…追求(追捕)”。 in the pursuit of 是常用介词短语。

1) They are in pursuit of the escaped criminal. (他们在追捕逃犯。)

2) The album is produced in the pursuit of excellence. (这个专辑在制作过程中力求完美。)

land 在句中的意思是“country 国家”。如:

1) He used to work in a distant land. (他曾在一个遥远的国度工作。)

2) He returned to his native land many years later. (许多年后,他回到了祖国。)

ours 在句中指 our land

4. Women being the “weaker” and “dependent” sex, it is only natural that they should cry in certain emotional situations.

women being the “weaker” and “dependent” sex 是名词+V-ing 的独立结构,表示原因。这句话的意思是 because women are the “weaker” and “dependent” sex.

请看下面的例句,注意掌握名词+V-ing 表示原因的独立结构。

1) So many members being absent, the meeting had to be put off. (因为很多人不在场,会议只好延期。)

2) The question being so difficult, we must take time to consider it carefully.

(因为这个问题很困难,我们得花时间仔细考虑。)

3) The weather being terrible, they had to change their plan. (天气很糟糕,他们不得不改变计划。)

5. ...crying is a mark of weakness

mark 在句中作名词用,意思是“标示,特征”,如:

1) He gave her a gift as a mark of gratitude. (他送给她一份礼物以表谢意。)

2) They removed their hats as a mark of respect. (他们脱帽以表敬意。)

3) These buildings display the mark of early Greek influence. (这些建筑表现出受早期希腊影响的特征。)

mark 还有许多其它意思，如：

1) He got 70 marks out of 100. (他得了100分中的70分。)

2) There are a lot of ink marks on the wall. (墙上有许多墨水渍。)

3) He made a few marks with his pen. (他用笔做了几个记号。)

4) Be careful not to mark the table. (小心别在桌上留下痕迹。)

5) Mark all the big cities on the map. (在地图上把所有大的城市标出来。)

6. So goes the American belief with regard to crying.

so 在句中用作副词，表示前面所说的（哭是软弱的标志）也适用于此。so 在句首，句子倒装。

1) —He looks very hot and dry. (他看上去又热又干。)

—so would you if you had a high fever. (如果你发高烧，你也如此。)

2) His shoes are brightly polished, so is his briefcase. (他的鞋擦得很亮，他的公文包也是这样。)

with regard to 也可用 in regard to，意思是“regarding, be concerned with”（至于，就…而文论）。如：

This plant is not at all demanding with regard to water, soil and climate. (这种植物对水土气候一点不苛求。)

7. “A little man, ” we impress on our male children, never cries
动词 impress 用法如下：

① impress sb. with sth. (给某人留下…印象)

I hope I can impress my new boss with my diligence. (我希望我的勤勉能给新老老板留下印象。)

② impress sth on sb. (给某人留下…印象; 使某人理解…的重要)

She impressed on the Government the serious effect of high unemployment. (她使政府意识到高失业率的严重影响。)

课文中的这个句子的意思是 we impress “A little man never cries” on the mind of our male children. (我们让男孩铭记“小男子汉决不哭泣。”))

8. And so we condition males in America not to cry whenever they feel like doing so.

本句中的第一个 so 用作副词, 意思是“因此, 所以”如:

1) She is the only person I know in the city, so I went to her for help (在这座城市里, 她是我唯一的熟人, 所以我将去求她帮忙。)

2) He speaks very little Chinese, so I talked to him in English. (他不太会讲中文, 所以我用英文跟他交谈。)

句中的第二个用作代词, 代替前文的词语或意思, 本句中代指 cry (哭)。

1) If you say so, I'll have to believe it. (如果你这样说, 我只有相信了。)

2) Is it raining? (在下雨吗?)

I'm afraid so. (恐怕是的。)

condition 在本句中用作动词, 意思是“(训练, 使适应)”, 如:

1) They conditioned her not to flare up over trifles. (他们使她养成不为小事发脾气的习惯。)

2) They are conditioning the horse for a race. (他们在训练那匹马以参加比赛。)

feel 的后面必须接名词或动名词。如:

1) I feel like singing. (我想唱歌。)

He feels like having a talk with her. (他想与她谈一谈。)

9. It is not that American males are unable to cry because of some biological clock within them which cause them to run down in that capacity as they grow alder, but that they are trained not to cry.

本句中的 (It is) not that...but that...。是英语中的常用结构,意思是“不是因为...而是因为...”。如:

1) It is not that I am not interested in it, but that I am fully occupied. (不是因为我对这个没兴趣,而是因为我太忙了。)

2) It is not that I have no trust in him, but that I have to keep the promise of secrecy. (不是因为我不信任他,而是因为我得信守保密的诺言。)

cause sb. to do sth.意思是“使某人做某事”。如:

1) Careless caused him to fail the exam. (粗心致使他考试不及格。)

2) What caused him to change his mind? (是什么使他改变主意?)

run down 意思是“reduce; exhaust” (降低; 耗尽)。如:

1) The battery is run down. (电池的电用完了。)

2) The factory is running down its production. (工厂在紧缩生产。)

10. Thus do we produce a trained incapacity in the American male to cry.

本句可以理解为:

Therefore, we make the American males have a trained ability not to cry. (于是我们使得美国男人具有了不会哭的能力。)

thus 放在句首时, 句子、可倒装, 也可不用倒装。

11. ... to restore the emotionally disequibrated person to a state of equilibrium.

restore sb. to a state of ... (使某人恢复...状态), 如:

1) The doctor restored the old man to a state of health. (医生使那位老人恢复了健康。)

2) It is difficult to restore the country to a state of stability. (要使那个国家恢复稳定是件困难的事。)

12. Crying serves a homeostatic function for the organism as a whole.

动词 serve 通常用在短语 serve as 中，意思是“起…作用”）

1) He served as an adviser to the company. (他任公司顾问。)

2) This sofa serves as a bed. (这张沙发当床用。)

serve the function 也是“起…作用”的意思。

as a whole 意思是“作为一个整体，总的来说”。如：

The temperature for that country as a whole is high. (这个国家的气温总的来说是高的。)

13. The human species is the only one in the whole of animated nature that shed tears.

that shed tears 是定语从句，修饰 one . 当先行词的前面有 only 时，定语从句不可以用 which 引导，而必须用 that 引导。如：

1) He is the only person that I trust. (他是我唯一信任的人。)

2) This is the only game that I enjoy. (这是我唯一喜欢的比赛。)

shed tears 意思是“流泪”，如：

1) The story made me shed tears. (那个故事使我流了泪。)

2) When a crocodile sheds tears, it doesn't mean it is sad. (鳄鱼流泪并不意味着它伤心。)

14. And this, among other things, is what American parents -with the best intention in the world-have achieved for the American male.

本句中的 this 代指上一句所讲的内容。

with the best intention 意思是“有着最美好的意愿”。

achieve sth. 意思是“取得成就”。如：

1) I achieved nothing. (我一无所成。)

2) He achieved his goal after many hardships. (经过很多艰难困苦后他实现了自己的目标。)

15. ...and clear our minds of those cobwebs of confusion which have for so long prevented us from understanding the natural necessity of crying.

clear 在本句中作动词用，意思是“清除”。如：

Let me clear the furnace of ash. (让我把炉子里的灰清掉。)

prevent sb. from doing sth.意思是“妨碍(阻止)某人做某事”。如：

1) The traffic jam prevented me from getting home earlier. (交通阻塞使我无法早点到家。)

The heavy fog prevented the train from arriving on schedule. (大雪使火车无法准点到达。)

本课主要短语及表达

1. be characteristic of
2. identify with
3. in the least
4. disapprove of
5. devote to
6. (in) the pursuit of
7. a mark of
8. with regard to
9. impress sth. on sb
10. feel like doing sth.
11. run down
12. go on doing sth.
13. restore ...to ...
14. a state of

15. be known as
16. as a whole
17. shed tears
18. with the best intention
19. clear sth. of
20. prevent from

Text B stop worrying now!

短语表达

1. deal with

He is really hard to deal with.

You may have to have extensive experiences to deal with issues like this.

2. choose to

After graduation from college, he chooses to take a poorly paid job instead.

If you choose to stay, I'm afraid you will also have to finish that writing first.

3. in the first place

You shouldn't take him on that trip in the first place.

There was this hidden error in the first place. How could you put all the blame on me?

4. label as

I can hardly believe that you could label it as toys.

His pitiful copy of my writing was labeled as the most creative in his class. What a joke!

5. can't help doing something

Despite repeated advice by my doctor, I simply can't help eating this fatty meat whenever there is a chance.

The boy could not help crying when he lost sight of his loving father.

6. hang on to sth

He hung on to his toy gun.

The little girl hung on to her mother's hand when they crossed the street.

7. risk doing sth

You will risk losing your job if you go on like this.

He risked being criticized when he was late for the meeting.

8. result in

The safety measures will result in the reduction of work accidents.

The game resulted in a tie.

9. use up

Since the energy on the earth can be used up one day, we will have to look for new energy sources right now.

Can you fetch me some paper? I've used up all of them.

10. back down

I backed down carefully when I spotted a cobra on the island.

If they are not going to back down, we may have to find another way of compromise.